NOTICE OF INCORPORATION

United States Legal Document

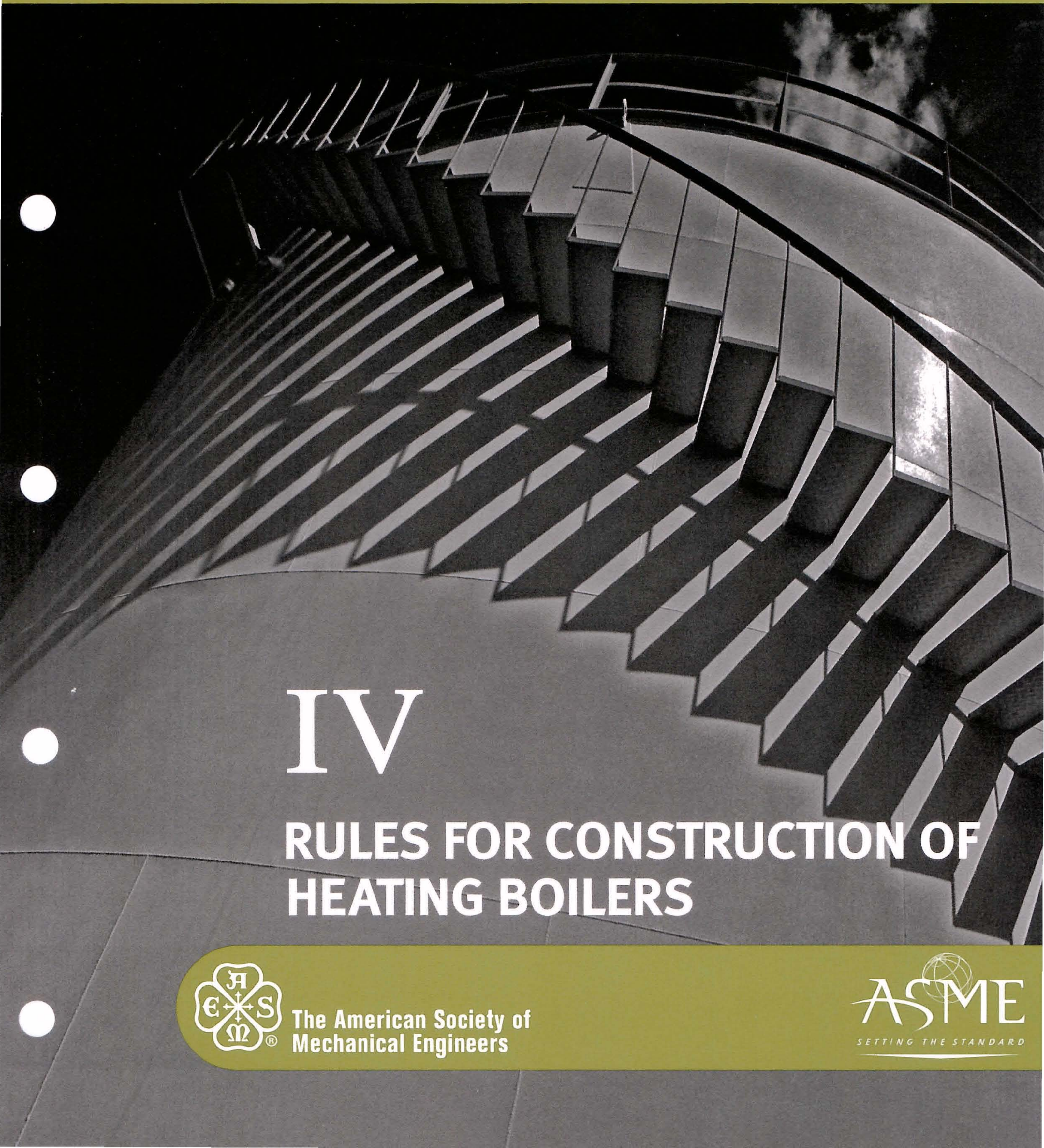
☞ All citizens and residents are hereby advised that this is a legally binding document duly incorporated by reference and that failure to comply with such requirements as hereby detailed within may subject you to criminal or civil penalties under the law. Ignorance of the law shall not excuse noncompliance and it is the responsibility of the citizens to inform themselves as to the laws that are enacted in the United States of America and in the states and cities contained therein. ☜

⁂

ASME BPVC IV (2007), Boiler & Pressure Vessel Code, Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers, as required by the States of Alaska, Arizona, California, Illinois, Iowa, Kansas, Michigan, Missouri, Nebraska, New Hampshire, New Jersey, North Dakota, Ohio, Oregon, Utah, Wisconsin, et. alia.

AN INTERNATIONAL CODE

2007 ASME Boiler & Pressure Vessel Code



IV

RULES FOR CONSTRUCTION OF HEATING BOILERS

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers

ASME
SETTING THE STANDARD

AN INTERNATIONAL CODE

2007 ASME Boiler & Pressure Vessel Code

IV

RULES FOR CONSTRUCTION OF HEATING BOILERS

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers

ASME

SETTING THE STANDARD

AN INTERNATIONAL CODE

2007 ASME Boiler & Pressure Vessel Code

2007 Edition July 1, 2007

IV

RULES FOR CONSTRUCTION OF HEATING BOILERS

ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee
Subcommittee on Heating Boilers

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers

SETTING THE STANDARD

Date of Issuance: July 1, 2007
(Includes all Addenda dated July 2006 and earlier)

The footnotes in this document are part of this American National Standard.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 56-3934
Printed in the United States of America

Adopted by the Council of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 1914.
Revised 1940, 1941, 1943, 1946, 1949, 1952, 1953, 1956, 1959, 1962, 1965, 1968, 1971, 1974, 1977, 1980, 1983, 1986, 1989, 1992, 1995, 1998, 2001, 2004, 2007

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990

2007 ASME
BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE

SECTIONS

I Rules for Construction of Power Boilers

II Materials
  Part A — Ferrous Material Specifications
  Part B — Nonferrous Material Specifications
  Part C — Specifications for Welding Rods, Electrodes, and Filler Metals
  Part D — Properties (Customary)
  Part D — Properties (Metric)

III Rules for Construction of Nuclear Facility Components
  Subsection NCA — General Requirements for Division 1 and Division 2
  Division 1
    Subsection NB — Class 1 Components
    Subsection NC — Class 2 Components
    Subsection ND — Class 3 Components
    Subsection NE — Class MC Components
    Subsection NF — Supports
    Subsection NG — Core Support Structures
    Subsection NH — Class 1 Components in Elevated Temperature Service
    Appendices
  Division 2 — Code for Concrete Containments
  Division 3 — Containments for Transportation and Storage of Spent Nuclear Fuel and High Level Radioactive Material and Waste

IV Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers

V Nondestructive Examination

VI Recommended Rules for the Care and Operation of Heating Boilers

VII Recommended Guidelines for the Care of Power Boilers

VIII Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels
  Division 1
  Division 2 — Alternative Rules
  Division 3 — Alternative Rules for Construction of High Pressure Vessels

IX Welding and Brazing Qualifications

X Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Pressure Vessels

XI Rules for Inservice Inspection of Nuclear Power Plant Components

XII Rules for Construction and Continued Service of Transport Tanks

ADDENDA

Colored-sheet Addenda, which include additions and revisions to individual Sections of the Code, are published annually and will be sent automatically to purchasers of the applicable Sections up to the publication of the 2010 Code. The 2007 Code is available only in the loose-leaf format; accordingly, the Addenda will be issued in the loose-leaf, replacement-page format.

INTERPRETATIONS

ASME issues written replies to inquiries concerning interpretation of technical aspects of the Code. The Interpretations for each individual Section will be published separately and will be included as part of the update service to that Section. Interpretations of Section III, Divisions 1 and 2, will be included with the update service to Subsection NCA.

Interpretations of the Code are distributed annually in July with the issuance of the edition and subsequent addenda. Interpretations posted in January at www.cstools.asme.org/interpretations are included in the July distribution.

CODE CASES

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee meets regularly to consider proposed additions and revisions to the Code and to formulate Cases to clarify the intent of existing requirements or provide, when the need is urgent, rules for materials or constructions not covered by existing Code rules. Those Cases that have been adopted will appear in the appropriate 2007 Code Cases book: "Boilers and Pressure Vessels" and "Nuclear Components." Supplements will be sent automatically to the purchasers of the Code Cases books up to the publication of the 2010 Code.

CONTENTS

Figures

Figures

Table

PART HF — SUBPART HB

Figures

Tables

Mandatory Appendices

Nomandatory Appendices

FOREWORD

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers set up a committee in 1911 for the purpose of formulating standard rules for the construction of steam boilers and other pressure vessels. This committee is now called the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee.

The Committee's function is to establish rules of safety, relating only to pressure integrity, governing the construction[1] of boilers, pressure vessels, transport tanks and nuclear components, and inservice inspection for pressure integrity of nuclear components and transport tanks, and to interpret these rules when questions arise regarding their intent. This code does not address other safety issues relating to the construction of boilers, pressure vessels, transport tanks and nuclear components, and the inservice inspection of nuclear components and transport tanks. The user of the Code should refer to other pertinent codes, standards, laws, regulations, or other relevant documents. With few exceptions, the rules do not, of practical necessity, reflect the likelihood and consequences of deterioration in service related to specific service fluids or external operating environments. Recognizing this, the Committee has approved a wide variety of construction rules in this Section to allow the user or his designee to select those that will provide a pressure vessel having a margin for deterioration in service so as to give a reasonably long, safe period of usefulness. Accordingly, it is not intended that this Section be used as a design handbook; rather, engineering judgment must be employed in the selection of those sets of Code rules suitable to any specific service or need.

This Code contains mandatory requirements, specific prohibitions, and nonmandatory guidance for construction activities. The Code does not address all aspects of these activities and those aspects that are not specifically addressed should not be considered prohibited. The Code is not a handbook and cannot replace education, experience, and the use of engineering judgment. The phrase *engineering judgment* refers to technical judgments made by knowledgeable designers experienced in the application of the Code. Engineering judgments must be consistent with Code philosophy and such judgments must never be used to overrule mandatory requirements or specific prohibitions of the Code.

The Committee recognizes that tools and techniques used for design and analysis change as technology progresses and expects engineers to use good judgment in the application of these tools. The designer is responsible for complying with Code rules and demonstrating compliance with Code equations when such equations are mandatory. The Code neither requires nor prohibits the use of computers for the design or analysis of components constructed to the requirements of the Code. However, designers and engineers using computer programs for design or analysis are cautioned that they are responsible for all technical assumptions inherent in the programs they use and they are responsible for the application of these programs to their design.

The Code does not fully address tolerances. When dimensions, sizes, or other parameters are not specified with tolerances, the values of these parameters are considered nominal and allowable tolerances or local variances may be considered acceptable when based on engineering judgment and standard practices as determined by the designer.

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee deals with the care and inspection of boilers and pressure vessels in service only to the extent of providing suggested rules of good practice as an aid to owners and their inspectors.

The rules established by the Committee are not to be interpreted as approving, recommending, or endorsing any proprietary or specific design or as limiting in any way the manufacturer's freedom to choose any method of design or any form of construction that conforms to the Code rules.

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee meets regularly to consider revisions of the rules, new rules as dictated by technological development, Code Cases, and requests for interpretations. Only the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee has the authority to provide official interpretations of this Code. Requests for revisions, new rules, Code Cases, or interpretations shall be addressed to the Secretary in writing and shall give full particulars in order to receive consideration and action (see Mandatory Appendix covering preparation of technical inquiries). Proposed revisions to the Code resulting from inquiries will be presented to the Main Committee for appropriate action. The action of the Main Committee becomes effective only after confirmation by letter ballot of the Committee and approval by ASME.

[1] *Construction*, as used in this Foreword, is an all-inclusive term comprising materials, design, fabrication, examination, inspection, testing, certification, and pressure relief.

Proposed revisions to the Code approved by the Committee are submitted to the American National Standards Institute and published at *http://cstools.asme.org/csconnect/public/index.cfm?PublicReview=Revisions* to invite comments from all interested persons. After the allotted time for public review and final approval by ASME, revisions are published annually in Addenda to the Code.

Code Cases may be used in the construction of components to be stamped with the ASME Code symbol beginning with the date of their approval by ASME.

After Code revisions are approved by ASME, they may be used beginning with the date of issuance shown on the Addenda. Revisions, except for revisions to material specifications in Section II, Parts A and B, become mandatory six months after such date of issuance, except for boilers or pressure vessels contracted for prior to the end of the six-month period. Revisions to material specifications are originated by the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) and other recognized national or international organizations, and are usually adopted by ASME. However, those revisions may or may not have any effect on the suitability of material, produced to earlier editions of specifications, for use in ASME construction. ASME material specifications approved for use in each construction Code are listed in the Guidelines for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Section II, Parts A and B. These Guidelines list, for each specification, the latest edition adopted by ASME, and earlier and later editions considered by ASME to be identical for ASME construction.

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee in the formulation of its rules and in the establishment of maximum design and operating pressures considers materials, construction, methods of fabrication, inspection, and safety devices.

The Code Committee does not rule on whether a component shall or shall not be constructed to the provisions of the Code. The Scope of each Section has been established to identify the components and parameters considered by the Committee in formulating the Code rules.

Questions or issues regarding compliance of a specific component with the Code rules are to be directed to the ASME Certificate Holder (Manufacturer). Inquiries concerning the interpretation of the Code are to be directed to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee. ASME is to be notified should questions arise concerning improper use of an ASME Code symbol.

The specifications for materials given in Section II are identical with or similar to those of specifications published by ASTM, AWS, and other recognized national or international organizations. When reference is made in an ASME material specification to a non-ASME specification for which a companion ASME specification exists, the reference shall be interpreted as applying to the ASME material specification. Not all materials included in the material specifications in Section II have been adopted for Code use. Usage is limited to those materials and grades adopted by at least one of the other Sections of the Code for application under rules of that Section. All materials allowed by these various Sections and used for construction within the scope of their rules shall be furnished in accordance with material specifications contained in Section II or referenced in the Guidelines for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Section II, Parts A and B, except where otherwise provided in Code Cases or in the applicable Section of the Code. Materials covered by these specifications are acceptable for use in items covered by the Code Sections only to the degree indicated in the applicable Section. Materials for Code use should preferably be ordered, produced, and documented on this basis; Guideline for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Section II, Part A and Guideline for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Section II, Part B list editions of ASME and year dates of specifications that meet ASME requirements and that may be used in Code construction. Material produced to an acceptable specification with requirements different from the requirements of the corresponding specifications listed in the Guideline for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Part A or Part B may also be used in accordance with the above, provided the material manufacturer or vessel manufacturer certifies with evidence acceptable to the Authorized Inspector that the corresponding requirements of specifications listed in the Guideline for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Part A or Part B have been met. Material produced to an acceptable material specification is not limited as to country of origin.

When required by context in this Section, the singular shall be interpreted as the plural, and vice-versa; and the feminine, masculine, or neuter gender shall be treated as such other gender as appropriate.

STATEMENT OF POLICY ON THE USE OF CODE SYMBOLS AND CODE AUTHORIZATION IN ADVERTISING

ASME has established procedures to authorize qualified organizations to perform various activities in accordance with the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. It is the aim of the Society to provide recognition of organizations so authorized. An organization holding authorization to perform various activities in accordance with the requirements of the Code may state this capability in its advertising literature.

Organizations that are authorized to use Code Symbols for marking items or constructions that have been constructed and inspected in compliance with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code are issued Certificates of Authorization. It is the aim of the Society to maintain the standing of the Code Symbols for the benefit of the users, the enforcement jurisdictions, and the holders of the symbols who comply with all requirements.

Based on these objectives, the following policy has been established on the usage in advertising of facsimiles of the symbols, Certificates of Authorization, and reference to Code construction. The American Society of Mechanical Engineers does not "approve," "certify," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, or activity and there shall be no statements or implications that might so indicate. An organization holding a Code Symbol and/or a Certificate of Authorization may state in advertising literature that items, constructions, or activities "are built (produced or performed) or activities conducted in accordance with the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code," or "meet the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code."

The ASME Symbol shall be used only for stamping and nameplates as specifically provided in the Code. However, facsimiles may be used for the purpose of fostering the use of such construction. Such usage may be by an association or a society, or by a holder of a Code Symbol who may also use the facsimile in advertising to show that clearly specified items will carry the symbol. General usage is permitted only when all of a manufacturer's items are constructed under the rules.

The ASME logo, which is the cloverleaf with the letters ASME within, shall not be used by any organization other than ASME.

STATEMENT OF POLICY ON THE USE OF ASME MARKING TO IDENTIFY MANUFACTURED ITEMS

The ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code provides rules for the construction of boilers, pressure vessels, and nuclear components. This includes requirements for materials, design, fabrication, examination, inspection, and stamping. Items constructed in accordance with all of the applicable rules of the Code are identified with the official Code Symbol Stamp described in the governing Section of the Code.

Markings such as "ASME," "ASME Standard," or any other marking including "ASME" or the various Code Symbols shall not be used on any item that is not constructed in accordance with all of the applicable requirements of the Code.

Items shall not be described on ASME Data Report Forms nor on similar forms referring to ASME that tend to imply that all Code requirements have been met when, in fact, they have not been. Data Report Forms covering items not fully complying with ASME requirements should not refer to ASME or they should clearly identify all exceptions to the ASME requirements.

PERSONNEL
ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee
Subcommittees, Subgroups, and Working Groups

As of January 1, 2007

MAIN COMMITTEE

G. G. Karcher, *Chair*
J. G. Feldstein, *Vice Chair*
J. S. Brzuszkiewicz, *Secretary*
R. W. Barnes
R. J. Basile
J. E. Batey
D. L. Berger
M. N. Bressler
D. A. Canonico
R. P. Deubler
D. A. Douin
R. E. Gimple
M. Gold
T. E. Hansen
C. L. Hoffmann
D. F. Landers
W. M. Lundy
J. R. MacKay
U. R. Miller
P. A. Molvie
C. C. Neely
W. E. Norris
G. C. Park
T. P. Pastor
M. D. Rana
B. W. Roberts
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
A. Selz
R. W. Swayne
D. E. Tanner
S. V. Voorhees
F. B. Kovacs, *Alternate*
R. A. Moen, *Honorary Member*
T. Tahara, *Delegate*

EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE (MAIN COMMITTEE)

J. G. Feldstein, *Chair*
G. G. Karcher, *Vice Chair*
J. S. Brzuszkiewicz, *Secretary*
R. W. Barnes
D. L. Berger
M. Gold
G. C. Park
T. P. Pastor
A. Selz
D. E. Tanner
D. A. Canonico, *Ex-Officio Member*
M. Kotb, *Ex-Officio Member*

HONORARY MEMBERS (MAIN COMMITTEE)

F. P. Barton
R. D. Bonner
R. J. Bosnak
R. J. Cepluch
L. J. Chockie
T. M. Cullen
W. D. Doty
J. R. Farr
G. E. Feigel
R. C. Griffin
O. F. Hedden
E. J. Hemzy
M. H. Jawad
A. J. Justin
E. L. Kemmler
W. G. Knecht
J. LeCoff
T. G. McCarty
G. C. Millman
R. F. Reedy
W. E. Somers
K. K. Tam
L. P. Zick, Jr.

HONORS AND AWARDS COMMITTEE

J. R. MacKay, *Chair*
M. Gold, *Vice Chair*
G. Moino, *Secretary*
R. J. Basile
J. E. Batey
D. L. Berger
J. G. Feldstein
F. E. Gregor
W. L. Haag, Jr.
S. F. Harrison, Jr.
R. M. Jessee
W. C. Larochelle
T. P. Pastor
A. Selz
R. R. Stevenson

MARINE CONFERENCE GROUP

H. N. Patel, *Chair*
L. W. Douthwaite
R. J. Petow

CONFERENCE COMMITTEE

D. A. Douin — Illinois *(Chair)*
R. D. Reetz — North Dakota *(Vice Chair)*
D. E. Tanner — Ohio *(Secretary)*
R. J. Aben, Jr. — Michigan
J. S. Aclaro — California
A. E. Adkins — West Virginia
J. T. Amato — Minnesota
E. A. Anderson — Illinois
F. R. Andrus — Oregon
B. P. Anthony — Rhode Island
R. D. Austin — Colorado
E. W. Bachellier — Nunavut, Canada
M. M. Barber — Michigan
R. W. Bartlett — Arizona
F. P. Barton — Virginia
M. Bishop — British Columbia, Canada
W. K. Brigham — New Hampshire
D. E. Burns — Nebraska
J. H. Burpee — Maine
C. J. Castle — Nova Scotia, Canada
P. A. Conklin — New York
D. C. Cook — California
R. A. Coomes — Kentucky
D. Eastman — Newfoundland and Labrador, Canada
G. L. Ebeyer — Louisiana
E. Everett — Georgia
J. M. Given, Jr. — North Carolina
P. Hackford — Utah
R. J. Handy — Kentucky
J. B. Harlan — Delaware
M. L. Holloway — Oklahoma
K. Hynes — Prince Edward Island, Canada
D. T. Jagger — Ohio
D. J. Jenkins — Kansas
S. Katz — British Columbia, Canada
M. Kotb — Quebec, Canada
K. T. Lau — Alberta, Canada
M. A. Malek — Florida
G. F. Mankel — Nevada
R. D. Marvin II — Washington
I. W. Mault — Manitoba, Canada
H. T. McEwen — Mississippi

CONFERENCE COMMITTEE (CONT'D)

R. D. Mile — Ontario, Canada
M. F. Mooney — Massachusetts
G. R. Myrick — Arkansas
Y. Nagpaul — Hawaii
W. R. Owens — Louisiana
T. M. Parks — Texas
R. P. Pate — Alabama
J. D. Payton — Pennsylvania
M. R. Peterson — Alaska
H. D. Pfaff — South Dakota
J. L. Pratt — Missouri
D. C. Price — Yukon Territory, Canada
R. S. Pucek — Wisconsin
D. E. Ross — New Brunswick, Canada
N. Surtees — Saskatchewan, Canada
M. R. Toth — Tennessee
M. J. Verhagen — Wisconsin
M. Washington — New Jersey
R. B. West — Iowa
M. J. Wheel — Vermont
D. J. Willis — Indiana
E. Zarate — Arizona

BPV PROJECT TEAM ON HYDROGEN TANKS

M. D. Rana, *Chair*
G. M. Eisenberg, *Secretary*
F. L. Brown
D. A. Canonico
D. C. Cook
J. W. Felbaum
T. Joseph
J. M. Lacy
N. L. Newhouse
G. B. Rawls, Jr.
J. R. Sims, Jr.
N. Sirosh
J. H. Smith
S. Staniszewski
T. Tahara
D. W. Treadwell
E. Upitis
C. T. L. Webster
H. Barthelemy, *Corresponding Member*
R. C. Biel, *Corresponding Member*
J. Cameron, *Corresponding Member*
M. Duncan, *Corresponding Member*
D. R. Frikken, *Corresponding Member*
L. E. Hayden, Jr., *Corresponding Member*
K. T. Lau, *Corresponding Member*
K. Oyamada, *Corresponding Member*
C. H. Rivkin, *Corresponding Member*
C. San Marchi, *Corresponding Member*
B. Somerday, *Corresponding Member*

INTERNATIONAL INTEREST REVIEW GROUP

V. Felix
S. H. Leong
W. Lin
C. Minu
Y. Park
P. Williamson
Y. Kim, *Delegate*

SUBCOMMITTEE ON POWER BOILERS (SC I)

D. L. Berger, *Chair*
B. W. Roberts, *Vice Chair*
U. D'Urso, *Secretary*
D. A. Canonico
K. K. Coleman
P. D. Edwards
J. G. Feldstein
J. Hainsworth
T. E. Hansen
J. S. Hunter
C. F. Jeerings
J. P. Libbrecht
W. L. Lowry
J. R. MacKay
T. C. McGough
R. E. McLaughlin
P. A. Molvie
Y. Oishi
J. T. Pillow
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
J. P. Swezy, Jr.
J. M. Tanzosh
R. V. Wielgoszinski
D. J. Willis

Honorary Members (SC I)

D. N. French
W. E. Somers
R. L. Williams

Subgroup on Design (SC I)

P. A. Molvie, *Chair*
G. L. Hiler, *Secretary*
M. L. Coats
J. D. Fishburn
J. P. Glaspie
C. F. Jeerings
G. B. Komora
J. P. Libbrecht
J. C. Light
B. W. Moore
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
J. L. Seigle
J. P. Swezy, Jr.
S. V. Torkildson

Subgroup on Fabrication and Examination (SC I)

J. T. Pillow, *Chair*
J. L. Arnold
D. L. Berger
S. W. Cameron
G. W. Galanes
J. Hainsworth
T. E. Hansen
T. C. McGough
R. E. McLaughlin
Y. Oishi
R. V. Wielgoszinski

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC I)

R. E. McLaughlin, *Chair*
J. Hainsworth, *Secretary*
G. Cook
P. D. Edwards
T. E. Hansen
W. L. Lowry
F. Massi
T. C. McGough
J. T. Pillow
D. Tompkins
S. V. Torkildson
R. V. Wielgoszinski
D. J. Willis

Subgroup on Materials (SC I)

B. W. Roberts, *Chair*
J. S. Hunter, *Secretary*
D. A. Canonico
K. K. Coleman
G. W. Galanes
K. L. Hayes
J. F. Henry
J. P. Libbrecht
J. R. MacKay
F. Masuyama
J. M. Tanzosh

Subgroup on Piping (SC I)

T. E. Hansen, *Chair*
D. L. Berger
P. D. Edwards
G. W. Galanes
W. L. Lowry
F. Massi
T. C. McGough
D. Tompkins
E. A. Whittle

Heat Recovery Steam Generators Task Group (SC I)

T. E. Hansen, *Chair*
E. M. Ortman, *Secretary*
R. W. Anderson
J. P. Bell
L. R. Douglas
J. D. Fishburn
G. B. Komora
J. P. Libbrecht
D. L. Marriott
B. W. Moore
A. L. Plumley
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
J. C. Steverman, Jr.
S. R. Timko
D. Tompkins
S. V. Torkildson
B. C. Turczynski
E. A. Turhan

SUBCOMMITTEE ON MATERIALS (SC II)

J. F. Henry, *Chair*
M. Gold, *Vice Chair*
N. Lobo, *Secretary*
F. Abe
D. C. Agarwal
W. R. Apblett, Jr.
A. Appleton
M. N. Bressler
H. D. Bushfield
J. Cameron
D. A. Canonico
A. Chaudouet
P. Fallouey
D. W. Gandy
M. H. Gilkey
J. F. Grubb
C. L. Hoffmann
P. A. Larkin
F. Masuyama
R. K. Nanstad
M. L. Nayyar
E. G. Nisbett
D. W. Rahoi
B. W. Roberts
E. Shapiro
R. C. Sutherlin
R. W. Swindeman
J. M. Tanzosh
B. E. Thurgood
R. A. Moen, *Honorary Member*
D. Kwon, *Delegate*

Honorary Members (SC II)

A. P. Ahrendt
T. M. Cullen
R. Dirscherl
W. D. Doty
W. D. Edsall
J. J. Heger
G. C. Hsu
R. A. Moen
C. E. Spaeder, Jr.
A. W. Zeuthen

Subgroup on External Pressure (SC II & SC-D)

R. W. Mikitka, *Chair*
J. A. A. Morrow, *Secretary*
L. F. Campbell
D. S. Griffin
J. F. Grubb
M. Katcher
D. L. Kurle
E. Michalopoulos
D. Nadel
C. H. Sturgeon

Subgroup on Ferrous Specifications (SC II)

E. G. Nisbett, *Chair*
A. Appleton, *Vice Chair*
R. M. Davison
B. M. Dingman
M. J. Dosdourian
T. Graham
J. F. Grubb
K. M. Hottle
D. S. Janikowski
D. C. Krouse
L. J. Lavezzi
W. C. Mack
J. K. Mahaney
A. S. Melilli
K. E. Orie
E. Upitis
R. Zawierucha
A. W. Zeuthen

Subgroup on International Material Specifications (SC II)

W. M. Lundy, *Chair*
A. Chaudouet, *Vice Chair*
J. P. Glaspie, *Secretary*
D. C. Agarwal
H. D. Bushfield
D. A. Canonico
P. Fallouey
A. F. Garbolevsky
D. O. Henry
M. Higuchi
H. Lorenz
A. R. Nywening
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
E. A. Steen
E. Upitis
D. Kwon, *Delegate*

Subgroup on Nonferrous Alloys (SC II)

D. W. Rahoi, *Chair*
M. Katcher, *Secretary*
D. C. Agarwal
W. R. Apblett, Jr.
H. D. Bushfield
L. G. Coffee
M. H. Gilkey
J. F. Grubb
E. L. Hibner
G. C. Hsu
A. G. Kireta, Jr.
J. Kissell
P. A. Larkin
H. Matsuo
J. A. McMaster
D. T. Peters
E. Shapiro
R. C. Sutherlin
R. Zawierucha

Subgroup on Strength, Ferrous Alloys (SC II)

C. L. Hoffmann, *Chair*
J. M. Tanzosh, *Secretary*
F. Abe
W. R. Apblett, Jr.
D. A. Canonico
K. K. Coleman
P. Fallouey
M. Gold
J. F. Henry
E. L. Hibner
F. Masuyama
H. Matsuo
H. Murakami
D. W. Rahoi
B. W. Roberts
M. S. Shelton
R. W. Swindeman
B. E. Thurgood
T. P. Vassallo, Jr.

Subgroup on Physical Properties (SC II)

J. F. Grubb, *Chair*
D. C. Agarwal
H. D. Bushfield
P. Fallouey
E. Shapiro

Subgroup on Strength of Weldments (SC II & SC IX)

J. M. Tanzosh, *Chair*
W. F. Newell, Jr., *Secretary*
K. K. Coleman
P. D. Flenner
D. W. Gandy
K. L. Hayes
J. F. Henry
D. W. Rahoi
B. W. Roberts
W. J. Sperko
B. E. Thurgood

Subgroup on Toughness (SC II & SC VIII)

W. S. Jacobs, *Chair*
J. L. Arnold
R. J. Basile
J. Cameron
H. E. Gordon
D. C. Lamb
K. Mokhtarian
C. C. Neely
T. T. Phillips
M. D. Rana
D. A. Swanson
E. Upitis

Special Working Group on Nonmetallic Materials (SC II)

C. W. Rowley, *Chair*
F. L. Brown
S. R. Frost
P. S. Hill
M. R. Kessler
R. H. Walker
J. W. Wegner
F. Worth

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NUCLEAR POWER (SC III)

R. W. Barnes, *Chair*
R. M. Jessee, *Vice Chair*
C. A. Sanna, *Secretary*
W. H. Borter
M. N. Bressler
J. R. Cole
R. E. Cornman, Jr.
R. P. Deubler
B. A. Erler
G. M. Foster
R. S. Hill III
C. L. Hoffmann
C. C. Kim
V. Kostarev
D. F. Landers
W. C. LaRochelle
K. A. Manoly
E. A. Mayhew
W. N. McLean
D. K. Morton
O. O. Oyamada
R. F. Reedy
B. B. Scott
J. D. Stevenson
K. R. Wichman
Y. H. Choi, *Delegate*

Honorary Members (SC III)

R. J. Bosnak
E. B. Branch
W. D. Doty
F. R. Drahos
R. A. Moen
C. J. Pieper

Subgroup on Containment Systems for Spent Fuel and High-Level Waste Transport Packagings (SC III)

G. M. Foster, *Chair*
G. J. Solovey, *Vice Chair*
D. K. Morton, *Secretary*
W. H. Borter
G. R. Cannell
E. L. Farrow
R. S. Hill III
D. W. Lewis
C. G. May
P. E. McConnell
I. D. McInnes
A. B. Meichler
R. E. Nickell
E. L. Pleins
T. Saegusa
H. P. Shrivastava
N. M. Simpson
R. H. Smith
J. D. Stevenson
C. J. Temus
P. Turula
A. D. Watkins

Subgroup on Design (SC III)

R. P. Deubler, *Chair*
R. S. Hill III, *Vice Chair*
A. N. Nguyen, *Secretary*
T. M. Adams
M. N. Bressler
C. W. Bruny
D. L. Caldwell
J. R. Cole
R. E. Cornman, Jr.
A. A. Dermenjian
P. Hirschberg
R. I. Jetter
R. B. Keating
J. F. Kielb
H. Kobayashi
D. F. Landers
K. A. Manoly
R. J. Masterson
W. N. McLean
J. C. Minichiello
M. Morishita
F. F. Naguib
T. Nakamura
W. Z. Novak
E. L. Pleins
I. Saito
G. C. Slagis
J. D. Stevenson
J. P. Tucker
K. R. Wichman

Working Group on Supports (SG-D) (SC III)

R. J. Masterson, *Chair*
F. J. Birch, *Secretary*
U. S. Bandyopadhyay
R. P. Deubler
W. P. Golini
A. N. Nguyen
I. Saito
J. R. Stinson
T. G. Terryah
D. V. Walshe
C.-I. Wu

Working Group on Core Support Structures (SG-D) (SC III)

J. F. Kielb, *Chair*
J. T. Land
J. F. Mullooly

Working Group on Design Methodology (SG-D)

R. B. Keating, *Chair*
P. L. Anderson, *Secretary*
T. M. Adams
M. K. Au-Yang
R. D. Blevins
D. L. Caldwell
M. Hartzman
H. Kobayashi
D. F. Landers
W. S. Lapay
H. Lockert
J. F. McCabe
P. R. Olson
J. D. Stevenson
J. Yang

Working Group on Design of Division 3 Containments (SG-D) (SC III)

E. L. Pleins, *Chair*
T. M. Adams
G. Bjorkman
D. W. Lewis
I. D. McInnes
J. C. Minichiello
D. K. Morton
R. E. Nickell
H. P. Shrivastava
C. J. Temus
P. Turula

Working Group on Piping (SG-D) (SC III)

P. Hirschberg, *Chair*
R. C. Fung, *Secretary*
T. M. Adams
C. Basavaraju
J. Catalano
J. R. Cole
R. J. Gurdal
R. W. Haupt
J. Kawahata
R. B. Keating
V. Kostarev
D. F. Landers
J. F. McCabe
J. C. Minichiello
A. N. Nguyen
O. O. Oyamada
R. D. Patel
E. C. Rodabaugh
M. S. Sills
G. C. Slagis
E. A. Wais
C.-I. Wu

Working Group on Probabilistic Methods in Design (SG-D) (SC III)

R. S. Hill III, *Chair*
T. M. Adams
T. Asayama
B. M. Ayyub
T. A. Bacon
A. A. Dermenjian
M. R. Graybeal
D. O. Henry
E. V. Imbro
S. D. Kulat
A. McNeill III
P. J. O'Regan
N. A. Palm
I. Saito
M. E. Schmidt
J. P. Tucker
R. M. Wilson

Working Group on Pumps (SG-D) (SC III)

R. E. Cornman, Jr., *Chair*
M. D. Eftychiou
A. A. Fraser
M. Higuchi
G. R. Jones
J. W. Leavitt
J. E. Livingston
J. R. Rajan
A. G. Washburn

Working Group on Valves (SG-D) (SC III)

J. P. Tucker, *Chair*
R. R. Brodin
G. A. Jolly
W. N. McLean
T. A. McMahon
J. D. Page
S. N. Shields
H. R. Sonderegger
J. C. Tsacoyeanes
R. G. Visalli

Working Group on Vessels (SG-D) (SC III)

F. F. Naguib, *Chair*
G. K. Miller, *Secretary*
C. W. Bruny
G. D. Cooper
M. Hartzman
W. J. Heilker
A. Kalnins
R. B. Keating
K. Matsunaga
D. E. Matthews
M. Nakahira
R. M. Wilson

Special Working Group on Environmental Effects (SG-D) (SC III)

W. Z. Novak, *Chair*
R. S. Hill III
C. L. Hoffmann
S. Yukawa
Y. H. Choi, *Delegate*

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC III & SC 3C)

W. C. LaRochelle, *Chair*
C. A. Lizotte, *Secretary*
A. Appleton
J. R. Berry
W. P. Golini
E. A. Mayhew
R. P. McIntyre
R. D. Mile
M. R. Minick
B. B. Scott
H. K. Sharma
W. K. Sowder
D. M. Vickery
D. V. Walshe

Subgroup on Materials, Fabrication, and Examination (SC III)

C. L. Hoffmann, *Chair*
G. P. Milley, *Secretary*
W. H. Borter
D. M. Doyle
G. M. Foster
G. B. Georgiev
R. M. Jessee
C. C. Kim
M. Lau
H. Murakami
M. Nakahira
C. J. Pieper
N. M. Simpson
W. J. Sperko
J. R. Stinson
K. B. Stuckey
A. D. Watkins
S. Yukawa

Subgroup on Pressure Relief (SC III)

S. F. Harrison, Jr., *Chair*
E. M. Petrosky
A. L. Szeglin
D. G. Thibault

Subgroup on Strategy and Management (SC III, Divisions 1 and 2)

R. W. Barnes, *Chair*
J. R. Cole, *Secretary*
B. K. Bobo
N. Broom
B. A. Erler
C. M. Faidy
J. M. Helmey
M. F. Hessheimer
R. S. Hill III
E. V. Imbro
R. M. Jessee
R. F. Reedy
Y. Urabe

Special Working Group on Editing and Review (SC III)

R. F. Reedy, *Chair*
W. H. Borter
M. N. Bressler
D. L. Caldwell
R. P. Deubler
B. A. Erler
W. C. LaRochelle
J. D. Stevenson

Subgroup on Graphite Core Components (SC III)

T. D. Burchell, *Chair*
C. A. Sanna, *Secretary*
R. L. Bratton
M. W. Davies
S. W. Doms
S. F. Duffy
O. Gelineau
M. N. Mitchell
N. N. Nemeth
T. Oku
M. Srinivasan

JOINT ACI-ASME COMMITTEE ON CONCRETE COMPONENTS FOR NUCLEAR SERVICE (SC 3C)

T. C. Inman, *Chair*
A. C. Eberhardt, *Vice Chair*
C. A. Sanna, *Secretary*
N. Alchaar
T. D. Al-Shawaf
J. F. Artuso
H. G. Ashar
M. Elgohary
B. A. Erler
F. Farzam
J. Gutierrez
J. K. Harrold
M. F. Hessheimer
T. E. Johnson
N.-H. Lee
B. B. Scott
R. E. Shewmaker
J. D. Stevenson
A. Y. C. Wong
T. Watson, *Liaison Member*

SUBCOMMITTEE ON HEATING BOILERS (SC IV)

P. A. Molvie, *Chair*
S. V. Voorhees, *Vice Chair*
G. Moino, *Secretary*
T. L. Bedeaux
D. C. Bixby
G. Bynog
J. Calland
J. P. Chicoine
C. M. Dove
W. L. Haag, Jr.
J. A. Hall
J. D. Hoh
D. J. Jenkins
W. D. Lemos
K. M. McTague
B. W. Moore
E. A. Nordstrom
T. M. Parks
J. L. Seigle
R. V. Wielgoszinski
F. P. Barton, *Honorary Member*
R. B. Duggan, *Honorary Member*
R. H. Weigel, *Honorary Member*
J. I. Woodworth, *Honorary Member*

Subgroup on Care and Operation of Heating Boilers (SC IV)

S. V. Voorhees, *Chair*
T. L. Bedeaux
K. J. Hoey
K. M. McTague
P. A. Molvie

Subgroup on Cast Iron Boilers (SC IV)

K. M. McTague, *Chair*
T. L. Bedeaux
J. P. Chicoine
J. A. Hall
P. A. Larkin
W. D. Lemos
C. P. McQuiggan

Subgroup on Materials (SC IV)

P. A. Larkin, *Chair*
J. A. Hall
W. D. Lemos
J. L. Seigle

Subgroup on Water Heaters (SC IV)

W. L. Haag, Jr., *Chair*
J. Calland
T. D. Gantt
W. D. Lemos
K. M. McTague
F. J. Schreiner
M. A. Taylor
T. E. Trant

Subgroup on Welded Boilers (SC IV)

T. L. Bedeaux, *Chair*
J. Calland
C. M. Dove
W. D. Lemos
E. A. Nordstrom
J. L. Seigle
R. V. Wielgoszinski

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NONDESTRUCTIVE EXAMINATION (SC V)

J. E. Batey, *Chair*
F. B. Kovacs, *Vice Chair*
S. Vasquez, *Secretary*
S. J. Akrin
J. E. Aycock
A. S. Birks
P. L. Brown
N. Y. Faransso
A. F. Garbolevsky
G. W. Hembree
R. W. Kruzic
J. F. Manning
R. D. McGuire
D. R. Quattlebaum, Jr.
F. J. Sattler
B. H. Clark, Jr., *Honorary Member*
H. C. Graber, *Honorary Member*
O. F. Hedden, *Honorary Member*
J. R. MacKay, *Honorary Member*
T. G. McCarty, *Honorary Member*

Subgroup on General Requirements/ Personnel Qualifications and Inquiries (SC V)

R. D. McGuire, *Chair*
J. E. Batey
A. S. Birks
N. Y. Faransso
G. W. Hembree
J. W. Houf
J. R. MacKay
J. P. Swezy, Jr.

Subgroup on Surface Examination Methods (SC V)

A. S. Birks, *Chair*
S. J. Akrin
P. L. Brown
N. Y. Faransso
G. W. Hembree
R. W. Kruzic
D. R. Quattlebaum, Jr.
F. J. Sattler
M. J. Wheel

Subgroup on Volumetric Methods (SC V)

G. W. Hembree, *Chair*
S. J. Akrin
J. E. Aycock
J. E. Batey
P. L. Brown
N. Y. Faransso
A. F. Garbolevsky
R. W. Hardy
R. A. Kellerhall
F. B. Kovacs
R. W. Kruzic
J. F. Manning
F. J. Sattler

Working Group on Acoustic Emissions (SG-VM) (SC V)

N. Y. Faransso, *Chair*
J. E. Aycock
J. E. Batey
J. F. Manning

Working Group on Radiography (SG-VM) (SC V)

F. B. Kovacs, *Chair*
S. J. Akrin
J. E. Aycock
J. E. Batey
P. L. Brown
N. Y. Faransso
A. F. Garbolevsky
R. W. Hardy
G. W. Hembree
R. W. Kruzic
T. L. Plasek

Working Group on Ultrasonics (SG-VM) (SC V)

R. W. Kruzic, *Chair*
J. E. Aycock
N. Y. Faransso
O. F. Hedden
R. A. Kellerhall
J. F. Manning
M. D. Moles
F. J. Sattler

SUBCOMMITTEE ON PRESSURE VESSELS (SC VIII)

T. P. Pastor, *Chair*
K. Mokhtarian, *Vice Chair*
S. J. Rossi, *Secretary*
R. J. Basile
J. Cameron
D. B. Demichael
J. P. Glaspie
M. Gold
W. S. Jacobs
G. G. Karcher
K. T. Lau
J. S. Lee
R. Mahadeen
S. Malone
R. W. Mikitka
U. R. Miller
C. C. Neely
D. T. Peters
M. J. Pischke
M. D. Rana
G. B. Rawls, Jr.
S. C. Roberts
C. D. Rodery
K. J. Schneider
A. Selz
J. R. Sims, Jr.
E. A. Steen
K. K. Tam
E. Upitis
E. L. Thomas, Jr., *Honorary Member*

Subgroup on Design (SC VIII)

U. R. Miller, *Chair*
R. E. Knoblock, *Secretary*
O. A. Barsky
R. J. Basile
M. R. Breach
F. L. Brown
J. R. Farr
J. P. Glaspie
C. E. Hinnant
W. S. Jacobs
M. D. Lower
R. W. Mikitka
K. Mokhtarian
T. P. Pastor
M. D. Rana
G. B. Rawls, Jr.
S. C. Roberts
C. D. Rodery
A. Selz
S. C. Shah
J. C. Sowinski
C. H. Sturgeon
D. A. Swanson
K. K. Tam
E. L. Thomas, Jr.
R. A. Whipple

Subgroup on Fabrication and Inspection (SC VIII)

C. D. Rodery, *Chair*
E. A. Steen, *Vice Chair*
J. L. Arnold
L. F. Campbell
H. E. Gordon
W. S. Jacobs
D. J. Kreft
C. D. Lamb
J. S. Lee
B. R. Morelock
M. J. Pischke
M. J. Rice
B. F. Shelley
J. P. Swezy, Jr.

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC VIII)

S. C. Roberts, *Chair*
D. B. Demichael, *Secretary*
R. J. Basile
J. P. Glaspie
K. T. Lau
M. D. Lower
C. C. Neely
A. S. Olivares
F. L. Richter
K. J. Schneider
D. B. Stewart
D. A. Swanson
K. K. Tam

Subgroup on Heat Transfer Equipment (SC VIII)

R. Mahadeen, *Chair*
G. Aurioles, *Secretary*
S. R. Babka
J. H. Barbee
O. A. Barsky
I. G. Campbell
M. D. Clark
J. I. Gordon
M. J. Holtz
F. E. Jehrio
B. J. Lerch
S. Mayeux
U. R. Miller
T. W. Norton
F. Osweiller
R. J. Stastny
S. Yokell
R. P. Zoldak
S. M. Caldwell, *Honorary Member*

Subgroup on High-Pressure Vessels (SC VIII)

J. R. Sims, Jr., *Chair*
S. Vasquez, *Secretary*
L. P. Antalffy
R. C. Biel
D. J. Burns
P. N. Chaku
R. D. Dixon
M. E. Dupre
D. M. Fryer
W. Hiller
A. H. Honza
M. M. James
P. Jansson
J. A. Kapp
J. Keltjens
D. P. Kendall
A. K. Khare
M. D. Mann
S. C. Mordre
G. J. Mraz
E. H. Perez
D. T. Peters
E. D. Roll
F. W. Tatar
S. Terada

Subgroup on Materials (SC VIII)

J. Cameron, *Chair*
E. E. Morgenegg, *Secretary*
D. C. Agarwal
J. F. Grubb
E. L. Hibner
M. Katcher
W. M. Lundy
E. G. Nisbett
D. W. Rahoi
R. C. Sutherlin
E. Upitis

Special Working Group on Graphite Pressure Equipment (SC VIII)

S. Malone, *Chair*
U. D'Urso, *Secretary*
F. L. Brown
M. R. Minick
E. Soltow
A. A. Stupica

Special Working Group on High-Pressure Vessels (SC VIII)

S. Vasquez, *Secretary*

Task Group on Impulsively Loaded Vessels (SC VIII)

R. E. Nickell, *Chair*
G. A. Antaki
D. D. Barker
R. C. Biel
D. W. Bowman
D. L. Caldwell
A. M. Clayton
J. E. Didlake, Jr.
T. A. Duffey
R. Forgan
B. L. Haroldsen
H. L. Heaton
E. A. Rodriguez
J. R. Sims, Jr.

SUBCOMMITTEE ON WELDING (SC IX)

J. G. Feldstein, *Chair*
W. J. Sperko, *Vice Chair*
J. D. Wendler, *Secretary*
D. A. Bowers
R. K. Brown, Jr.
M. L. Carpenter
L. P. Connor
P. D. Flenner
J. M. Given, Jr.
J. S. Lee
W. M. Lundy
R. D. McGuire
B. R. Newmark
A. S. Olivares
M. J. Pischke
S. D. Reynolds, Jr.
M. J. Rice
M. B. Sims
G. W. Spohn III
M. J. Stanko
P. L. Van Fosson
R. R. Young

Subgroup on Brazing (SC IX)

M. J. Pischke, *Chair*
E. W. Beckman
L. F. Campbell
M. L. Carpenter
A. F. Garbolevsky
C. F. Jeerings
J. P. Swezy, Jr.

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC IX)

B. R. Newmark, *Chair*
P. R. Evans
R. M. Jessee
A. S. Olivares
H. B. Porter
P. L. Sturgill
K. R. Willens

Subgroup on Materials (SC IX)

M. L. Carpenter, *Chair*
J. L. Arnold
M. Bernasek
L. P. Connor
R. M. Jessee
C. C. Kim
T. Melfi
S. D. Reynolds, Jr.
C. E. Sainz
W. J. Sperko
M. J. Stanko
R. R. Young

Subgroup on Performance Qualification (SC IX)

D. A. Bowers, *Chair*
V. A. Bell
L. P. Connor
R. B. Corbit
P. R. Evans
P. D. Flenner
J. M. Given, Jr.
K. L. Hayes
J. S. Lee
W. M. Lundy
R. D. McGuire
M. B. Sims
G. W. Spohn III

Subgroup on Procedure Qualification (SC IX)

D. A. Bowers, *Chair*
M. J. Rice, *Secretary*
M. Bernasek
R. K. Brown, Jr.
A. S. Olivares
S. D. Reynolds, Jr.
M. B. Sims
W. J. Sperko
S. A. Sprague
J. P. Swezy, Jr.
P. L. Van Fosson
T. C. Wiesner

Honorary Member (SC IX)

W. K. Scattergood

SUBCOMMITTEE ON FIBER-REINFORCED PLASTIC PRESSURE VESSELS (SC X)

D. Eisberg, *Chair*
P. J. Conlisk, *Vice Chair*
S. Vasquez, *Secretary*
F. L. Brown
J. L. Bustillos
T. W. Cowley
T. J. Fowler
D. H. Hodgkinson
L. E. Hunt
D. L. Keeler
B. M. Linnemann
J. C. Murphy
D. J. Painter
D. J. Pinell
G. Ramirez
J. R. Richter
J. A. Rolston
B. F. Shelley
F. W. Van Name
D. O. Yancey, Jr.
P. H. Ziehl

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NUCLEAR INSERVICE INSPECTION (SC XI)

G. C. Park, *Chair*
R. W. Swayne, *Vice Chair*
R. L. Crane, *Secretary*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
R. C. Cipolla
D. D. Davis
R. L. Dyle
E. L. Farrow
R. E. Gimple
F. E. Gregor
K. Hasegawa
D. O. Henry
R. D. Kerr
S. D. Kulat
G. L. Lagleder
D. W. Lamond
J. T. Lindberg
B. R. Newton
W. E. Norris
K. Rhyne
W. R. Rogers III
D. A. Scarth
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
J. C. Spanner, Jr.
J. E. Staffiera
G. L. Stevens
E. W. Throckmorton III
D. E. Waskey
R. A. West
C. J. Wirtz
C. S. Withers
R. A. Yonekawa
K. K. Yoon
T. Yuhara
Y.-S. Chang, *Delegate*

Executive Committee (SC XI)

R. W. Swayne, *Chair*
G. C. Park, *Vice Chair*
R. L. Crane, *Secretary*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
D. D. Davis
R. L. Dyle
R. E. Gimple
F. E. Gregor
O. F. Hedden
C. G. McCargar
W. E. Norris
K. Rhyne
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
J. C. Spanner, Jr.
E. W. Throckmorton III
R. A. Yonekawa

Honorary Members (SC XI)

L. J. Chockie
C. D. Cowfer
O. F. Hedden
J. P. Houstrup
L. R. Katz
P. C. Riccardella

Subgroup on Evaluation Standards (SC XI)

W. H. Bamford, Jr., *Chair*
G. L. Stevens, *Secretary*
R. C. Cipolla
S. Coffin
G. H. De Boo
B. R. Ganta
T. J. Griesbach
K. Hasegawa
D. N. Hopkins
Y. Imamura
K. Koyama
D. R. Lee
H. S. Mehta
J. G. Merkle
S. Ranganath
D. A. Scarth
K. R. Wichman
K. K. Yoon
Y.-S. Chang, *Delegate*

Working Group on Flaw Evaluation (SG-ES) (SC XI)

R. C. Cipolla, *Chair*
G. H. De Boo, *Secretary*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
M. Basol
J. M. Bloom
B. R. Ganta
T. J. Griesbach
H. L. Gustin
F. D. Hayes
P. H. Hoang
D. N. Hopkins
Y. Imamura
K. Koyama
D. R. Lee
H. S. Mehta
J. G. Merkle
M. A. Mitchell
K. Miyazaki
R. K. Qashu
S. Ranganath
P. J. Rush
D. A. Scarth
T. S. Schurman
W. L. Server
F. A. Simonen
K. R. Wichman
G. M. Wilkowski
K. K. Yoon
S. Yukawa
V. A. Zilberstein

Working Group on Operating Plant Criteria (SG-ES) (SC XI)

T. J. Griesbach, *Chair*
K. R. Baker
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
H. Behnke
B. A. Bishop
T. L. Dickson
S. R. Gosselin
S. N. Malik
H. S. Mehta
R. Pace
S. Ranganath
W. L. Server
E. A. Siegel
F. A. Simonen
G. L. Stevens
D. P. Weakland
K. K. Yoon

Working Group on Pipe Flaw Evaluation (SG-ES) (SC XI)

D. A. Scarth, *Chair*
G. M. Wilkowski, *Secretary*
T. A. Bacon
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
R. C. Cipolla
N. G. Cofie
S. K. Daftuar
G. H. De Boo
E. Friedman
B. R. Ganta
L. F. Goyette
K. Hasegawa
P. H. Hoang
D. N. Hopkins
K. Kashima
H. S. Mehta
K. Miyazaki
J. S. Panesar
P. J. Rush
K. K. Yoon
V. A. Zilberstein

Subgroup on Liquid-Metal–Cooled Systems (SC XI)

C. G. McCargar, *Chair*
W. L. Chase

Subgroup on Nondestructive Examination (SC XI)

J. C. Spanner, Jr., *Chair*
G. A. Lofthus, *Secretary*
N. R. Bentley
T. L. Chan
C. B. Cheezem
D. R. Cordes
F. J. Dodd
F. E. Dohmen
M. E. Gothard
D. O. Henry
M. R. Hum
G. L. Lagleder
J. T. Lindberg
G. R. Perkins
A. S. Reed
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
C. J. Wirtz

Working Group on Personnel Qualification and Surface, Visual, and Eddy Current Examination (SG-NDE) (SC XI)

D. R. Cordes, *Secretary*
B. L. Curtis
N. Farenbaugh
G. B. Georgiev
D. O. Henry
J. T. Lindberg
D. R. Quattlebaum, Jr.
A. S. Reed
D. Spake
J. C. Spanner, Jr.
C. J. Wirtz

Working Group on Pressure Testing (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

D. W. Lamond, *Chair*
J. M. Boughman, *Secretary*
J. J. Churchwell
G. L. Fechter
K. W. Hall
R. E. Hall
J. K. McClanahan
A. McNeill III
B. L. Montgomery
E. J. Sullivan, Jr.

Working Group on Procedure Qualification and Volumetric Examination (SG-NDE) (SC XI)

M. E. Gothard, *Chair*
G. R. Perkins, *Secretary*
C. B. Cheezem
A. D. Chockie
S. R. Doctor
F. J. Dodd
F. E. Dohmen
K. J. Hacker
R. Kellerhall
D. Kurek
G. L. Lagleder
G. A. Lofthus
C. E. Moyer
S. A. Sabo
R. V. Swain

Subgroup on Repair/Replacement Activities (SG-RRA)(SC XI)

R. A. Yonekawa, *Chair*
E. V. Farrell, Jr., *Secretary*
S. B. Brown
R. E. Cantrell
P. D. Fisher
E. B. Gerlach
R. E. Gimple
D. R. Graham
R. A. Hermann
E. V. Imbro
R. D. Kerr
S. L. McCracken
B. R. Newton
J. E. O'Sullivan
W. R. Rogers III
R. R. Stevenson
R. W. Swayne
D. E. Waskey
J. G. Weicks
C. S. Withers

Working Group on Design and Programs (SG-RRA) (SC XI)

E. B. Gerlach, *Chair*
S. B. Brown, *Secretary*
A. V. Du Bouchet
G. G. Elder
E. V. Farrell, Jr.
S. K. Fisher
J. M. Gamber
D. R. Graham
G. F. Harttraft
R. R. Stevenson
R. W. Swayne
A. H. Taufique
T. P. Vassallo, Jr.
R. A. Yonekawa

Working Group on Welding and Special Repair Process (SG-RRA) (SC XI)

D. E. Waskey, *Chair*
R. E. Cantrell, *Secretary*
S. J. Findlan
P. D. Fisher
K. A. Gruss
M. L. Hall
R. A. Hermann
R. P. Indap
R. D. Kerr
C. C. Kim
M. Lau
S. L. McCracken
B. R. Newton
J. E. O'Sullivan
J. G. Weicks
K. R. Willens

Subgroup on Water-Cooled Systems (SC XI)

E. W. Throckmorton III, *Chair*
J. M. Agold, *Secretary*
G. L. Belew
J. M. Boughman
D. D. Davis
H. Q. Do
J. D. Ellis
E. L. Farrow
M. J. Ferlisi
O. F. Hedden
M. L. Herrera
S. D. Kulat
D. W. Lamond
A. McNeill III
W. E. Norris
D. Song
J. E. Staffiera
H. M. Stephens, Jr.
K. B. Thomas
R. A. West
G. E. Whitman
H. L. Graves III, *Alternate*

Working Group on Containment (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

J. E. Staffiera, *Chair*
H. Ashar
S. G. Brown
K. K. N. Chao
R. C. Cox
J. W. Crider
M. J. Ferlisi
H. L. Graves III
H. T. Hill
R. D. Hough
C. N. Krishnaswamy
D. Naus
S. C. Petitgout
H. M. Stephens, Jr.
W. E. Norris, *Alternate*

Working Group on ISI Optimization (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

E. A. Siegel, *Chair*
D. R. Cordes, *Secretary*
R. L. Turner, *Secretary*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
J. M. Boughman
R. E. Hall
A. H. Mahindrakar
D. G. Naujock
K. B. Thomas
G. E. Whitman
Y. Yuguchi

Working Group on Implementation of Risk-Based Examination (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

S. D. Kulat, *Chair*
A. McNeill III, *Secretary*
J. M. Agold
S. A. Ali
B. A. Bishop
S. T. Chesworth
C. Cueto-Felgueroso
H. Q. Do
R. Fougerousse
M. R. Graybeal
J. Hakii
K. W. Hall
D. W. Lamond
J. T. Lindberg
R. K. Mattu
P. J. O'Regan
N. A. Palm
M. A. Pyne
F. A. Simonen
R. A. West
J. C. Younger
A. T. Keim, *Alternate*

Working Group on Inspection of Systems and Components (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

K. B. Thomas, *Chair*
D. Song, *Secretary*
V. L. Armentrout
G. L. Belew
C. Cueto-Felgueroso
H. Q. Do
R. Fougerousse
M. R. Hum
S. D. Kulat
D. G. Naujock
T. Nomura
C. M. Ross
R. L. Turner
R. A. West
G. E. Whitman

Working Group on General Requirements (SC XI)

K. Rhyne, *Chair*
E. J. Maloney, *Secretary*
T. L. Chan
J. D. Ellis
E. L. Farrow
R. K. Mattu
S. R. Scott
C. S. Withers

Special Working Group on Editing and Review (SC XI)

R. W. Swayne, *Chair*
C. E. Moyer
J. E. Staffiera
C. J. Wirtz

Special Working Group on Plant Life Extension (SC XI)

T. A. Meyer, *Chair*
D. V. Burgess, *Secretary*
D. D. Davis
F. E. Gregor
P.-T. Kuo
R. L. Turner
G. G. Young

Special Working Group on High-Temperature, Gas-Cooled Reactors (SC XI)

J. Fletcher, *Chair*
M. A. Lockwood, *Secretary*
N. Broom
K. N. Fleming
W. A. O. Kriel
B. J. Kruse
M. N. Mitchell
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
R. W. Swayne

SUBCOMMITTEE ON TRANSPORT TANKS (SC XII)

A. Selz, *Chair*
L. Plano, *Secretary*
P. D. Stumpf, *Secretary*
A. N. Antoniou
C. Becht IV
M. L. Coats
M. A. Garrett
C. H. Hochman
G. G. Karcher
G. McRae
M. R. Minick
M. D. Pham
M. D. Rana
S. Staniszewski
M. R. Toth
A. P. Varghese
S. V. Voorhees

Subgroup on Design and Materials (SC XII)

M. D. Rana, *Chair*
G. G. Karcher
S. L. McWilliams
N. J. Paulick
M. D. Pham
T. A. Rogers
A. P. Varghese
M. R. Ward
E. A. Whittle

Subgroup on Fabrication and Inspection (SC XII)

S. V. Voorhees, *Chair*
J. A. Byers
B. L. Gehl
L. D. Holsinger
D. J. Kreft
G. McRae
M. R. Minick
A. S. Olivares

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC XII)

C. H. Hochman, *Chair*
T. W. Alexander
D. M. Allbritten
C. A. Betts
J. F. Cannon
J. L. Freiler
W. L. Garfield
M. A. Garrett
K. L. Gilmore
J. L. Rademacher
T. Rummel
M. R. Toth
L. Wolpert

SUBCOMMITTEE ON BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL ACCREDITATION (SC-BPVA)

W. C. LaRochelle, *Chair*
P. D. Edwards, *Vice Chair*
K. I. Baron, *Secretary*
M. B. Doherty
P. Hackford
K. T. Lau
L. E. McDonald
K. M. McTague
B. R. Morelock
J. D. O'Leary
D. E. Tanner
B. C. Turczynski
D. E. Tuttle
E. A. Whittle
G. Bynog, *Alternate*
M. A. DeVries, *Alternate*
C. E. Ford, *Alternate*
T. E. Hansen, *Alternate*
G. L. Hollinger, *Alternate*
D. J. Jenkins, *Alternate*
B. B. MacDonald, *Alternate*
R. D. Mile, *Alternate*
G. P. Milley, *Alternate*
T. W. Norton, *Alternate*
H. R. Staehr, *Alternate*
J. A. West, *Alternate*
R. V. Wielgoszinski, *Alternate*
O. E. Trapp, *Senior Consultant*
A. J. Spencer, *Honorary Member*

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NUCLEAR ACCREDITATION (SC-NA)

R. R. Stevenson, *Chair*
W. C. LaRochelle, *Vice Chair*
J. Pang, *Secretary*
M. N. Bressler
S. M. Goodwin
K. A. Huber
M. Kotb
J. C. Krane
C. A. Lizotte
R. P. McIntyre
M. R. Minick
H. B. Prasse
T. E. Quaka
A. T. Roberts III
D. E. Tanner
D. M. Vickery
G. Bynog, *Alternate*
G. Deily, *Alternate*
P. D. Edwards, *Alternate*
J. W. Highlands, *Alternate*
K. M. Hottle, *Alternate*
B. G. Kovarik, *Alternate*
P. F. Prescott, *Alternate*
S. Toledo, *Alternate*
E. A. Whittle, *Alternate*
R. V. Wielgoszinski, *Alternate*
H. L. Wiger, *Alternate*
O. E. Trapp, *Senior Consultant*

SUBCOMMITTEE ON DESIGN (SC-D)

R. J. Basile, *Chair*
R. W. Barnes
M. R. Breach
R. P. Deubler
G. G. Graven
G. L. Hollinger
R. I. Jetter
D. P. Jones
R. W. Mikitka
U. R. Miller
W. J. O'Donnell
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
A. Selz

Subgroup on Design Analysis (SC-D)

G. L. Hollinger, *Chair*
S. A. Adams
M. R. Breach
R. G. Brown
R. J. Gurdal
C. F. Heberling II
C. E. Hinnant
P. Hirschberg
D. P. Jones
A. Kalnins
W. J. Koves
K. Matsunaga
G. A. Miller
W. D. Reinhardt
D. H. Roarty
G. Sannazzaro
T. G. Seipp
D. A. Swanson
G. Taxacher
E. L. Thomas, Jr.
R. A. Whipple

Subgroup on Elevated Temperature Design (SC-D)

R. I. Jetter, *Chair*
T. Asayama
C. Becht IV
J. F. Cervenka
D. S. Griffin
B. F. Hantz
M. H. Jawad
W. J. Koves
S. Majumdar
D. L. Marriott
T. E. McGreevy
K. A. Moore
W. J. O'Donnell
D. A. Osage
J. S. Porowski
B. Riou
T.-L. Sham
M. S. Shelton
R. W. Swindeman

Subgroup on Fatigue Strength (SC-D)

W. J. O'Donnell, *Chair*
S. A. Adams
P. R. Donavin
R. J. Gurdal
C. F. Heberling II
P. Hirschberg
P. Hsu
D. P. Jones
G. Kharshafdjian
S. Majumdar
T. Nakamura
D. H. Roarty
G. Taxacher
H. H. Ziada

Subgroup on Openings (SC-D)

M. R. Breach, *Chair*
R. W. Mikitka, *Secretary*
G. G. Graven
V. T. Hwang
J. C. Light
R. B. Luney
J. P. Madden
D. R. Palmer
J. A. Pfeifer
M. D. Rana
E. C. Rodabaugh

Special Working Group on Bolted Flanged Joints (SC-D)

R. W. Mikitka, *Chair*
G. D. Bibel
H. A. Bouzid
A. Chaudouet
E. Michalopoulos
S. N. Pagay
J. R. Payne
P. G. Scheckermann
R. W. Schneider
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
A. Selz
M. S. Shelton

**SUBCOMMITTEE ON
SAFETY VALVE REQUIREMENTS (SC-SVR)**

S. F. Harrison, Jr., *Chair*	J. P. Glaspie
J. A. West, *Vice Chair*	H. I. Gregg
S. J. Rossi, *Secretary*	W. F. Hart
J. F. Ball	C. A. Neumann
S. Cammeresi	T. M. Parks
A. Cox	D. K. Parrish
R. D. Danzy	D. J. Scallan
D. B. Demichael	J. C. Standfast
R. J. Doelling	Z. Wang

Subgroup on Design (SC-SVR)

J. A. West, *Chair*	H. I. Gregg
C. E. Beair	D. Miller
R. D. Danzy	T. Patel
R. J. Doelling	T. R. Tarbay

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC-SVR)

D. B. Demichael, *Chair*	T. M. Parks
J. F. Ball	D. K. Parrish
G. Brazier	J. W. Ramsey
J. P. Glaspie	J. W. Richardson
C. A. Neumann	J. C. Standfast

Subgroup on Testing (SC-SVR)

A. Cox, *Chair*	W. F. Hart
J. E. Britt	K. G. Roth
S. Cammeresi	D. J. Scallan
G. D. Goodson	Z. Wang

**U.S. Technical Advisory Group ISO/TC 185
Safety Relief Valves**

T. J. Bevilacqua, *Chair*	Y.-S. Lai
S. J. Rossi, *Secretary*	D. Miller
S. F. Harrison, Jr.	J. A. West

PERSONNEL
Officers of ASTM Committee

(Cooperating in the Development of the Specifications Herein)
As of January 1, 2007

D-20 ON PLASTICS

D. M. Oates, *Chair*
F. A. Boldt, *Materials Vice Chair*
G. R. Cornell, *Programs Vice Chair*
K. Donohue, *Administrative Assistant*
J. Galipeau, *Liaison Research Special Vice Chair*
A. D. Kupfer, *Products Vice Chair*
M. L. Lavach, *Membership Vice Chair*
K. Morgan, *Staff Manager*
S. E. Osborn, *Secretary*
H. E. Yohn, *Methods Vice Chair*

PREAMBLE

The rules of this Section of the Code cover minimum construction requirements for the design, fabrication, installation, and inspection of steam heating, hot water heating, hot water supply boilers that are directly fired with oil, gas, electricity, coal, or other solid or liquid fuels, and for operation at or below the pressure and temperature limits set forth in this document. Similar rules for potable water heaters are also included.

For Section IV application, the boiler proper or other vessels terminate at the supply and return connections to the system or the supply and feedwater connections of a hot water supply boiler. These connections may be any of the following:

(a) the first circumferential joint for welding end connections

(b) the face of the first flange in bolted flanged connections

(c) the first threaded joint in that type of connection

Included within the scope of the boiler are pressure-retaining covers for inspection openings, such as manhole covers, handhold covers, and plugs; and headers required to connect individual coils, tubes, or cast sections within a boiler.

The rules are divided into four major Parts: Part HG, applying to all materials of construction except as provided for in Part HLW; Part HF, applying to assemblies fabricated of wrought material, except as provided for in Part HLW; Part HC, applying to cast iron assemblies; Part HA, applying to boilers constructed of cast aluminum; and Part HLW, applying to potable water heaters. Part HF is further subdivided into Subpart HW, containing rules for welded construction, and Subpart HB, containing rules for brazed construction.

The Parts and Subparts of this Section are divided into Articles. Each Article is given a number and a title, as for example, Part HG, Article 3, Design. Articles are divided into paragraphs that are given a three-digit number, the first of which corresponds to the Article number. Thus, under Article 3 of Part HG, paragraph HG-307 will be found. Paragraphs are further subdivided into subparagraphs. Major subdivisions of paragraphs are designated by three- or four-digit numbers followed by a decimal point and a digit or digits. Where necessary, further subdivisions are represented by letters and then by numbers in parentheses. Minor subdivisions of the paragraphs are also represented by letters. A reference to one of these paragraphs in the text of the Section includes all of the applicable rules in that paragraph. Thus, reference to HG-307 includes all the rules in HG-307.1 through HG-307.4.

This Section does not contain rules to cover all possible details of design and construction. Where complete details are not given, it is intended that the manufacturer, subject to the acceptance of the Authorized Inspector, shall provide details of design and construction that will be as safe as otherwise required by these rules.

When the strength of any part cannot be computed with a satisfactory assurance of safety, these rules provide procedures for establishing its maximum allowable working pressure.

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

The 2007 Edition of this Code contains revisions in addition to the 2004 Edition with 2005 and 2006 Addenda. The revisions are identified with the designation **07** in the margin and, as described in the Foreword, become mandatory six months after the publication date of the 2007 Edition. To invoke these revisions before their mandatory date, use the designation "2007 Edition" in documentation required by this Code. If you choose not to invoke these revisions before their mandatory date, use the designation "2004 Edition through the 2006 Addenda" in documentation required by this Code.

The BC numbers listed below are explained in more detail in "List of Changes in BC Order" following this Summary of Changes.

Changes given below are identified on the pages by a margin note, **07**, placed next to the affected area.

Page	*Location*	*Change (BC Number)*
33, 34	HG-400.1(b)	Revised *(BC06-531)*
	HG-400.2(d)	Revised *(BC06-531)*
43	HG-510	Subparagraphs (b) and (c) revised *(BC06-952)*
46–49	HG-530.1	Heading revised *(BC03-1578)*
	Fig. HG-530.2	Revised *(BC06-1383)*
	Fig. HG-530.4	Revised *(BC06-1383)*
	HG-530.2	(1) Heading revised *(BC03-1578)* (2) Subparagraph (a)(1) revised *(BC03-1578)*
	Fig. HG-530.6	Revised *(BC06-1383)*
	HG-530.2(e)(5)	Revised *(BC03-1578)*
62	HG-715(c)	Revised *(BC05-1410)*
70	HF-301.1	Subparagraphs (b), (c), and (d) revised *(BC06-143)*
77–82	Table HF-300.2	(1) Revised to include SB-111 under "Aluminum Bronze" *(BC02-2473)* (2) Revised to include SB/EN 1706 under "Casting, Bronze, Brass, and Aluminum" *(BC05-1220)*
	Table HF-300.2M	(1) Revised to include SB-111 under "Aluminum Bronze" *(BC02-2473)* (2) Revised to include SB/EN 1706 under "Casting, Bronze, Brass, and Aluminum" *(BC05-1220)*
112	HC-100	Revised *(BC06-485)*
120	HC-320	Revised *(BC05-1411)*
122	HC-410.2	First and second sentences revised *(BC06-530)*
126–134	Part HA	Added *(BC03-1578)*
143	Table HLW-300	SA-181, Class 70 added *(BC05-1416)*
148	HLW-402	In the first sentence, HLW-302 corrected by errata to read HLW-303 *(BC06-473)*
169, 170	HLW-810(a)	(1) First sentence revised; second sentence added *(BC05-1410)* (2) In the last sentence, 19 mm corrected by errata to read DN 20 *(BC06-473)*
211, 212	Form H-5A	Added *(BC03-1578)*
216	Form HA-1	Added *(BC03-1578)*
217	Form HA-2	Added *(BC03-1578)*

NOTE: Volume 57 of the Interpretations to Section IV of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code follows the last page of this Edition.

LIST OF CHANGES IN BC ORDER

BC Number	Change
BC02-2473	Incorporated Code Case 2314 by adding SB-111, UNS C60800 to Table HF-300.
BC03-1578	Added a new Part HA containing rules for hot water heating boilers constructed primarily of cast aluminum section(s) to be used in conjunction with Part HG. Also revised para. HG-530 (stamping of boilers) to reflect addition of new Part HA.
BC05-1220	A cover sheet for SB/EN1706 will be added to Section II, Part B. In Section IV, it incorporates Code Case 2383-2 by adding SB/EN1706 EN AC4300 to Table HF-300.2
BC05-1410	Revised HG-715(c) and HLW-810(a) to clarify that the connection should be made at the lowest practicable point on the boiler/water heater or lowest point on piping connected to the boiler/water heater.
BC05-1411	Revised HC-320 to clarify requirements pertaining to non–load-bearing heat transmitting fins and pins.
BC05-1416	Added SA-181 Class 70 to the existing list of SA-181 grades found in Table HLW-300.
BC06-143	Revised HF-301.1(b) by deleting "or those calculated as cylindrical parts under external pressure (HG-312.1 to HG-312.6)," revised (c) by adding "and HG-312.1(a)," and revised (d) by adding "and HG-312.1(a)," to clarify minimum thickness exemption for SA-240 Type 316 Ti material.
BC06-473	Revised reference to HLW-302 in HLW-402, revised metric equivalent from (19 mm) to DN 20 under HLW-810, and revised title of HG-307.4.
BC06-485	Revised HC-100 by adding the word "sections" after "primarily of cast iron."
BC06-530	Revised para. HC-410.2 by replacing "working pressure" with "maximum allowable working pressure."
BC06-531	Revised paras. HG-400.1(b) and HG-400.2(d) to limit maximum safety valve and safety relief valve size to NPS 4 (DN100).
BC06-952	Corrected paragraph reference in HG-510(b); deleted part of HG-510(c), all of HG-510(c)(1), and part of HG-510(c)(2); and revised HG-510(c)(2) to eliminate the confusion of the upper limit of the hydrostatic test.
BC06-1383	Reinstated the "steam MAWP" line on Figs. HG-530.2, HG-530.4, and HG-530.6.

PART HG GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION

ARTICLE 1 SCOPE AND SERVICE RESTRICTIONS

HG-100 SCOPE

(a) The rules of Part HG apply to steam heating boilers, hot water heating boilers, hot water supply boilers, and to appurtenances thereto. They shall be used in conjunction with the specific requirements in Part HF, Boilers of Wrought Materials, and Part HC, Cast Iron Boilers, whichever is applicable. The foreword provides the basis for these rules. Part HG is not intended to apply to potable water heaters except as provided for in Part HLW.

(b) This Part contains mandatory requirements, specific prohibitions, and nonmandatory guidance for materials, designs, fabrication, examination, inspection, testing, certification, and pressure relief.

(c) Laws or regulations issued by a municipality, state, provincial, federal, or other enforcement or regulatory body having jurisdiction at the location of an installation, establish the mandatory applicability of these rules, in whole or in part.

HG-101 SERVICE RESTRICTIONS

HG-101.1 Service Restrictions. The rules of this Section are restricted to the following services:

(a) steam boilers for operation at pressures not exceeding 15 psi (100 kPa)

(b) hot water heating boilers and hot water supply boilers for operating at pressures not exceeding 160 psi (1 100 kPa) and/or temperatures not exceeding 250°F (120°C), at or near the boiler outlet, except that when some of the wrought materials permitted by Part HF are used, a lower temperature is specified

HG-101.2 Services in Excess of Those Covered by This Section. For services exceeding the limits specified in HG-101.1, the rules of Section I shall apply.

HG-102 UNITS

Either U.S. Customary, SI, or any local customary units may be used to demonstrate compliance with all requirements of this edition (e.g., materials, design, fabrication, examination, inspection, testing, certification, and overpressure protection).

In general, it is expected that a single system of units shall be used for all aspects of design except where unfeasible or impractical. When components are manufactured at different locations where local customary units are different than those used for the general design, the local units may be used for the design and documentation of that component. Similarly, for proprietary components or those uniquely associated with a system of units different than that used for the general design, the alternate units may be used for the design and documentation of that component.

For any single equation, all variables shall be expressed in a single system of units. When separate equations are provided for U.S. Customary and SI units, those equations must be executed using variables in the units associated with the specific equation. Data expressed in other units shall be converted to U.S. Customary or SI units for use in these equations. The result obtained from execution of these equations may be converted to other units.

Production, measurement and test equipment, drawings, welding procedure specifications, welding procedure and performance qualifications, and other fabrication documents may be in U.S. Customary, SI, or local customary units in accordance with the fabricator's practice. When values shown in calculations and analysis, fabrication documents, or measurement and test equipment are in different units, any conversions necessary for verification of Code compliance and to ensure that dimensional consistency is maintained shall be in accordance with the following:

(a) Conversion factors shall be accurate to at least four significant figures.

(b) The results of conversions of units shall be expressed to a minimum of three significant figures.

Conversion of units, using the precision specified above shall be performed to assure that dimensional consistency is maintained. Conversion factors between U.S. Customary and SI units may be found in the Nonmandatory Appendix M, Guidance for the Use of U.S. Customary and SI Units in the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Whenever local customary units are used the Manufacturer shall provide the source of the conversion factors, which shall be subject to verification and acceptance by the Authorized Inspector.

Material that has been manufactured and certified to either the U.S. Customary or SI material specification (e.g., SA-516M) may be used regardless of the unit system used in design. Standard fittings (e.g., flanges, elbows, etc.) that have been certified to either U.S. Customary units or SI units may be used regardless of the unit system used in design.

All entries on a Manufacturer's Data Report and data for Code required nameplate marking shall be in units consistent with the fabrication drawings for the component using U.S. Customary, SI, or local customary units. It is acceptable to show alternate units parenthetically. Users of this Code are cautioned that the receiving Jurisdiction should be contacted to ensure the units are acceptable.

ARTICLE 2
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

HG-200 GENERAL MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

HG-200.1 Materials Subject to Pressure Stress. Material subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those that are permitted in HF-200 for boilers of wrought materials and HC-200 for cast iron boilers.

HG-200.2 Internal Parts Subject to Deterioration. Materials shall not be used for internal parts that are liable to fail due to deterioration when subjected to saturated steam temperatures at or below the maximum allowable working pressure.

HG-200.3 Materials Not Found in Section II. Material not covered by specifications in Section II shall not be used unless authorization to use the material is granted by the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee on the basis of data submitted to the Committee in accordance with Appendix A.

HG-200.4 Materials Use Not Limited by Specification Title. The title or scope paragraph of a material specification in Section II with respect to product form or service shall not limit the use of a material, provided the material is suitable for the application and its use is permitted by the rules of this Section.

HG-200.5 Materials Use Not Limited by Method of Production. Materials covered by specifications in Section II are not restricted as to the method of production unless so stated in the Specification, and as long as the product complies with the requirements of the Specification.

HG-200.6 Materials With Thicknesses Exceeding Specification Limits. Materials having thicknesses outside of the limits given in the title or scope clause of a specification in Section II may be used in construction, provided they comply with the other requirements of the Specification and with all thickness requirements of this Code.

HG-200.7 Nonpressure Part Materials. Material for nonpressure parts, such as skirts, supports, baffles, lugs, clips, and extended heat-transfer surfaces, need not conform to the specifications for the material to which they are attached or to a material specification permitted in HF-200 or HC-200; but, if welded, they shall be of weldable quality. The allowable stress value shall not exceed 80% of the maximum allowable stress permitted for similar material in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2. Satisfactory performance of a specimen in such service shall not make the material acceptable for use in pressure parts of a vessel.

HG-201 SPECIFIC MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Specific material requirements for assemblies constructed of wrought materials are given in Part HF, Article 2 and for assemblies constructed of cast iron in Part HC, Article 2.

ARTICLE 3
DESIGN

HG-300 DESIGN PRESSURE

(a) The design pressure is the pressure used in the formulas of this Article, in conjunction with the allowable stress values, design rules, and dimensions specified for determining the minimum required thicknesses for the parts of a boiler. The design pressure for a heating boiler shall be at least 30 psi (200 kPa).

(b) The term maximum allowable working pressure refers to gage pressure, or the pressure in excess of the atmospheric pressure in the boiler. The maximum allowable working pressure, as stamped on the boiler per HG-530, must be less than or equal to the design pressure for any of its parts.

(c) No boiler shall be operated at a pressure higher than the maximum allowable working pressure except when the safety valves or relief valves are discharging, at which time the maximum allowable working pressure shall not be exceeded by more than the amount specified in HG-400.1 and HG-400.2.

HG-300.1 Vacuum Boilers. Rules for factory sealed boilers to be operated only under vacuum conditions are given in Appendix 5.

HG-301 CYLINDRICAL PARTS UNDER INTERNAL PRESSURE

HG-301.1 General. The required thickness and the design pressure of cylindrical shells, tubes, pipe, and headers shall be determined in accordance with the following formulas:

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$P = \frac{SEt}{R + 0.6t}$$

where

E = efficiency of longitudinal joint or of ligament between tube holes, whichever is the lesser. For welded joints, use the efficiency specified in HW-702. For seamless shells, use $E = 1$.
P = design pressure [but not less than 30 psi (200 kPa)]
R = inside radius of cylinder
S = maximum allowable stress value from Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2
t = required wall thickness

HG-301.2 Tubes

(a) The required thickness of tubes and pipes used as tubes shall be determined in accordance with the formulas in HG-301.1, adding to that value a minimum additional thickness of 0.04 in. (1 mm) as an allowance for rolling and structural stability. The additional 0.04 in. (1 mm) thickness is not required for tubes strength welded to tubesheets, headers, or drums.

(b) In no case shall the thickness of a tube or pipe used as a tube when installed by welding or rolling be less than 0.061 in. (1.5 mm) at the point where it attaches to the tubesheet, header, or drum. There is no minimum thickness requirement for nonferrous tubes installed by brazing, except that the thickness used must meet the brazing qualification requirements of Section IX, Part QB.

HG-305 FORMED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONCAVE SIDE

HG-305.1 General. The required thickness at the thinnest point after forming[1] of ellipsoidal, torispherical, and hemispherical heads under pressure on the concave side (plus heads) shall be computed by the appropriate formulas in this paragraph.

(a) Notation. The symbols used in this paragraph are defined as follows:

D = inside diameter of the head skirt; or inside length of the major axis of an ellipsoidal head; or inside diameter of a cone head at the point under consideration, measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis
E = lowest efficiency of any joint in the head. For welded joints, use the efficiency specified in

[1] In order to insure that a finished head is not less than the minimum thickness required, it is customary to use a thicker plate to take care of possible thinning during the process of forming. The neck of an opening in a head with an integrally flanged opening will thin out due to the fluing operation. This is permissible provided the neck thickness is not less than the minimum thickness specified in HG-301 or the thickness required for a cylindrical shell having a diameter equal to the maximum diameter of the opening. (See HG-323.)

HW-702. For seamless heads, use $E = 1$, except for hemispherical heads furnished without a skirt, in which case use the efficiency of the head-to-shell joint.

L = inside spherical or crown radius

P = design pressure [but not less than 30 psi (200 kPa)]

S = maximum allowable stress value as given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2

t = required wall thickness after forming

HG-305.2 Ellipsoidal Heads. The required thickness and the design pressure of a dished head of semiellipsoidal form, in which half the minor axis (inside depth of the head minus the skirt) equals one-fourth of the inside diameter of the head skirt, shall be calculated by the following formulas:

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P}$$

or

$$P = \frac{2SEt}{D + 0.2t}$$

HG-305.3 Torispherical Heads. The required thickness and the design pressure of a torispherical head shall be calculated by the following formulas (see HG-305.6):

$$t = \frac{0.885PL}{SE - 0.1P}$$

or

$$P = \frac{SEt}{0.885L + 0.1t}$$

HG-305.4 Hemispherical Heads. The required thickness and the design pressure of a hemispherical head in which P does not exceed $0.665SE$ shall be calculated by the following formulas:

$$t = \frac{PL}{2SE - 0.2P}$$

or

$$P = \frac{2SEt}{L + 0.2t}$$

HG-305.5 Formed Heads With Stays. A formed head of a lesser thickness than that required by the rules of this paragraph may be used provided it is stayed as a flat surface according to the rules of HG-340 for stayed flat plates, no allowance being made in such staying for the holding power due to the curvature of the head unless all the following conditions are met:

(a) the head is at least two-thirds as thick as required by the rules of this paragraph for an unstayed head

(b) the head is at least $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm) thick

(c) the stays are through-stays attached to the head by outside and inside nuts

(d) the design pressure on the head is taken as that calculated for an unstayed formed head plus the pressure calculated for the stays by the formula for stayed surfaces in HG-340 using a value of $C = 1.63$

HG-305.6 Inside Crown Radius of Unstayed Heads. The inside crown radius to which an unstayed formed head is dished shall be not greater than the outside diameter of the skirt of the head. The inside knuckle radius of a torispherical head shall be not less than 6% of the outside diameter of the skirt of the head but in no case less than three times the head thickness.

HG-305.7 Heads Built Up of Several Shapes. A head for a cylindrical shell may be built up of several head shapes, the thicknesses of which satisfy the requirements of the appropriate formulas above, provided that adjoining shapes are so formed that they have a common tangent transverse to the joint.

HG-305.8 Length of Skirts. The required length of skirt on heads concave and convex to pressure shall comply with HW-715.

HG-305.9 Permissible Diameter of Flat Spots on Formed Heads. If a torispherical, ellipsoidal, or hemispherical head is formed with a flattened spot or surface, the diameter of the flat spot shall not exceed that permitted for flat heads as given by the formula in HG-307, using $C = 0.20$.

HG-306 FORMED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

HG-306.1 Unstayed dished heads with the pressure on the convex side shall have a design pressure equal to 60% of that for heads of the same dimensions having the pressure on the concave side (see HG-305).

HG-307 FLAT HEADS

HG-307.1 General. The minimum thickness of unstayed heads, cover plates, and blind flanges shall conform to the requirements given in this paragraph. These requirements apply to both circular and noncircular heads and covers. In addition, flat heads or covers made of cast iron shall be subjected to the proof test provisions of HG-500. Some acceptable types of flat heads and covers are shown in Fig. HG-307.

(a) The symbols used in this paragraph and Fig. HG-307 are defined as follows:

C = a factor depending upon the method of attachment of the head, shell, pipe, or header dimensions, and other items as listed in HG-307.4 below, dimensionless. The factors for welded covers also include a factor of 0.667 that effectively increases the allowable stress for such construction to $1.5S$.

D = long span of noncircular heads or covers measured perpendicular to short span

d = diameter, or short span, measured as indicated in Fig. HG-307

H_G = gasket moment arm, equal to the radial distance from the center line of the bolts to the line of the gasket reaction, as shown in Fig. HG-307, sketches (j) and (k)

L = perimeter of noncircular bolted head measured along the centers of the bolt holes

l = length of flange or flanged heads, measured from the tangent line of knuckle, as indicated in Fig. HG-307, sketches (a) and (c)

m = the ratio t_r/t_s, dimensionless

P = design pressure

r = inside corner radius on the head formed by flanging or forging

S = maximum allowable stress value using values given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2

t = minimum required thickness of flat head or cover

t_e = minimum distance from beveled end of drum, pipe, or header, before welding, to outer face of head, as indicated in Fig. HG-307, sketch (i),

t_f = actual thickness of the flange on a forged head, at the large end, as indicated in Fig. HG-307, sketch (b)

t_h = actual thickness of flat head or cover

t_r = required thickness of seamless shell, pipe, or header, for pressure

t_s = actual thickness of shell, pipe, or header

t_w = thickness through the weld joining the edge of a head to the inside of a drum, pipe, or header, as indicated in Fig. HG-307, sketch (g)

t_1 = throat dimension of the closure weld, as indicated in Fig. HG-307, sketch (r)

W = total bolt load as further defined in HG-307.2

Z = a factor for noncircular heads and covers that depends on the ratio of short span to long span, as given in HG-307.2 below, dimensionless

HG-307.2 Thickness of Circular, Flat, Unstayed Heads, Covers, and Blind Flanges. The thickness of flat unstayed heads, covers, and blind flanges shall conform to one of the following requirements:[2]

(a) Circular blind flanges of ferrous materials conforming to ANSI B16.5 shall be acceptable for the diameters and pressure–temperature ratings in Tables 2 to 8 of that Standard when of the types shown in Fig. HG-307, sketches (j) and (k).

(b) The minimum required thickness of flat unstayed circular heads, covers, and blind flanges shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$t = d\sqrt{CP/S} \tag{1}$$

except when the head, cover, or blind flange is attached by bolts causing an edge moment [Fig. HG-307, sketches (j) and (k)], in which case the thickness shall be calculated by

$$t = d\sqrt{CP/S + 1.9WH_G/Sd^3} \tag{2}$$

When using Formula (2), the thickness t shall be calculated for both operating conditions and gasket seating, and the greater of the two values shall be used. For operating conditions, the value of P shall be the design pressure, the value of S at design temperature shall be used, and W shall be the sum of the bolt loads required to resist the end pressure load and to maintain tightness of the gasket. For gasket seating, P equals zero, the value of S at atmospheric temperature shall be used, and W shall be the average of the required bolt load and the load available from the bolt area actually used.

HG-307.3 Thickness of Noncircular, Flat, Unstayed Heads, Covers, and Blind Flanges

(a) Flat unstayed heads, covers, or blind flanges may be square, rectangular, elliptical, obround, segmental, or otherwise noncircular. Their required thickness shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$t = d\sqrt{ZCP/S} \tag{3}$$

where

$$Z = 3.4 - \frac{2.4d}{D} \tag{4}$$

with the limitation that Z need not be greater than 2.5.

(b) Formula (3) does not apply to noncircular heads, covers, or blind flanges attached by bolts causing a bolt edge moment [Fig. HG-307, sketches (j) and (k)]. For noncircular heads of this type, the required thickness shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$t = d\sqrt{ZCP/S + 6WH_G/SLd^2} \tag{5}$$

When using Formula (5), the thickness t shall be calculated in the same way as specified above for Formula (2).

HG-307.4 Values of C for Use in Formulas in HG-307.2 and HG-307.3. For the types of construction shown in Fig. HG-307, the values of C to be used in Formulas (1), (2), (3), and (5) are as follows:

(a) Figure HG-307, sketch (a): $C = 0.17$ for flanged circular and noncircular heads forged integral with or butt welded to the shell, pipe, or header, with an inside corner radius not less than three times the required head thickness,

[2] The formulas provide safe construction as far as stress is concerned. Greater thicknesses may be necessary if deflection would cause leakage at threaded or gasketed joints.

with no special requirement with regard to length of flange, and where the welding meets all the requirements for circumferential joints given in Part HF, Subpart HW.

$C = 0.10$ for circular heads, when the flange length for heads of the above design is not less than

$$l = \left(1.1 - 0.8 \frac{t_s^2}{t_s^2}\right) \sqrt{dt_h} \qquad (6)$$

When $C = 0.10$ is used, the taper shall be at least 1:3.

(b) Figure HG-307, sketch (b): $C = 0.17$ for circular and noncircular heads forged integral with or butt-welded to the shell, pipe, or header, where the corner radius on the inside is not less than three times the thickness of the flange and where the welding meets all the requirements for circumferential joints given in Part HF, Subpart HW.

(c) Figure HG-307, sketch (c): $C = 0.20$ for circular flanged plates screwed over the end of the shell, pipe, or header, with inside corner radius not less than $3t$, in which the design of the threaded joint against failure by shear, tension, or compression, resulting from the end force due to pressure, is based on a factor of safety of at least five, and the threaded parts are at least as strong as the threads for standard piping of the same diameter. Seal welding may be used, if desired.

(d) Figure HG-307, sketch (d): $C = 0.13$ for integral flat circular heads when the dimension d does not exceed 24 in. (610 mm), the ratio of thickness of the head to the dimension d is not less than 0.05 nor greater than 0.25, the head thickness t_h is not less than the shell thickness t_s, the inside corner radius is not less than $0.25t$, and the construction is obtained by special techniques of upsetting and spinning the end of the shell, pipe, or header, such as employed in closing header ends.

(e) Figure HG-307, sketches (e), (f), and (g): $C = 0.33m$ but not less than 0.20 for circular plates, welded to the inside of a drum, pipe, or header, and otherwise meeting the requirements for the respective types of fusion welded boiler drums. If a value of m less than 1 is used in calculating t, the shell thickness t_s shall be maintained along a distance inwardly from the inside face of the head equal to at least $2\sqrt{dt_s}$. The throat thickness of the fillet welds in sketches (e) and (f) shall be at least $0.7t_s$. The size of the weld t_w in sketch (g) shall be not less than two times the required thickness of a seamless shell nor less than 1.25 times the nominal shell thickness but need not be greater than the head thickness; the weld shall be deposited in a welding groove with the root of the weld at the inner face of the head as shown in the figure.

$C = 0.33$ for noncircular plates, welded to the inside of a drum, pipe, or header, and otherwise meeting the requirements for the respective types of fusion welded boiler drums. The throat thickness of the fillet welds in sketches (e) and (f) shall be at least $0.7t_s$. The size of the weld t_w in sketch (g) shall be not less than two times the required thickness of a seamless shell nor less than 1.25 times the nominal shell thickness but need not be greater than the head thickness; the weld shall be deposited in a welding groove with the root of the weld at the inner face of the head as shown in the figure.

(f) Figure HG-307, sketch (h): $C = 0.33$ for circular plates welded to the end of the shell when t_s is at least $1.25t_r$ and the beveled end of the shell is located at a distance no less than $2r$ nor less than $1.25t_s$ from the outer face of the head. The width at the bottom of the welding groove shall be at least equal to the shell thickness but need not be over ¼ in. (6 mm).

(g) Figure HG-307, sketch (i): $C = 0.33m$ but not less than 0.20 for circular plates welded to the end of the drum, pipe, or header, when an inside weld with minimum throat thickness of $0.7t_s$ is used, and when the beveled end of the drum, pipe, or header is located at a distance not less than $2t_r$ nor less than $1.25t_s$ from the outer face of the head. The width at the bottom of the welding groove shall be at least equal to t_s, but need not be over ¼ in. (6 mm).

(h) Figure HG-307, sketches (j) and (k): $C = 0.3$ for circular and noncircular heads and covers bolted to the shell, flange, or side plate, as indicated in the figures. Note that Formula (2) or (5) shall be used because of the extra moment applied to the cover by the bolting. When the cover plate is grooved for a peripheral gasket, as shown in sketch (k), the net cover plate thickness under the groove or between the groove and the outer edge of the cover plate shall be not less than

$$d\sqrt{1.9WH_G/Sd^3}$$

for circular heads and covers, nor less than

$$d\sqrt{6WH_G/SLd^2}$$

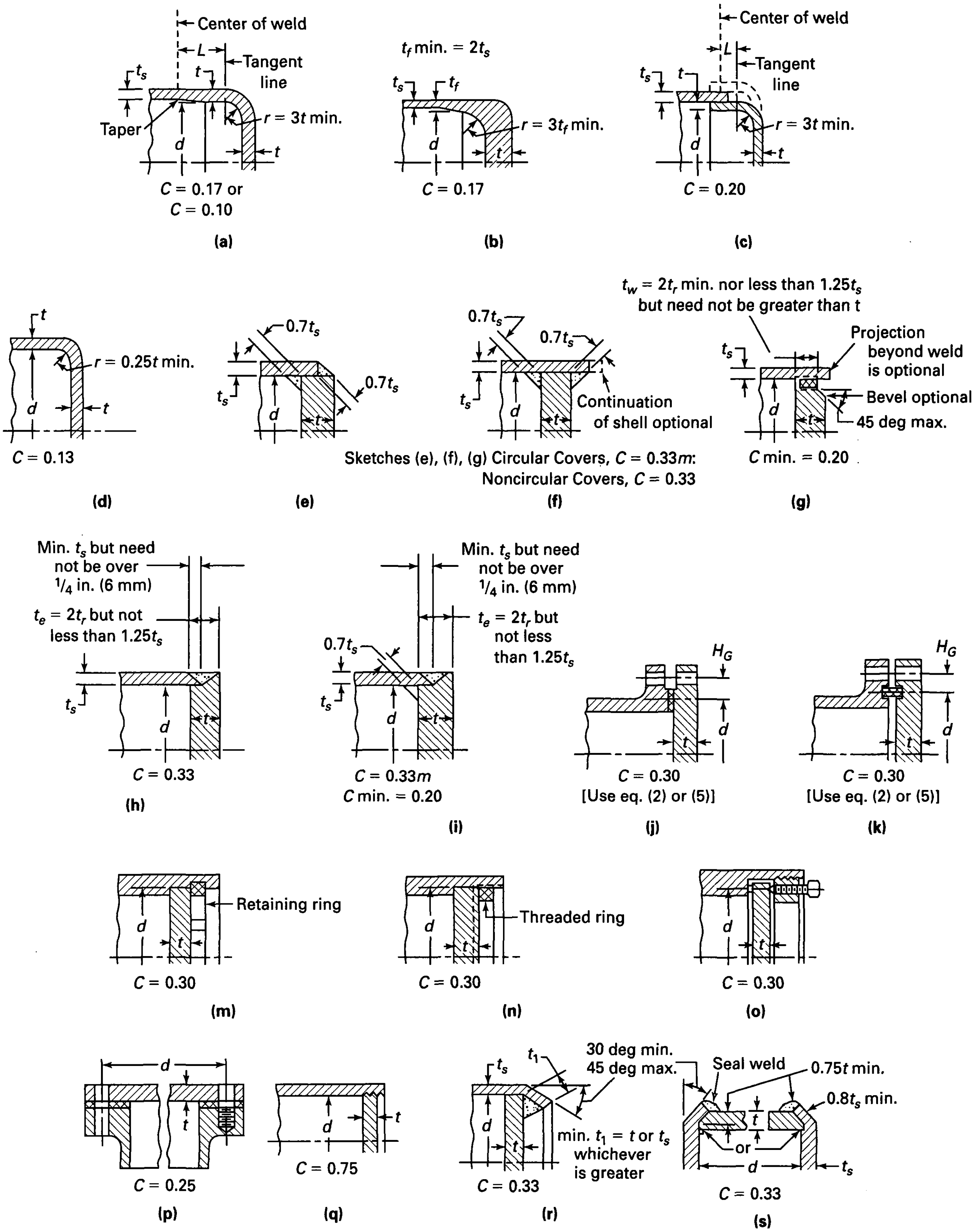
for noncircular heads and covers.

(i) Figure HG-307, sketches (m), (n), and (o): $C = 0.3$ for a circular plate inserted into the end of a shell, pipe, or header, and held in place by a positive mechanical locking arrangement, and when all possible means of failure either by shear, tension, compression, or radial deformation, including flaring, resulting from pressure and differential thermal expansion, are resisted with a factor of safety of at least five. Seal welding may be used, if desired.

(j) Figure HG-307, sketch (p): $C = 0.25$ for circular and noncircular covers bolted with a full-face gasket to shells, flanges, or side plates.

(k) Figure HG-307, sketch (q): $C = 0.75$ for circular plates screwed into the end of a shell, pipe, or header, having an inside diameter d not exceeding 12 in. (300 mm); or for heads having an integral flange screwed over the end of a shell, pipe, or header, having an inside diameter d not exceeding 12 in. (300 mm); and when the design of

FIG. HG-307 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF UNSTAYED FLAT HEADS AND COVERS
(The Following Illustrations Are Diagrammatic Only; Other Designs That Meet the Requirements of HG-307 Will Be Acceptable.)



the threaded joint against failure by shear, tension, compression, or radial deformation, including flaring, resulting from pressure and differential thermal expansion, is based on a factor of at least five. If a tapered pipe thread is used, the requirements of Table HG-370 shall also be met. Seal welding may be used, if desired.

(l) Figure HG-307, sketch (r): $C = 0.33$ for circular plates having a dimension d not exceeding 18 in. (450 mm) inserted into the shell, pipe, or header, and welded as shown, and otherwise meeting the requirements for fusion welded boiler drums. The end of the shell, pipe, or header shall be crimped over at least 30 deg, but not more than 45 deg. The crimping may be done cold only when this operation will not injure the metal. The throat of the weld shall be not less than the thickness of the flat head or the shell, pipe, or header, whichever is greater.

(m) Figure HG-307, sketch (s): $C = 0.33$ for circular beveled plates having a diameter not exceeding 18 in. (450 mm), inserted into a shell, pipe, or header, the end of which is crimped over at least 30 deg, but not more than 45 deg, and when the undercutting for seating leaves at least 80% of the shell thickness. The beveling shall be not less than 75% of the head thickness. The crimping shall be done when the entire circumference of the cylinder is uniformly heated to the proper forging temperature for the material used. For this construction, the ratio t_s/d shall be not less than the ratio P/S nor less than 0.05. The design pressure for this construction shall not exceed $P = S/5d$.

Figure HG-307 is diagrammatic only. Other designs that meet the requirements of HG-307 will be acceptable.

HG-309 SPHERICALLY DISHED COVERS (BOLTED HEADS)

(a) Notation. The symbols used in the formulas of this paragraph are defined as follows:

A = outside diameter of flange
B = inside diameter of flange
C = bolt circle diameter
L = inside spherical or crown radius
M_o = the total moment determined as in Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 2, 2-6, except that for heads of the type shown in Fig. HG-309, sketch (d), a moment $H_r h_r$ (which may add or subtract) shall be included in addition to the moment $H_D h_D$ where
  H_D = axial component of the membrane load in the spherical segment acting at the inside of the flange ring
  = $0.785B^2P$
  h_D = radial distance from the bolt circle to the inside of the flange ring
  H_r = radial component of the membrane load in the spherical segment acting at the intersection of the inside of the flange ring with the center line of the dished cover thickness
  H_r = $H_D \cot \beta_1$
  h_r = lever arm of force H_r about centroid of flange ring

NOTE: Since $H_r h_r$ in some cases will subtract from the total moment, the moment in the flange ring when the internal pressure is zero may be the determining loading for the flange design.

P = design pressure
r = inside knuckle radius
S = maximum allowable stress value as given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2
T = flange thickness
t = minimum required thickness of head plate after forming

HG-309.1 Heads Concave to Pressure. Circular spherically dished heads with bolting flanges, concave to the pressure and conforming to the several types illustrated in Fig. HG-309 shall be designed in accordance with the following formulas:

(a) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HG-309, Sketch (a)

(1) The thickness of the head t shall be determined by the appropriate formula in HG-305.

(2) The head radius L or the knuckle radius r shall not exceed the limitations given in HG-305.

(3) The flange shall comply at least with the requirements of Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 2, Fig. 2-4 and shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of 2-1 through 2-7. (Within the range of ANSI B16.5, the flange facings and drillings should conform to those standards and the thickness specified therein shall be considered as a minimum requirement.)

(b) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HG-309, Sketch (b). (No joint efficiency factor is required.)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness T

For ring gasket,

$$T = \sqrt{\frac{M_o}{SB}\left[\frac{A+B}{A-B}\right]}$$

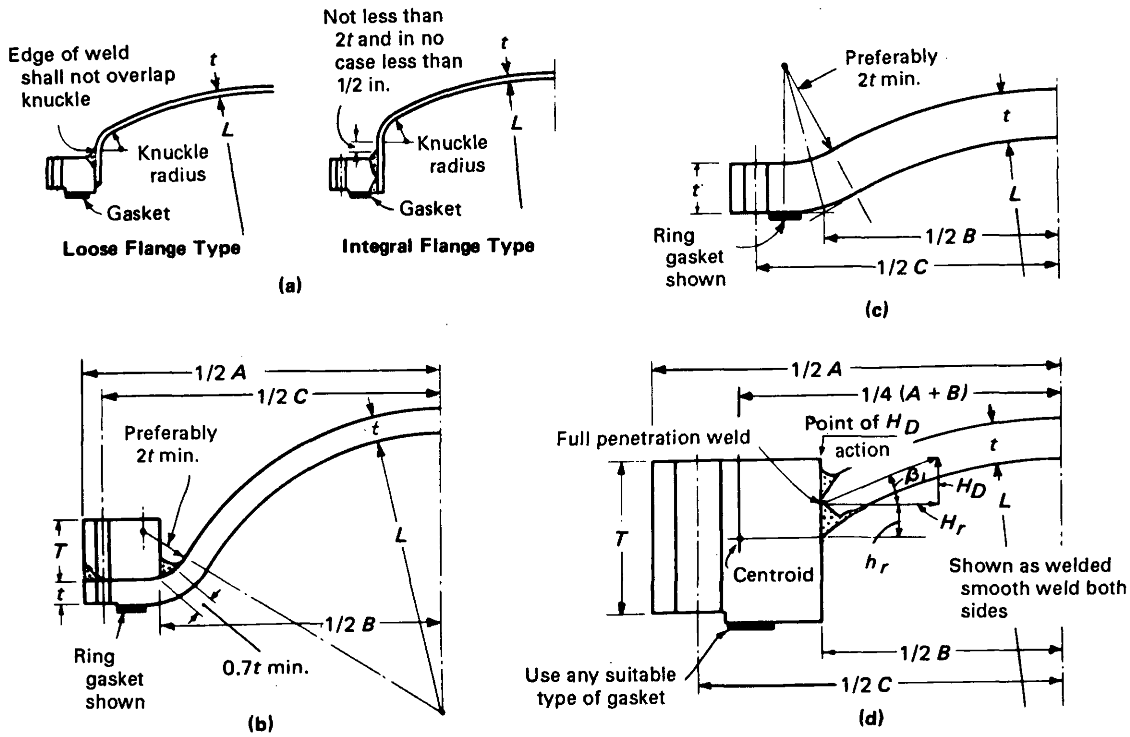
For full-face gasket,

$$T = 0.6\sqrt{\frac{P}{S}\left[\frac{B(A+B)(C-B)}{A-B}\right]}$$

NOTE: The radial components of the membrane load in the spherical segment are assumed to be resisted by its flange.

Within the range of ANSI B16.5, the flange facings and drillings should conform to those standards, and the thickness specified herein shall be considered as a minimum requirement.

FIG. HG-309 SPHERICALLY DISHED STEEL PLATE COVERS WITH BOLTING FLANGES



(c) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HG-309, Sketch (c). (No joint efficiency factor is required.)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness for ring gaskets shall be calculated as follows:

(a) For heads with round bolting holes,

$$T = Q + \sqrt{\frac{1.875M_o(C + B)}{SB(7C - 5B)}} \qquad \text{(I)}$$

where

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left[\frac{C + B}{7C - 5B}\right] \qquad \text{(II)}$$

(b) For heads with bolting holes slotted through the edge of the head,

$$T = Q + \sqrt{\frac{1.875M_o(C + B)}{SB(3C - 5B)}} \qquad \text{(III)}$$

where

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left[\frac{C + B}{3C - B}\right] \qquad \text{(IV)}$$

(3) Flange thickness for full face gaskets shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$T = Q + \sqrt{Q^2 + \frac{3BQ(C - B)}{L}} \qquad \text{(V)}$$

The value of Q in eq. (V) is calculated by eq. (II) for round bolting holes or by eq. (IV) for bolting holes slotted through the edge of the head.

(4) The required flange thickness shall be T as calculated in (2) or (3) above, but in no case less than the value of t calculated in (1) above.

(d) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HG-309, Sketch (d). (No joint efficiency factor is required.)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness

$$T = F + \sqrt{F^2 + J}$$

where

$$F = \frac{PB\sqrt{4L^2 - B^2}}{8S(A - B)}$$

and

$$J = \left(\frac{M_o}{SB}\right)\left(\frac{A + B}{A - B}\right)$$

HG-312 CYLINDRICAL PARTS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

HG-312.1 Plain Type Furnaces. Plain furnaces that are complete cylinders shall conform to the following:

(a) The thickness of the furnace wall shall be not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(b) The design temperature of the furnace shall be taken as 500°F (260°C).

(c) Furnaces shall be rolled to a circle, with a maximum deviation from the true circle of not more than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(d) The thickness of the furnace wall shall be determined by the use of the rules of HG-312.3. External pressure charts for use in determining minimum requirements are given in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D. Figure numbers in this Article are contained in that Subpart. The symbols defined as follows are used in the formulas of this paragraph:

A = factor determined from Fig. G in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D and used to enter the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D

B = factor determined from the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for maximum design, metal temperature [see HG-312.1(b)]

D_o = outside diameter of furnace

L = design length of plain furnace taken as the distance from center to center of weld attachment, in.; design length of ring reinforced furnace section, taken as the greatest center-to-center distance between any two adjacent stiffening rings; or the distance from the center of the first stiffening ring to the center of the furnace weld attachment, in. In case a flared-end assembly is used, the distance shall be measured to the point of tangency between the flare and the furnace and the adjacent stiffening ring.

P = design pressure

t = minimum required wall thickness of furnaces

HG-312.2 Tubes. The wall thickness of tubes subject to external pressure shall conform to the following:

(a) The minimum wall thickness shall be determined by use of the procedure outlined in HG-312.3.

(b) The design temperature of tubes shall be the mean metal temperature as determined by the boiler Manufacturer.

(c) A minimum additional thickness of 0.04 in. (1 mm) shall be added as an allowance for rolling and structural stability. The additional 0.04 in. (1 mm) thickness is not required for tube strength welded to tubesheets, headers, or drums.

HG-312.3 Procedure for Determining Wall Thickness of Plain Furnaces and Tubes. The required wall thickness of the furnace and tubes shall be not less than determined by the following procedure:

Step 1: Assume a value for t. Determine the ratio L/D_o and D_o/t.

Step 2: Enter Fig. G in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D at the value of L/D_o determined in Step 1. For values of L/D_o greater than 50, enter the chart at a value of $L/D_o = 50$. For values of L/D_o less than 0.05, enter the chart at a value of $L/D_o = 0.05$.

Step 3: Move horizontally to the line for the value of D_o/t determined in Step 1. Interpolation may be made for intermediate values of D_o/t. From this point of intersection, move vertically downward to determine the value of factor A.

Step 4: Using the value of A calculated in Step 3, enter the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material under consideration. Move vertically to an intersection with the material/temperature line for the design temperature.

Step 5: From the intersection obtained in Step 4, move horizontally to the right and read the value of factor B.

Step 6: Using this value of B, calculate the value of the maximum allowable external working pressure P_a using the following formula:

$$P_a = \frac{B}{D_o/t}$$

Step 7: Compare P_a with P. If P_a is less than P, a greater value of t must be selected or a smaller value of L or some combination of both to increase P_a so that it is equal to or greater than P. (An example is included in Appendix C.)

HG-312.4 Ring Reinforced Type Furnace. Ring reinforced furnaces as shown in Fig. HG-312.3 may be constructed with completely circular stiffening rings provided

(a) the stiffening ring is rectangular in cross section and is fabricated from one piece of plate, or from plate sections or bars provided full-penetration welds are used in assembling.

(b) the stiffening ring after fabrication has a thickness of not less than $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) and not more than $\frac{13}{16}$ in. (21 mm) and in no case thicker than $1\frac{1}{4}$ times the furnace wall.

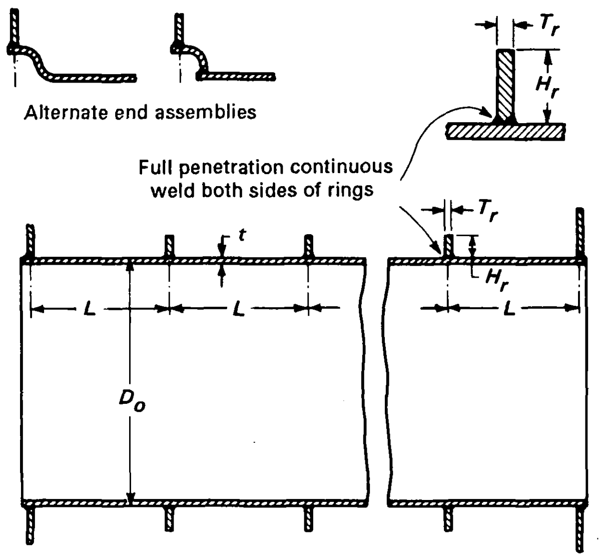
(c) the ratio of height of the stiffening ring to its thickness (H_r/T_r) is not over eight nor less than three.

(d) the stiffening ring is attached to the furnace by a full penetration weld as shown in Fig. HG-312.3.

(e) the thickness of the furnace wall is a minimum of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(f) the design temperature of the furnace shall be taken as 500°F (260°C).

FIG. HG-312.3 ACCEPTABLE TYPE OF RING REINFORCED FURNACE



(g) the boiler design permits replacement of the furnace. A flared or welded OG-ring may be accepted as meeting this requirement. (See Fig. HG-312.3.)

(h) the thickness of the furnace wall or tube wall and the design of stiffening rings are determined by the procedure contained in Steps 1 through 7 of HG-312.3. L is as defined in HG-312.1. The symbols defined in HG-312.1 are used in the design formula. Steps 1 through 7 of HG-312.3 shall apply.

(i) the required moment of inertia of a circumferential stiffening ring shall not be less than determined by the following formula:

$$I_s = \frac{D_o^2 L \left(t + \frac{A_s}{L}\right) A}{14}$$

where

A_s = cross-sectional area of the stiffening ring, sq in. (mm^2)

I_s = required moment of inertia of the stiffening ring about its neutral axis parallel to the axis of the furnace, in.^{4} (mm^4)

P, D_o, and t are as defined in HG-312.1.

HG-312.5 Procedure for Determining Moment of Inertia of Stiffening Rings. The moment of inertia for a *stiffening ring shall be determined* by the following procedure.

Step 1: Assuming that the furnace has been designed and D_o, L, and t are known, select a rectangular member to be used for a stiffening ring and determine its area A_s and its moment of inertia I. Then calculate B by the following formula:

$$B = \frac{PD_o}{t + \frac{A_s}{L}}$$

where

B is as defined in HG-312.1.

P, D_o, t, A_s, and L are defined above.

Step 2: Enter the right-hand side of the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material under consideration at the value of B determined in Step 1.

Step 3: Follow horizontally to the material line.

Step 4: Move down vertically to the bottom of the chart and read the value of A.

Step 5: Compute the value of the required moment of inertia I_s from the formula given above.

Step 6: If the required I_s is greater than the moment of inertia I for the section selected in Step 1, a new section with a larger moment of inertia must be selected and a new I_s determined. If the required I_s is smaller than I for the section selected by Step 1, that section should be satisfactory. (An example is included in Appendix C.)

HG-312.6 Corrugated Furnaces. The design pressure of corrugated furnaces, such as the Leeds suspension bulb, Morison, Fox, Purves, or Brown, having plain portions at the ends not exceeding 9 in. (225 mm) in length shall be computed as follows:

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$P = Ct/D$$

(SI Units)

$$P = 6.89C(t/D) \text{ kPa}$$

where

C = 17,300 (119 000), a constant for Leeds furnaces, when corrugations are not more than 8 in. (200 mm) from center to center and not less than 2¼ in. (57 mm) deep

C = 15,600 (108 000), a constant for Morison furnaces, when corrugations are not more than 8 in. (200 mm) from center to center and the radius of the outer corrugation is not more than one-half of the suspension curve

C = 14,000 (96 500), a constant for Fox furnaces, when corrugations are not more than 8 in. (200 mm) from center to center and not less than 1½ in. (38 mm) deep

C = 14,000 (96 500) a constant for Purves furnaces, when rib projections are not more than 9 in.

(225 mm) from center to center and not less than $1\frac{3}{8}$ in. (35 mm) deep

C = 14,000 (96 500) a constant for Brown furnaces, when corrugations are not more than 9 in. (225 mm) from center to center and not less than $1\frac{5}{8}$ in. (41 mm) deep

D = mean diameter, in. (mm)

P = design pressure, psi (kPa)

t = thickness, in. (mm), not less than $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) for Leeds, Morison, Fox, and Brown, and not less than $\frac{7}{16}$ in. (11 mm) for Purves and other furnaces corrugated by sections not over 18 in. (450 mm) long

(a) In calculating the mean diameter of the Morison furnace, the least inside diameter plus 2 in. (50 mm) may be taken as the mean diameter.

(b) The longitudinal and circumferential joints shall be fusion welded of the double-welded butt type.

(c) The thickness of a corrugated or ribbed furnace shall be ascertained by actual measurement by the furnace manufacturer, by gaging the thickness of the corrugated portions. If a hole is drilled through the sheet to determine the thickness, the hole shall be not more than $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm). When the furnace is installed, this hole shall be located in the bottom of the furnace and closed by a threaded plug. For the Brown and Purves furnaces, the hole shall be in the center of the second flat from the boiler front; for the Morison, Fox, and other similar types, in the center of the top corrugation, at least as far in as the fourth corrugation from the front end of the furnace.

HG-312.7 Combination Type Furnaces. Combination type furnaces for external pressure may be constructed by combining a plain circular section and a corrugated section provided

(a) each type of furnace is designed to be self-supporting, requiring no support from the other furnace at their point of connection.

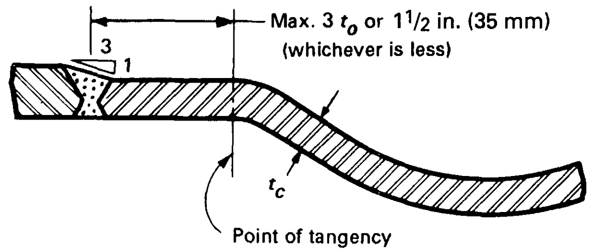
(b) HG-312.1 and HG-312.3 shall be used for calculating the design pressure of the plain section; in applying the length in the text, or L in the formulas, the length used shall always be twice the actual length of the plain section; the actual length of plain section is the distance measured from the center line of the head attachment weld to the center line of the full penetration weld joining the two sections.

(c) the design pressure of the corrugated section shall be determined from HG-312.6.

(d) the full penetration weld joining a plain self-supporting section to a corrugated self-supporting section shall be located as shown in Fig. HG-312.6.

HG-312.8 Semicircular Furnaces or Crown Sheets Subjected to External Pressure. Unstayed furnaces or crown sheets where the top portion is semicircular and the

FIG. HG-312.6 CONNECTION BETWEEN PLAIN AND CORRUGATED FURNACE



unstayed portion does not exceed 120 deg in arc shall conform to the following.

(a) The thickness of the semicircular furnace or crown sheet shall be not less than $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm).

(b) The design temperature of the semicircular furnace or crown sheet shall be taken as 500°F (260°C).

(c) Semicircular portions of the furnace or crown sheet shall be rolled to practically a true circle, with a maximum deviation from the true circle of not more than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(d) The allowable working pressure of the semicircular furnace or crown sheet shall be not more than 70% of P_a as computed from the procedure outlined in HG-312.1 and HG-312.3 and using the applicable chart.

(e) Bar Reinforcement

(1) Bar reinforcement, when required to reduce the effective furnace length L, shall be computed using the formulas in HG-312.5 and HG-312.4.

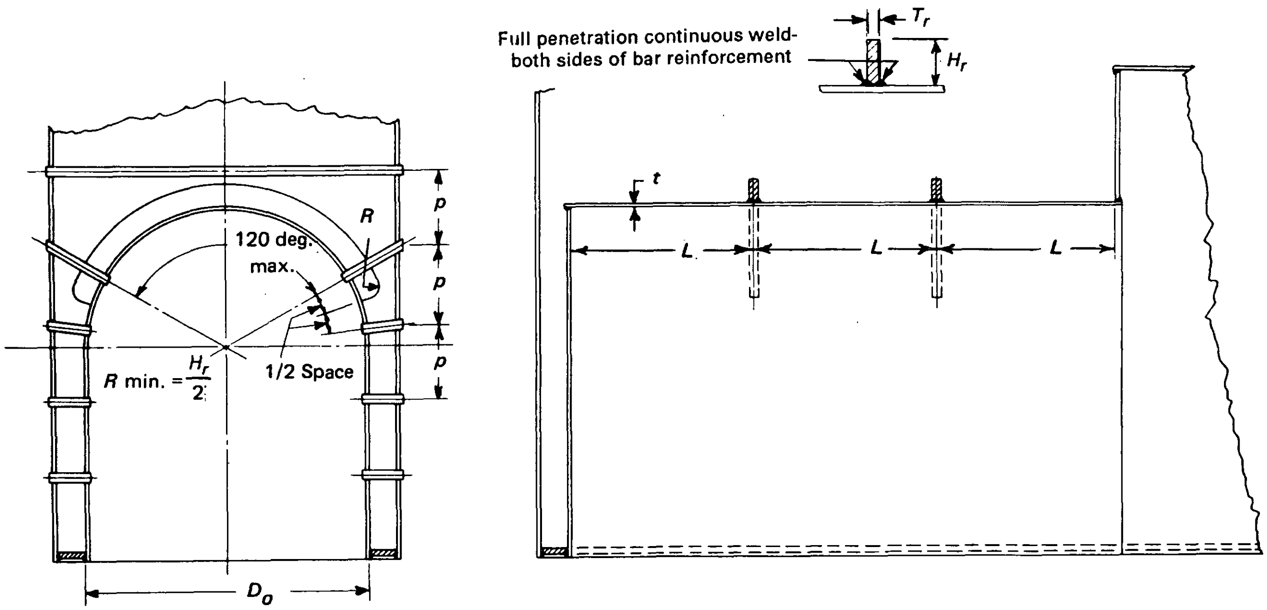
(2) Bar reinforcement shall be fabricated and installed as shown in Fig. HG-312.7.

(3) Bar reinforcement, after fabrication, shall have a thickness of not less than $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) and not more than $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (21 mm) and in no case thicker than $1\frac{1}{4}$ times the wall section of the semicircular portion.

(4) The ratio of height of the bar reinforcement to its thickness H_r / T_r shall be not more than eight nor less than three.

(f) For unstayed furnaces or crown sheets, where the top portion is semicircular and the unstayed portion exceeds 120 deg in arc, that portion exceeding the 120 deg arc shall be stayed as a flat plate in accordance with HG-340.

FIG. HG-312.7 ACCEPTABLE TYPE OF SEMICIRCULAR FURNACE REINFORCEMENT



HG-320 OPENINGS IN BOILERS, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS[3,4]

HG-320.1 Shape of Openings.[5] Openings in cylindrical, spherical, or conical portions of boilers or in formed heads shall preferably be circular, elliptical, or obround[6] except as otherwise provided in HG-320.2. When the long dimension of an elliptical or obround opening exceeds twice the short dimension, the reinforcement across the short dimension shall be increased as necessary to provide against excessive distortion due to twisting moment.

HG-320.2 Size of Openings. While openings in cylindrical and spherical shells are not limited as to size provided they are adequately reinforced, the rules given herein for reinforcement are intended to apply to openings not exceeding the following dimensions:

(a) for boilers 60 in. (1 500 mm) in diameter and less: one-half the boiler diameter but not over 20 in. (500 mm).

(b) for boilers over 60 in. (1 500 mm) in diameter: one-third the boiler diameter, but not over 40 in. (1 000 mm).

(c) larger openings should be given special attention and may be provided with reinforcement in any suitable manner that complies with the intent of the Code rules. It is recommended that the reinforcement provided be distributed close to the opening. (A provision of about two-thirds of the required reinforcement within a distance of one-fourth of the nozzle diameter on each side of the finished opening is suggested.) Special consideration should be given to the fabrication details used and the inspection employed on critical openings; reinforcement often may be advantageously obtained by use of a thicker shell plate for a boiler course or inserted locally around the openings; welds may be ground to concave contour and the inside corners of the opening rounded to a generous radius to reduce stress concentrations. Appropriate proof testing may be advisable in extreme cases of large openings approaching full boiler diameter, openings of unusual shape, etc.

[3] The rules governing openings as given in this Code are based on the stress intensification created by the existence of a hole in an otherwise symmetrical section. They are based on experience with vessels designed with a safety factor of five applied to the specified minimum tensile strength of the shell material. External loadings such as those due to thermal expansion or to unsupported weight of connecting piping have not been evaluated. These factors should be given attention in unusual designs or under conditions of cyclic loading.

[4] Typical examples of the application of these rules are given in Appendix D.

[5] The opening made by a pipe or a circular nozzle, the axis of which is not perpendicular to the boiler wall or head, may be considered an elliptical opening for design purposes.

[6] An obround opening is one that is formed by two parallel sides and semicircular ends.

HG-320.3 Strength and Design of Finished Openings

(a) All references to dimensions in this and succeeding paragraphs apply to the finished construction after adjustment has been made for any material added as corrosion or other allowance. For design purposes, no metal added as corrosion or other allowance may be considered as reinforcement. Reinforcement shall be provided to satisfy the requirements of HG-321 for all openings except as otherwise provided in (b), (c), and (d) below.

(b) Openings in a definite pattern, such as tube holes, may be designed in accordance with the rules for ligaments in HG-350 provided the diameter of the largest hole in the group does not exceed that permitted by the chart in Fig. HG-320.

The symbols given in Fig. HG-320 are defined as follows:

D = outer diameter of the shell, in. (mm)
d = maximum allowable diameter of opening, in. (mm)
K = $PD/2St$
P = design pressure
S = maximum allowable stress value taken from Table HF-300
t = nominal thickness of the shell, in. (mm)

(c) No calculations need be made to determine the availability of reinforcement for single openings in boilers not subject to rapid fluctuations in pressure or temperature and in which the outside diameter of the opening does not exceed one-fourth of the inside diameter of the boiler, provided the diameter of the finished opening as defined in HG-321.2 does not exceed the following sizes:

(1) NPS 2 (DN 50) for welded connections in boiler walls over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) thick and for all threaded, studded, or expanded connections

(2) NPS 3 (DN 80) for welded connections in boiler walls $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) thick and under

(d) No calculations need be made to demonstrate compliance with HG-321 for single openings not covered in HG-320.3(c) when either the diameter of the opening in the shell or header does not exceed that permitted in Fig. HG-320 or the calculated K value is less than 50%. The maximum diameter of single openings not required to demonstrate compliance with HG-321 may also be calculated using the following equation:

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$d = 2.75\,[Dt\,(1 - K)]^{1/3}$$

(SI Units)

$$d = 8.08\,[Dt\,(1 - K)]^{1/3}$$

Nomenclature for the above equation is given in HG-320.3(b). Three significant figures shall be employed for the variables in the equation and in the resulting value of d. Additional significant figures are permitted but not required. Use of the equation beyond the range of the abscissa and ordinate shown in Fig. HG-320 is prohibited. K as used in the equation is limited to 0.990.

HG-321 REINFORCEMENT REQUIRED FOR OPENINGS IN SHELLS AND FORMED HEADS

HG-321.1 General. The rules in this subparagraph apply to all openings other than openings in a definite pattern covered by HG-320.3(b), openings covered by HG-320.3(c) and HG-320.3(d), flanged-in openings in formed heads covered by HG-323, and openings in flat heads covered by HG-325.

Reinforcement shall be provided in such amount and distribution that the requirements for area of reinforcement are satisfied for all planes through the center of the opening and normal to the boiler surface. For a circular opening in a cylindrical shell, the plane containing the axis of the shell is the plane of greatest loading due to pressure.

HG-321.2 Design for Internal Pressure. The total cross-sectional area of reinforcement A required in any given plane for a boiler under internal pressure shall be not less than

$$A = dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF\,(1 - f_{r1})$$

where

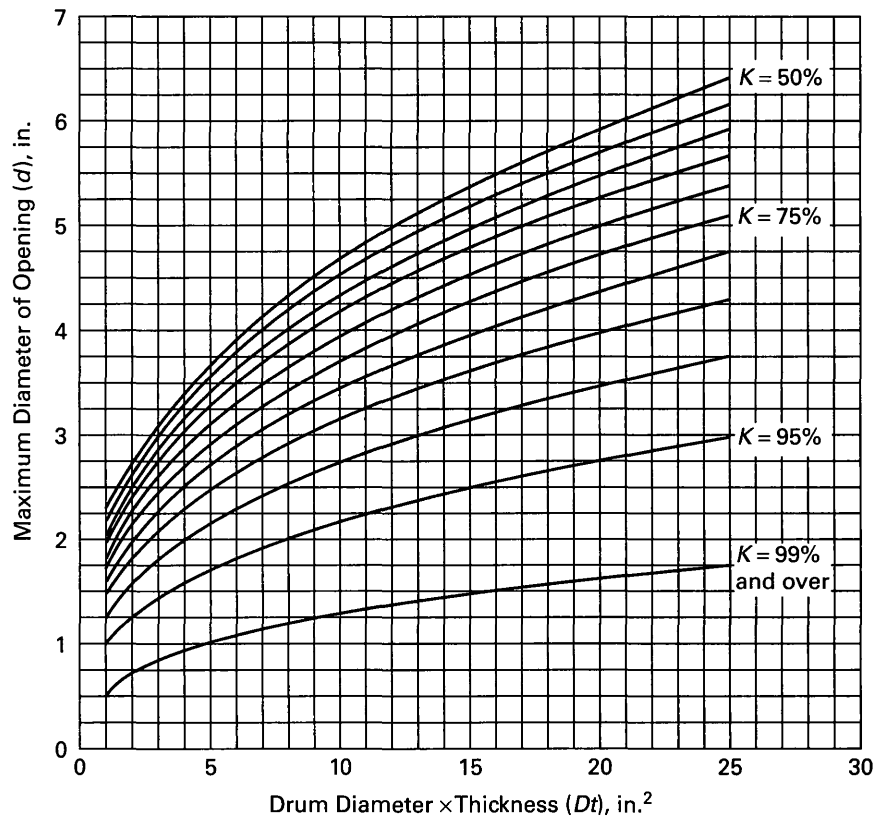
d = the diameter in the given plane of the finished opening (as depicted in Fig. HG-326.1)
F = a correction factor that compensates for the variation in pressure stresses on different planes with respect to the axis of a vessel. A value of 1.00 shall be used for all configurations except that Fig. HG-321 may be used for integrally reinforced openings in cylindrical shells.
t_r = the required thickness of a seamless shell or head computed by the rules of the Code for the designated pressure except that

(a) when the opening and its reinforcement are in a torispherical head and are entirely within the spherical portion, t_r is the thickness required for a seamless hemispherical head of the same radius as that of the spherical portion

(b) when the opening is in a cone, t_r is the thickness required for a seamless cone of diameter D measured where the nozzle axis pierces the inside wall of the cone

(c) when the opening and its reinforcement are in an ellipsoidal head and are located entirely within a circle the center of which coincides with the center of the head and the diameter of which is equal to 80% of the shell diameter, t_r is the

FIG. HG-320 CHART SHOWING LIMITS OF SIZES OF OPENINGS WITH INHERENT COMPENSATION IN CYLINDRICAL SHELLS
(Maximum Permissible Diameter of Opening Is 8 in.)



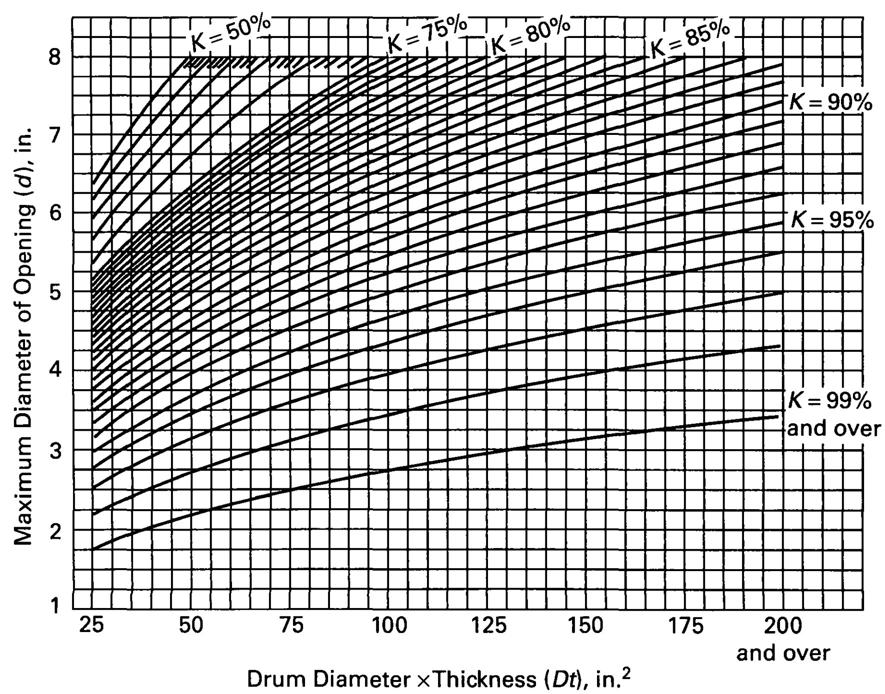
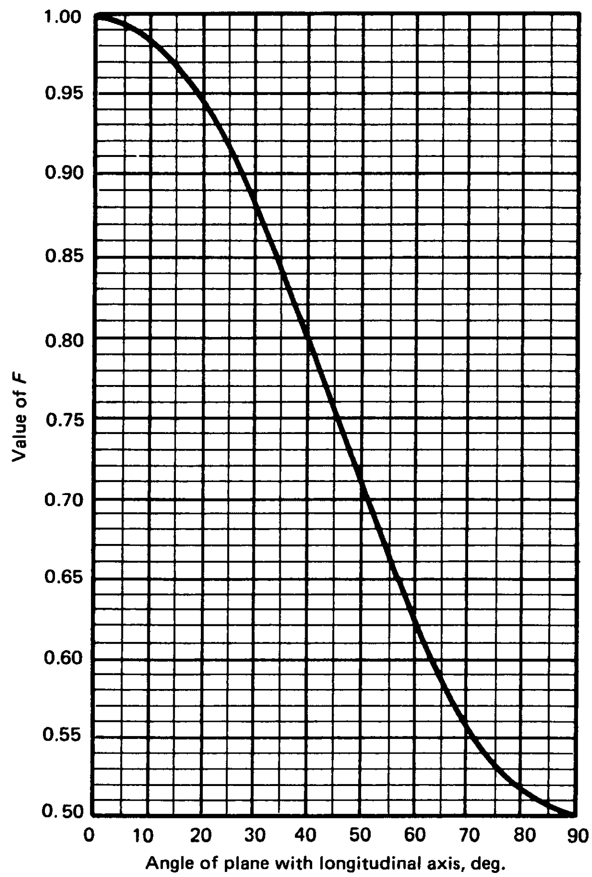


FIG. HG-321 CHART FOR DETERMINING VALUES OF F



thickness required for a sphere of radius K_1D where D is the shell diameter and K_1 is given by Table HG-321

HG-323 FLANGED-IN OPENINGS IN FORMED HEADS

HG-323.1 Reinforcement Requirements. Flanged-in openings in torispherical, ellipsoidal, and hemispherical heads shall be provided with reinforcement in accordance with HG-321, except for heads that meet the requirements in HG-323.2, HG-323.3, and HG-323.4.

HG-323.2 Restrictions on Location. The flanged-in opening and its reinforcement shall be entirely within the spherical portion of torispherical heads, and within a circle the center of which coincides with the center of the head and the diameter of which equals 80% of the shell diameter for ellipsoidal and hemispherical heads. The center line of the opening shall not be closer to the above boundary circle than the diameter of the opening.

HG-323.3 Minimum Thickness Requirements of Flanged-in Openings

(a) For flanged-in openings that do not exceed 6 in. (150 mm) in any dimension and for flanged-in openings of any dimension that are stayed by an attached flue, the thickness of the head shall not be less than that required by HG-305 for a blank head, nor less than that required by HG-305 for torispherical heads.

(b) For unstayed flanged-in openings that exceed 6 in. (150 mm) in any inside dimension, the head thickness shall be increased 15% but not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) greater than that required by (a) above.

HG-323.4 Minimum Flange Depth. The minimum depth of flange of a flanged-in opening, when not stayed by an attached flue, shall equal $3t$ or $(t + 3)$ in., whichever is less, where t is the required head thickness. The depth of flange shall be determined by placing a straightedge across the outside of the opening along the major axis and measuring from the straightedge to the edge of the flanged opening.

HG-323.5 Minimum Gasket Bearing Surface. The minimum width of bearing surface for a gasket on a flanged-in manhole opening shall be $\frac{11}{16}$ in. (17 mm).

HG-325 REINFORCEMENT REQUIRED FOR OPENINGS IN FLAT HEADS

HG-325.1 General. The rules in this paragraph apply to all openings other than small openings covered by HG-320.3(c).

HG-325.2 Specific Requirements. Flat heads that have an opening with a diameter that does not exceed one-half of the head diameter or shortest span, as defined in HG-307, shall have a total cross-sectional area of reinforcement not less than that given by the formula:

$$A = 0.5dt$$

where

d = diameter of the finished opening
t = minimum required thickness of plate

As an alternative, the thickness of flat heads may be increased to provide the necessary opening reinforcement as follows:

(a) in Formula (1) or (3) of HG-307 by using $2C$ or 0.75 in place of C, whichever is less.

(b) in Formula (2) or (5) of HG-307 by doubling the quantity under the square root sign. Except for the types of construction shown in Fig. HG-307, sketches (j) and (k), the value of $2C$ to be used in the formulas need not exceed 0.75.

FIG. HG-326.1 SOME REPRESENTATIVE CONFIGURATIONS DESCRIBING THE REINFORCEMENT DIMENSION, t_e, AND THE FINISHED OPENING DIMENSION, d

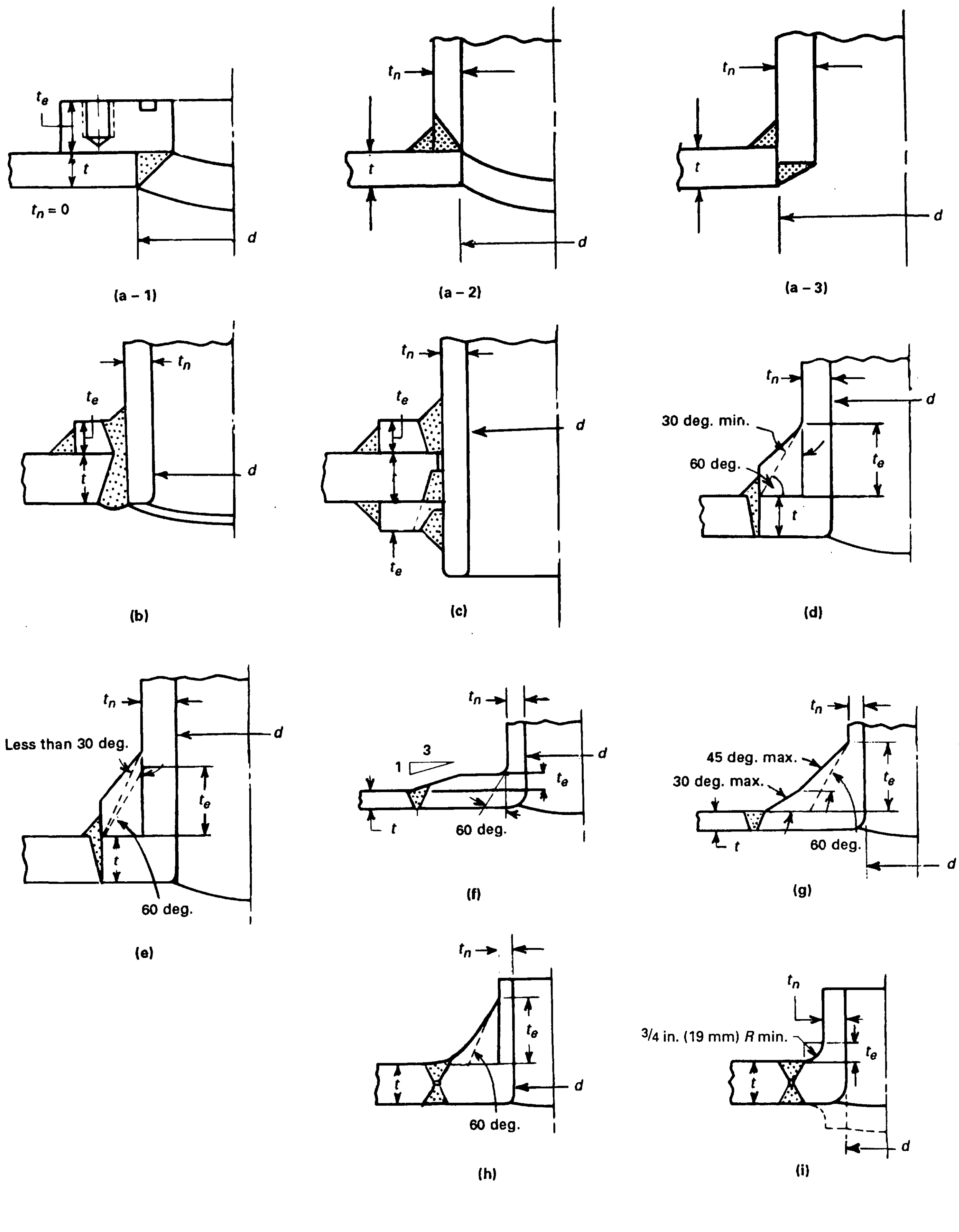


TABLE HG-321
VALUES OF SPHERICAL RADIUS FACTOR K_1
(Equivalent Spherical Radius = K_1 D; $D/2h$ = axis ratio. Interpolation Permitted for Intermediate Values.)

$D/2h$	. . .	3.0	2.8	2.6	2.4	2.2
K_1	. . .	1.36	1.27	1.18	1.08	0.99
$D/2h$	2.0	1.8	1.6	1.4	1.2	1.0
K_1	0.90	0.81	0.73	0.65	0.57	0.50

GENERAL NOTES:
(a) D = inside length of major axis, in. (mm).
(b) d = inside depth of ellipsoidal head measured from the tangent line, in. (mm).

HG-326 LIMITS OF METAL AVAILABLE FOR REINFORCEMENT

HG-326.1 Designation of Limits of Reinforcement. The boundaries of the cross-sectional area in any plane normal to the boiler shell and passing through the center of the opening within which area metal must be located in order to have value as reinforcement are designated as the limits of reinforcement for that plane.

HG-326.2 Limits of Reinforcement Parallel to Boiler Shell. The limits of reinforcement, measured parallel to the boiler shell, shall be at a distance, on each side of the axis of the opening, equal to the greater of the following:

(a) the diameter of the finished opening

(b) the radius of the finished opening plus the thickness of the boiler shell, plus the thickness of the nozzle wall

HG-326.3 Limits of Reinforcement Normal to Boiler Shell. The limits of reinforcement, measured normal to the boiler shell, shall conform to the contour of the surface at a distance from each surface equal to the smaller of the following:

(a) $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the nominal shell thickness

(b) $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the nozzle wall thickness, plus the thickness of any added reinforcement, exclusive of weld metal on the side of the shell under consideration

HG-326.4 Use of Excess Boiler Shell and Other Thicknesses. Metal that may be included as contributing to the area of reinforcement required by HG-321 shall lie within the limits of reinforcement specified in HG-326.2 and HG-326.3 and shall be limited as set forth in (b), (c), (d), and (e) below (see Fig. HG-326.2).

(a) Notation. The symbols used in this paragraph are defined as follows:

A_1 = area in excess thickness in the boiler shell available for reinforcement

A_2 = area in excess thickness in the nozzle wall available for reinforcement

D_p = outside diameter of reinforcing element (actual size of reinforcing element may exceed the limits of available reinforcement established by HG-326; however, credit cannot be taken for any material outside these limits)

d = diameter in the plane under consideration of the finished opening (see HG-321.2 and Fig. HG-326.1)

E_1 = when an opening is in the solid plate or when the opening passes through a circumferential joint in a shell or cone (exclusive of head-to-shell joints)

= the joint efficiency obtained when any part of the opening passes through any other welded joint

F = factor F from HG-321.2 and Fig. HG-321

f_r = strength reduction factor, not greater than 1.0 (see HG-327.1)

f_{r1} = S_n/S_v for nozzle inserted through the vessel wall

f_{r1} = 1.0 for nozzle wall abutting the vessel wall [see Fig. HG-326.1 sketches (a-1), (a-2), and (a-3)]

f_{r2} = S_n/S_v

f_{r3} = (lesser of S_n or S_p)/S_v

f_{r4} = S_p/S_v

h = distance nozzle projects beyond the inner surface of the vessel wall (extension of the nozzle beyond the inside surface of the vessel wall is not limited; however, for reinforcement calculations the dimension shall not exceed the smaller of 2.5 t or 2.5 t_n without a reinforcing element and the smaller of 2.5 t or 2.5 $t_n + t_e$ with a reinforcing element or integral compensation)

R_n = inside radius of the nozzle under consideration

S = maximum allowable stress value taken from Table HF-300

S_n = allowable stress in nozzle (see S above)

S_p = allowable stress in reinforcing element (plate) (see S above)

S_v = allowable stress in vessel (see S above)

t = nominal thickness of the boiler shell

t_e = thickness of attached reinforcing pad or height of the largest 60 deg right triangle supported by the vessel and nozzle outside diameter projected surfaces and lying completely within the area of integral reinforcement (see Fig. HG-326.1)

t_n = nominal thickness of nozzle wall

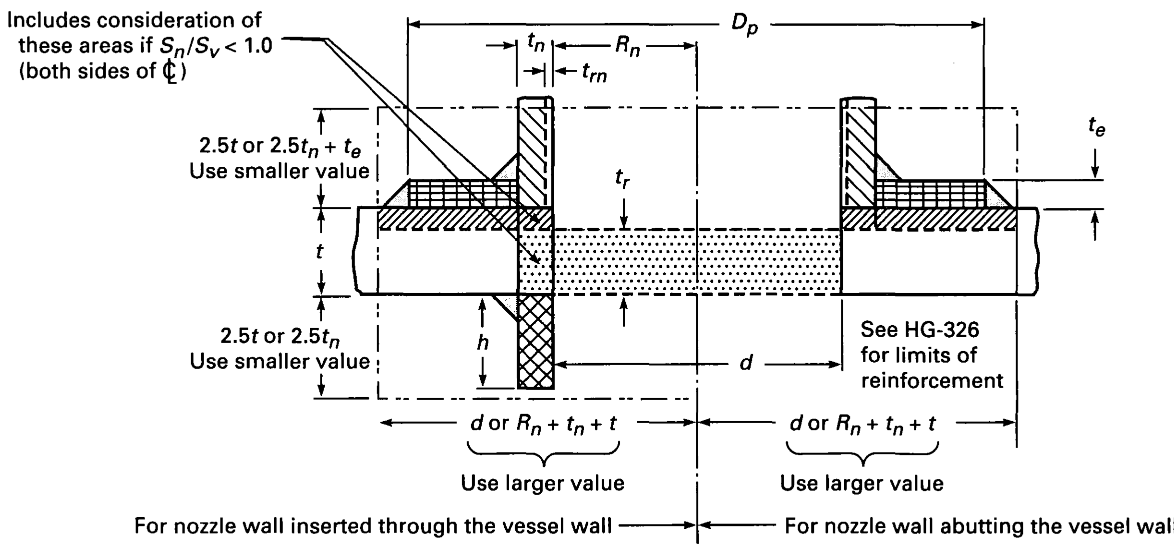
t_r = required thickness of a seamless shell or head as defined in HG-321

t_{rn} = required thickness of a seamless nozzle wall

(b) Metal in the Boiler Shell Over and Above the Thickness Required to Resist Pressure. The area of the boiler shell available as reinforcement that shall be used is the larger of the values of A_1 given by the formulas in Fig. HG-326.2.

(c) Metal in the nozzle wall over and above the thickness required to resist pressure in that part of a nozzle wall

FIG. HG-326.2 NOMENCLATURE AND FORMULAS FOR REINFORCED OPENINGS
(This Figure Illustrates a Common Nozzle Configuration and Is Not Intended to Prohibit Other Configurations Permitted by the Code.)



Without Reinforcing Element

A	$= dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF(1 - f_{r1})$	Area required
A_1	$= \begin{cases} d(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1}) \\ 2(t + t_n)(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1}) \end{cases}$	Area available in shell; use larger value
A_2	$= \begin{cases} 5(t_n - t_{rn})f_{r2}t \\ 5(t_n - t_{rn})f_{r2}t_n \end{cases}$	Area available in nozzle projecting outward; use smaller value
A_3	$= 2t_nf_{r2}h$	Area available in inward nozzle
A_{41}	= outward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2f_{r2}$	Area available in outward weld
A_{43}	= inward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2f_{r2}$	Area available in inward weld

If $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} > A$ — Opening is adequately reinforced

If $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} < A$ — Opening is not adequately reinforced so reinforcing elements must be added and/or thickness must be increased

With Reinforcing Element Added

A	= same as A above	Area required
A_1	= same as A_1 above	Area available
A_2	$= \begin{cases} 5(t_n - t_{rn})f_{r2}t \\ 2(t_n - t_{rn})(2.5t_n + t_e)f_{r2} \end{cases}$	Area available in nozzle projecting outward; use smaller area
A_3	= same as A_3 above	Area available in inward nozzle
A_{41}	= outward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2f_{r3}$	Area available in outward weld
A_{42}	= outer element weld = $(\text{leg})^2f_{r4}$	Area available in outer weld
A_{43}	= inward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2f_{r2}$	Area available in inward weld
A_5	$= (D_p - d - 2t_n)t_ef_{r4}$ [Note (1)]	Area available in element

If $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{42} + A_{43} + A_5 > A$ — Opening is adequately reinforced

NOTE:
(1) This formula is applicable for a rectangular cross-sectional element that falls within the limits of reinforcement.

extending outside the boiler shell. The maximum area in the nozzle wall available as reinforcement in the portion extending outside the boiler shell is the smaller of the values of A_2 given by the formulas in Fig. HG-326.2. All metal in the nozzle wall extending inside the boiler shell, designated as A_3 in Fig. HG-326.2, may be included. No allowance shall be taken for the fact that a differential pressure on an inwardly extending nozzle may cause opposing stress to that of the stress in the shell around the opening.

(d) Metal in the attachment welds, designated as A_4 in Fig. HG-326.2, may be included.

(e) Metal added as reinforcement, designated as A_5 in Fig. HG-326.2, may be included.

HG-327 STRENGTH OF REINFORCEMENT

HG-327.1 Strength of Nozzle and Added Material. Material in the nozzle wall and added material used for reinforcement shall preferably be the same as that of the boiler shell, but if material with a lower allowable stress value is used, the area provided by such material shall be increased in proportion to the inverse ratio of the allowable stress values of the reinforcement and the boiler shell material. No advantage may be taken of the increased strength of reinforcement material having a higher allowable stress value than the material of the boiler shell. Deposited weld metal outside of either the boiler shell or any reinforcing pad used as reinforcement shall be credited with an allowable stress value equivalent to the weaker of the materials connected by the weld. Boiler-to-nozzle or pad-to-nozzle attachment weld metal within the pad may be credited with a stress value equal to that of the boiler shell or pad, respectively.

HG-327.2 Strength of Attachment Material. On each side of the plane defined in HG-326.1, the strength of the attachment joining the boiler shell and reinforcement or any two parts of the attached reinforcement shall be at least equal to the smaller of

(a) the strength in tension of the cross section of the element of reinforcement being considered.

(b) the strength in tension of the area defined in HG-321 less the strength in tension of the reinforcement area that is integral in the boiler shell as permitted by HG-326.4.

(c) the strength of the attachment joint shall be considered for its entire length on each side of the plane of the area of reinforcement defined in HG-326.1. For obround openings, consideration shall also be given to the strength of the attachment joint on one side of the plane transverse to the parallel sides of the opening that passes through the center of the semicircular end of the opening.

HG-328 REINFORCEMENT FOR MULTIPLE OPENINGS

HG-328.1 When Limits of Reinforcement Overlap. When any two adjacent openings are spaced at less than two times their average diameter so that their limits of reinforcement overlap, the two openings (or similarly for any larger group of openings) shall be provided with reinforcement in accordance with HG-321 with a combined reinforcement that has a strength equal to the combined strength of the reinforcement that would be required for the separate openings. No portion of the cross section shall be considered as applying to more than one opening or be evaluated more than once in a combined area.

HG-328.2 Combined Reinforcement for Multiple Openings. When more than two adjacent openings are to be provided with a combined reinforcement, the minimum distance between centers of any two of these openings shall preferably be at least $1\frac{1}{2}$ times their average diameter, and the area of reinforcement between them shall be at least equal to 50% of the total required for these two openings.

(a) Two adjacent openings as considered under HG-328.2 shall have a distance between centers not less than $1\frac{1}{3}$ times their average diameter.

(b) In lieu of providing reinforcement for individual openings, reinforcement may be provided for any number of closely spaced adjacent openings, in any arrangement, by providing reinforcement for an assumed opening of a diameter enclosing all such openings.

(c) When a group of openings is provided with reinforcement by a thicker section butt welded into the shell or head, the edges of the inserted section shall be tapered as prescribed in HW-701.1.

HG-328.3 When Reinforcing Each of a Series of Openings Is Impractical. When there is a series of tube openings in a boiler and it is impractical to reinforce each opening, the construction will be acceptable provided the ligaments between openings are calculated by the rules given in HG-350.

HG-330 INSPECTION AND ACCESS OPENINGS

HG-330.1 General Inspection Openings

(a) All boilers shall be provided with suitable manhole openings and handhole or washout plug openings to permit inspection and removal of accumulated sediment.

(b) Electric boilers of a design employing a removable cover that will permit access for inspection and cleaning and having an internal gross volume (exclusive of casing and insulation) of not more than 5 ft^3 (0.14 m^3) need not be fitted with washout or inspection openings.

Electric boilers equipped with immersion type resistance elements not provided with a manhole shall have an inspection opening or handhole located in the lower portion of the shell or head. The inspection opening shall not be smaller than NPS 3 (DN 80). In addition, electric boilers designed for steam service shall have an inspection opening or manhole at or near the normal waterline.

(c) Furnaces of internally fired boilers shall be provided with access doors as required by HG-330.5.

HG-330.2 Manholes. A manhole shall be placed in the front head below the tubes of a horizontal-return tubular boiler 60 in. (1 500 mm) or over in diameter. There shall be a manhole in the upper part of the shell, or in the head of a firetube boiler over 60 in. (1500 mm) in diameter, except in a vertical firetube boiler.

HG-330.3 Size of Manholes and Gasket Surfaces

(a) An elliptical manhole opening shall not be less than 12 in. × 16 in. (300 mm × 400 mm) in size.

(b) A circular manhole opening shall not be less than 15 in. (380 mm) in diameter.

(c) The minimum width of bearing surface for a gasket on a manhole opening shall be $^{11}\!/_{16}$ in. (17 mm).

(d) No gasket for use on a manhole or handhole of any boiler shall have a thickness greater than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) when compressed.

HG-330.4 Handholes and Washout Plugs

(a) Boilers of the locomotive or firebox type, except those set in brick or otherwise so constructed as to render such openings inaccessible, shall have one handhole or washout plug near each corner in the lower part of the waterleg and at least one opening near the line of the crown sheet. In addition, boilers designed for steam service shall have at least one inspection opening above the top row of tubes. This inspection opening shall be a minimum of NPS 3 (DN 80) or a handhole as specified in (f) below and used solely for inspection purposes.

(b) A boiler of the scotch type shall have a handhole or washout plug in the front head below or on each side of the furnace or on each side of the shell near the front head, a handhole or washout plug in the bottom of the shell, an opening to inspect the top of the furnace and an inspection opening above the top row of tubes. This inspection opening shall be a minimum of NPS 3 (DN 80) or a handhole as specified in (f) below and used solely for inspection purposes. Scotch marine boilers (wet-back type) shall also have an opening for inspection of the water space at the rear of the combustion chamber.

(c) Vertical firetube or similar type boilers having gross internal volume (exclusive of casing and insulation) more than 5 ft^3 (0.14 m^3) shall have at least three handholes or washout plugs in the lower part of the waterleg and at least two handholes or washout plugs near the line of the lower tubesheet. Such boilers having gross internal volume not over 5 ft^3 (0.14 m^3) shall have at least two washout openings in the lower part of the waterleg and at least one washout opening near the line of the lower tubesheet. In addition, boilers designed for steam service shall have at least one inspection opening above the lowest permissible water level. This inspection opening shall be a minimum of NPS 3 (DN 80) or a handhole as specified in (f) below and used solely for inspection purposes.

(d) Washout plugs shall be not smaller than NPS $1\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 40) for boilers having gross internal volume more than 5 ft^3 (0.14 m^3). Washout plugs shall be not smaller than NPS 1 (DN 25) for boilers having gross internal volume not more than 5 ft^3 (0.14 m^3).

(e) Washout openings may be used for return pipe connections and the washout plug placed in a tee so that the plug is directly opposite and as close as possible to the opening in the boiler.

(f) A handhole opening shall not be less than $2\frac{3}{4}$ in. × $3\frac{1}{2}$ in. (70 mm × 89 mm) but it is recommended that, where possible, larger sizes be used.

HG-330.5 Access Doors

(a) A fire door or other access not less than 11 in. × 15 in. (280 mm × 380 mm) or 10 in. × 16 in. (250 mm × 400 mm) or 15 in. (381 mm) in diameter, shall be provided for the furnace of an internally fired boiler in that the least furnace dimension is 28 in. (711 mm) or over. The minimum size of access door used in a boiler setting shall be 12 in. × 16 in. (300 mm × 400 mm), or equivalent area, the least dimension being 11 in. (280 mm).

(b) Fuel Burning Equipment. Fuel burning equipment may be installed in the fire door opening provided the cover plate can be unbolted or unlatched to give full-size access to the furnace through the fire door opening.

HG-340 STAYED SURFACES

HG-340.1 Required Thickness and Design Pressure

(a) The required thickness and design pressure for stayed flat plates and those parts that, by these rules, require staying, as flat plates with stays or staybolts of uniform cross section that are symmetrically spaced, shall be calculated by the following formulas:

$$t = p\sqrt{P/SC} \tag{1}$$

$$P = t^2SC/p^2 \tag{2}$$

where

C = 2.7 for stays welded to plates or for stays screwed through plates not over $\frac{7}{16}$ in. (11 mm) in thickness, with ends riveted over

C = 2.8 for stays welded to plates or for stays screwed through plates over $\frac{7}{16}$ in. (11 mm) in thickness, with ends riveted over

FIG. HG-340.1 PITCH OF STAYBOLTS ADJACENT TO UPPER CORNERS OF FIREBOXES

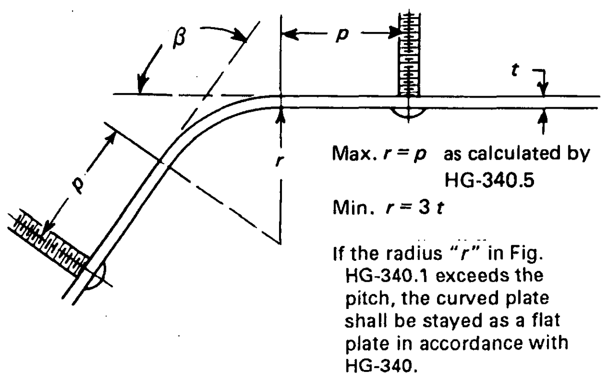
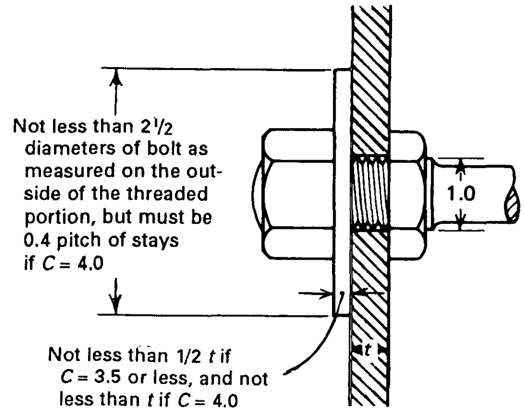


FIG. HG-340.2 ACCEPTABLE PROPORTIONS FOR ENDS OF THROUGH-STAYS



C = 3.1 for stays screwed through plates and fitted with single nuts outside of plate, or with inside and outside nuts, omitting washers

C = 3.5 for stays with heads not less than 1.3 times the diameter of the stays screwed through plates, or made a taper fit and having the heads formed on the stays before installing them and not riveted over, said heads being made to have a true bearing on the plate

C = 4.0 for stays fitted with inside and outside nuts and outside washers where the diameter of washers is not less than $0.4p$ and thickness not less than t

P = design pressure

p = maximum pitch measured between straight lines passing through the centers of the stays in the different rows, which lines may be horizontal, vertical, or inclined

r = radius of firebox corner

S = maximum allowable stress value given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2

t = required thickness of plate

(b) When two flat stayed surfaces intersect at an angle as shown in Fig. HG-340.1, the pitch from the staybolt nearest to the intersection to the point of tangency of the corner curve with the plate shall be

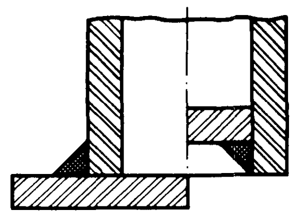
$$p = \frac{90t}{\beta}\sqrt{\frac{CS}{P}}$$

where β is the angle shown in Fig. HG-340.1.

(c) When two plates are connected by stays and only one of these plates requires staying, the value of C shall be governed by the thickness of the plate requiring staying.

HG-340.2 Proportions of Through-Stays With Washers. Acceptable proportions for the ends of through-stays with washers are indicated in Fig. HG-340.2.

FIG. HG-340.3 EXAMPLES OF ACCEPTABLE CORNER WELDS FOR PRESSURES NOT OVER 30 psi



HG-340.3 Maximum Pitch of Stays. The maximum pitch shall be $8\frac{1}{2}$ in. (216 mm) except that for welded-in stays the pitch may be greater provided it does not exceed 15 times the diameter of the stay.

HG-340.4 Unsymmetrical Staying. Where the staying of shells is unsymmetrical by reason of the construction, it is permissible to consider the load carried by each stay as that on the area calculated by taking the distance from the center of the spacing on one side of the stay to the center of the spacing on the other side.

HG-340.5 Stay Distance to Corner Joints, Welded Joints, and Flanges

(a) In the construction of a heating boiler designed for not over 30 psi (200 kPa) and having welded joints, the allowable distance from a corner welded joint to the nearest row of stays may be a full pitch as provided by the formula in HG-340.1. A welded joint in a flat surface shall be between two rows of stays that are not over one pitch apart except that the type of joint shown in Fig. HG-340.3 shall have a row of stays not more than one pitch from the weld.

(b) In the construction of heating boilers to be designed for water pressures above 30 psi (200 kPa), corner joints shall comply with the requirements of HW-701.3.

(c) When the edge of a flat stayed plate is flanged, the distance from the center of the outermost stays to the inside of the supporting flange shall not be greater than the pitch of the stays plus the inside radius of the flange.

HG-340.6 Allowable Pitch of Stays. The allowable pitch, in inches, for stays as given in Table HG-340 may be used in place of the pitch calculated under HG-340.1 when the allowable stress of the steel is 11,000 psi (76 MPa) or greater.

HG-341 STAYBOLTS

HG-341.1 Threaded Staybolts. The ends of staybolts extending through the plate shall extend beyond the plate not less than two threads when installed, after which they shall be riveted over or upset by an equivalent process without excessive scoring of the plate, or they may be fitted with threaded nuts through which the staybolt shall extend. The outside ends of solid staybolts 8 in. (200 mm) or less in length, if of uniform diameter throughout their length, shall be drilled with telltale holes at least $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5 mm) in diameter to a depth extending at least $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) beyond the inside of the plate. If such staybolts are reduced in section below their diameter at the root of the thread, the telltale holes shall extend at least $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) beyond the point where the reduction in section commences. Hollow staybolts may be used in place of solid staybolts with drilled ends. Solid staybolts over 8 in. (200 mm) long need not be drilled. Staybolts used in waterlegs of watertube boilers shall be hollow or drilled at both ends, in accordance with the requirements above stated, irrespective of their length. All threaded staybolts not normal to the stayed surface shall have not less than three engaging threads of which at least one shall be a full thread; but if the thickness of the material in the boiler is not sufficient to give one full engaging thread, the plates shall be sufficiently reinforced on the inside by a steel plate welded thereto. Telltale holes are not required in staybolts attached by welding.

HG-341.2 Staybolts Upset for Threading. The ends of steel stays upset for threading shall be fully annealed after upsetting.

HG-341.3 Staybolts Fitted With Nuts. The ends of staybolts fitted with nuts shall not be exposed to direct radiant heat from fire.

HG-341.4 Welded-in Staybolts. Requirements for welded-in staybolts are given in HW-710.

HG-342 DIMENSIONS OF STAYS

HG-342.1 Required Area of Stays. The required area of a stay at its minimum cross section (usually at the root of the thread) and exclusive of any allowance for corrosion shall be obtained by dividing the load on the stay computed in accordance with HG-342.2, HG-342.3, and HG-342.4 by the allowable stress value for the material.

HG-342.2 Load Carried by Stays. The area supported by a stay shall be computed on the basis of the full pitch dimensions with a deduction for the area occupied by the stay. The load carried by a stay is the product of the area supported by the stay and the design pressure.

HG-342.3 Stays Longer Than 120 Diameters. Stays exceeding 120 diameters in length shall be supported at intervals not exceeding 120 diameters or the cross-sectional area of the stay shall be increased by not less than 15% of the required area of the stays calculated in HG-342.1.

HG-342.4 Stays Fabricated by Welding. Stays made of parts jointed by welding shall be computed for strength using a joint efficiency of 60% for the weld. Welded stays shall be used only where it is impractical to use stays of one-piece construction.

HG-342.5 Minimum Cross-Sectional Area. No ferrous screwed stay, or ferrous stay welded in by the fusion process of welding shall have a cross-sectional area less than 0.44 in.^{2} (284 mm^2).

HG-342.6 Minimum Diameter of Nonferrous Stays

(a) For nonferrous staybolted construction using unthreaded copper staybolts and copper plates, the minimum diameter of the staybolts shall be as follows:

Copper Plate Thickness, in. (mm)	Min. Staybolt Diameter, in. (mm)
Not exceeding $\frac{1}{8}$ (3)	$\frac{1}{2}$ (13)
Over $\frac{1}{8}$ (3), but not over $\frac{3}{16}$ (5)	$\frac{5}{8}$ (16)
Over $\frac{3}{16}$ (5)	$\frac{3}{4}$ (19)

(b) For nonferrous staybolted construction using unthreaded copper–nickel staybolts and copper–nickel plates, the minimum diameter of staybolts shall be as follows:

Copper–Nickel Plate Thickness, in. (mm)	Min. Staybolt Diameter, in. (mm)
Not exceeding $\frac{1}{8}$ (3)	$\frac{3}{8}$ (10)
Over $\frac{1}{8}$ (3), but not over $\frac{3}{16}$ (5)	$\frac{7}{16}$ (11)
Over $\frac{3}{16}$ (5)	$\frac{1}{2}$ (13)

HG-343 DIMENSIONS OF DIAGONAL STAYS

HG-343.1 Required Area of Diagonal Stays. To determine the required area of a diagonal stay, multiply the area of the direct stay, required to support the surface, by the slant or diagonal length of the stay; divide this product by the length of a line (drawn perpendicular to the surface

TABLE HG-340
ALLOWABLE PITCH[1] OF STAYS, in. (mm) (Limited by HG-340.3)

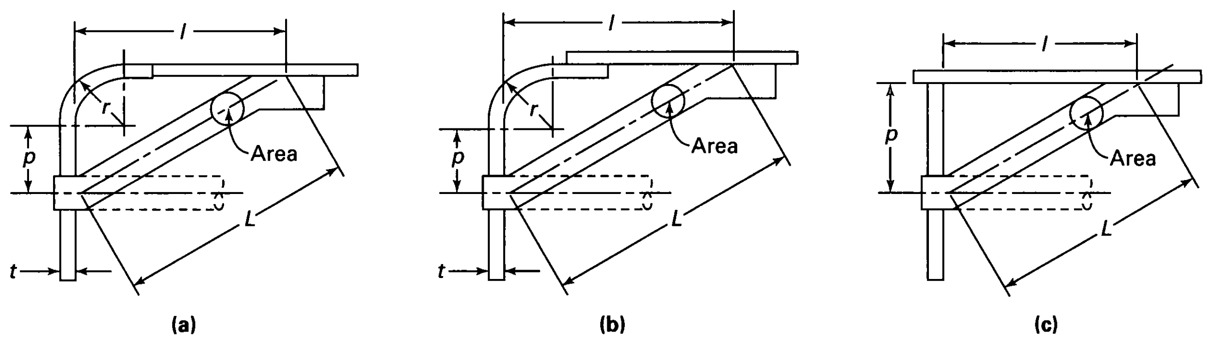
Design Pressure, psi (kPa)	Plate Thickness, in. (mm)							
	$\frac{1}{4}$ (6.4)	$\frac{9}{32}$ (7.1)	$\frac{5}{16}$ (7.9)	$\frac{11}{32}$ (8.7)	$\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)	$\frac{13}{32}$ (10.3)	$\frac{7}{16}$ (11.1)	$\frac{15}{32}$ (11.9)
30 (207)	$7\frac{7}{8}$ (200)	$8\frac{13}{16}$ (224)	$9\frac{13}{16}$ (249)	$10\frac{13}{16}$ (275)	$11\frac{13}{16}$ (300)	$12\frac{3}{4}$ (324)	$13\frac{3}{4}$ (349)	15 (381)
40 (276)	$6\frac{13}{16}$ (173)	$7\frac{5}{8}$ (194)	$8\frac{1}{2}$ (216)	$9\frac{3}{8}$ (238)	$10\frac{3}{16}$ (259)	$11\frac{1}{16}$ (281)	$11\frac{15}{16}$ (303)	13 (330)
50 (345)	$6\frac{1}{16}$ (154)	$6\frac{7}{8}$ (175)	$7\frac{5}{8}$ (194)	$8\frac{3}{8}$ (213)	$9\frac{1}{8}$ (232)	$9\frac{7}{8}$ (251)	$10\frac{5}{8}$ (270)	$11\frac{5}{8}$ (295)
60 (414)	$5\frac{9}{16}$ (141)	$6\frac{1}{4}$ (159)	$6\frac{15}{16}$ (176)	$7\frac{5}{8}$ (194)	$8\frac{5}{16}$ (211)	9 (229)	$9\frac{3}{4}$ (248)	$10\frac{5}{8}$ (270)
70 (483)	$5\frac{1}{8}$ (130)	$5\frac{13}{16}$ (148)	$6\frac{7}{16}$ (164)	$7\frac{1}{16}$ (179)	$7\frac{11}{16}$ (195)	$8\frac{3}{8}$ (213)	9 (229)	$9\frac{13}{16}$ (249)
75 (517)	$4\frac{15}{16}$ (125)	$5\frac{9}{16}$ (141)	$6\frac{1}{4}$ (159)	$6\frac{13}{16}$ (173)	$7\frac{7}{16}$ (189)	$8\frac{1}{16}$ (205)	$8\frac{11}{16}$ (221)	$9\frac{1}{2}$ (241)
80 (552)	$4\frac{13}{16}$ (122)	$5\frac{3}{8}$ (137)	6 (152)	$6\frac{5}{8}$ (168)	$7\frac{3}{16}$ (183)	$7\frac{13}{16}$ (198)	$8\frac{7}{16}$ (214)	$9\frac{3}{16}$ (233)
90 (621)	$4\frac{9}{16}$ (116)	$5\frac{1}{8}$ (130)	$5\frac{11}{16}$ (144)	$6\frac{1}{4}$ (159)	$6\frac{13}{16}$ (173)	$7\frac{3}{8}$ (187)	$7\frac{15}{16}$ (202)	$8\frac{11}{16}$ (221)
100 (690)	$4\frac{5}{16}$ (110)	$4\frac{13}{16}$ (122)	$5\frac{3}{8}$ (137)	$5\frac{15}{16}$ (151)	$6\frac{7}{16}$ (164)	7 (178)	$7\frac{1}{2}$ (191)	$8\frac{3}{16}$ (208)
110 (758)	...	$4\frac{5}{8}$ (117)	$5\frac{1}{8}$ (130)	$5\frac{5}{8}$ (143)	$6\frac{1}{8}$ (156)	$6\frac{11}{16}$ (170)	$7\frac{3}{16}$ (183)	$7\frac{13}{16}$ (198)
120 (827)	...	$4\frac{7}{16}$ (113)	$4\frac{7}{8}$ (124)	$5\frac{3}{8}$ (137)	$5\frac{7}{8}$ (149)	$6\frac{3}{8}$ (162)	$6\frac{7}{8}$ (175)	$7\frac{1}{2}$ (191)
125 (862)	...	$4\frac{5}{16}$ (110)	$4\frac{13}{16}$ (122)	$5\frac{5}{16}$ (135)	$5\frac{3}{4}$ (146)	$6\frac{1}{4}$ (159)	$6\frac{3}{4}$ (171)	$7\frac{3}{8}$ (187)
130 (896)	...	...	...	$5\frac{3}{16}$ (132)	$5\frac{5}{8}$ (143)	$6\frac{1}{8}$ (156)	$6\frac{5}{8}$ (168)	$7\frac{3}{16}$ (183)
140 (965)	...	...	...	5 (127)	$5\frac{7}{16}$ (138)	$5\frac{7}{8}$ (149)	$6\frac{3}{8}$ (162)	$6\frac{15}{16}$ (176)
150 (1034)	...	...	...	$4\frac{13}{16}$ (122)	$5\frac{1}{4}$ (133)	$5\frac{11}{16}$ (144)	$6\frac{1}{8}$ (156)	$6\frac{11}{16}$ (170)
160 (1103)	...	...	...	$4\frac{11}{16}$ (119)	$5\frac{1}{8}$ (130)	$5\frac{1}{2}$ (140)	$5\frac{15}{16}$ (151)	$6\frac{1}{2}$ (165)

Design Pressure, psi (kPa)	Plate Thickness, in. (mm)							
	$\frac{1}{2}$ (12.7)	$\frac{17}{32}$ (13.5)	$\frac{9}{16}$ (14.3)	$\frac{19}{32}$ (15.1)	$\frac{5}{8}$ (15.9)	$\frac{21}{32}$ (16.7)	$\frac{11}{16}$ (17.5)	$\frac{3}{4}$ (19.1)
30 (207)	16 (406)	17 (432)	18 (457)	19 (483)	20 (508)	21 (533)	22 (559)	24 (610)
40 (276)	$13\frac{7}{8}$ (352)	$14\frac{3}{4}$ (375)	$15\frac{11}{16}$ (398)	$16\frac{7}{16}$ (418)	$17\frac{7}{16}$ (440)	$18\frac{3}{16}$ (462)	$19\frac{1}{16}$ (484)	$20\frac{13}{16}$ (529)
50 (345)	$12\frac{3}{8}$ (314)	$13\frac{3}{16}$ (335)	$13\frac{15}{16}$ (354)	$14\frac{3}{4}$ (375)	$15\frac{1}{2}$ (394)	$16\frac{1}{4}$ (413)	$17\frac{1}{16}$ (433)	$18\frac{5}{8}$ (473)
60 (414)	$11\frac{5}{16}$ (287)	$11\frac{15}{16}$ (303)	$12\frac{3}{4}$ (324)	$13\frac{7}{16}$ (341)	$14\frac{1}{8}$ (359)	$14\frac{7}{8}$ (378)	$15\frac{9}{16}$ (395)	17 (432)
70 (483)	$10\frac{1}{2}$ (267)	$11\frac{1}{8}$ (283)	$11\frac{13}{16}$ (300)	$12\frac{7}{16}$ (316)	$13\frac{1}{8}$ (333)	$13\frac{3}{4}$ (349)	$14\frac{3}{8}$ (365)	$15\frac{11}{16}$ (398)
75 (517)	$10\frac{1}{8}$ (257)	$10\frac{3}{4}$ (273)	$11\frac{3}{8}$ (289)	12 (305)	$12\frac{5}{8}$ (321)	$13\frac{5}{16}$ (338)	$13\frac{15}{16}$ (354)	$15\frac{3}{16}$ (386)
80 (552)	$9\frac{13}{16}$ (249)	$10\frac{7}{16}$ (265)	11 (279)	$11\frac{5}{8}$ (295)	$12\frac{1}{4}$ (311)	$12\frac{7}{8}$ (327)	$13\frac{1}{2}$ (343)	$14\frac{11}{16}$ (373)
90 (621)	$9\frac{1}{4}$ (235)	$9\frac{13}{16}$ (249)	$10\frac{3}{8}$ (264)	11 (279)	$11\frac{9}{16}$ (294)	$12\frac{1}{8}$ (308)	$12\frac{11}{16}$ (322)	$13\frac{7}{8}$ (352)
100 (690)	$8\frac{3}{4}$ (222)	$9\frac{5}{16}$ (237)	$9\frac{7}{8}$ (251)	$10\frac{3}{8}$ (264)	$10\frac{15}{16}$ (278)	$11\frac{1}{2}$ (292)	$12\frac{1}{16}$ (306)	$13\frac{1}{8}$ (333)
110 (758)	$8\frac{3}{8}$ (213)	$8\frac{7}{8}$ (225)	$9\frac{3}{8}$ (238)	$9\frac{15}{16}$ (252)	$10\frac{7}{16}$ (265)	11 (279)	$11\frac{1}{2}$ (292)	$12\frac{9}{16}$ (319)
120 (827)	8 (203)	$8\frac{1}{2}$ (216)	9 (229)	$9\frac{1}{2}$ (241)	10 (254)	$10\frac{1}{2}$ (267)	11 (279)	12 (305)
125 (862)	$7\frac{13}{16}$ (198)	$8\frac{5}{16}$ (211)	$8\frac{7}{8}$ (225)	$9\frac{5}{16}$ (237)	$9\frac{13}{16}$ (249)	$10\frac{5}{16}$ (262)	$10\frac{3}{4}$ (273)	$11\frac{3}{4}$ (198)
130 (896)	$7\frac{11}{16}$ (195)	$8\frac{3}{16}$ (208)	$8\frac{5}{8}$ (219)	$9\frac{1}{8}$ (232)	$9\frac{5}{8}$ (244)	$10\frac{1}{8}$ (257)	$10\frac{9}{16}$ (268)	$11\frac{1}{2}$ (292)
140 (965)	$7\frac{3}{8}$ (187)	$7\frac{7}{8}$ (200)	$8\frac{5}{16}$ (211)	$8\frac{13}{16}$ (224)	$9\frac{1}{4}$ (235)	$9\frac{3}{4}$ (248)	$10\frac{3}{16}$ (259)	$11\frac{1}{8}$ (283)
150 (1034)	$7\frac{1}{8}$ (181)	$7\frac{5}{8}$ (194)	$8\frac{1}{16}$ (205)	$8\frac{1}{2}$ (216)	$8\frac{15}{16}$ (227)	$9\frac{3}{8}$ (238)	$9\frac{13}{16}$ (249)	$10\frac{3}{4}$ (273)
160 (1103)	$6\frac{15}{16}$ (176)	$7\frac{3}{8}$ (187)	$7\frac{13}{16}$ (198)	$8\frac{1}{4}$ (210)	$8\frac{11}{16}$ (221)	$9\frac{1}{16}$ (230)	$9\frac{1}{2}$ (241)	$10\frac{7}{16}$ (265)

NOTE:

(1) The pitches in Table HG-340 are calculated from the formula $p = \sqrt{t^2 \times SC/P}$. In calculating these pitches, $C = 2.7$ for plate thicknesses not over $\frac{7}{16}$ in. and $C = 2.8$ for plate thicknesses exceeding $\frac{7}{16}$ in.; $S = 11{,}000$ psi.

FIG. HG-343 DETAILS OF INSTALLATION OF DIAGONAL STAYS



GENERAL NOTES:
(a) Determine area of diagonal stays per HG-343.1.
(b) Determine weld details and weld size for stay-to-tube-sheet and stay-to-shell per HW-710.
(c) Determine diagonal stay pitch per HG-340.1.
(d) Maximum $r = 8t$; minimum $r = 3t$; t = nominal thickness of tubesheet.

supported) to the center of the palm of the diagonal stay, as follows:

$$A = \frac{aL}{l}$$

where

A = sectional area of diagonal stay, in.^{2} (mm^2)
a = sectional area of direct stay, in.^{2} (mm^2)
L = length of diagonal stay as indicated in Fig. HG-343, in. (mm)
l = length of line, drawn perpendicular to boiler head or surface supported, to center of palm of diagonal stay, as indicated in Fig. HG-343, in. (mm)

Example:
Given diameter of direct stay = 1 in., a = 0.7854 in.^{2}, L = 60 in., l = 48 in.; substituting and solving:

$$A = \frac{0.7854 \times 60}{48} = 0.98 \text{ sectional area, in.}^2$$

Diameter = 1.11 in. (Use $1\frac{1}{8}$ in.)

HG-343.2 Diagonal Stays for Segments of Tubesheets. For staying segments of tubesheets such as in horizontal firetube boilers, where L is not more than 1.15 times l for any stay, the stays may be calculated as direct stays using 90% of the allowable stress values calculated in HG-342.1.

HG-345 STAYING OF HEADS

HG-345.1 General

(a) Those portions of heads that require staying shall be stayed as flat plates under the provisions of these rules.

(b) For unflanged heads in boilers designed for not over 30 psi (200 kPa) pressure, with the heads attached with single fillet welds in accordance with HW-701.3(a), staying is not required if the greatest distance measured along a radial line from the inner surface of the shell to a fully supported line does not exceed 1.25p. For unflanged heads in boilers designed for over 30 psi (200 kPa) with heads attached in accordance with HW-701.3(b), or for flanged heads of any pressure, staying is not required if the greatest distance measured as above does not exceed 1.5p. The value of p shall be obtained by applying the equation of HG-340 with a C value of 2.7 or 2.8 depending on the plate thickness.

(c) For purposes of applying the above paragraph, a fully supported line is a flanged or welded corner joint or is a line tangent to a row of tubes not over one pitch apart between edges and extending to within one pitch of the shell or the diametrically opposite side of the shell.

(d) For unflanged heads, the maximum distance between the inner surface of the shell and the centers of stays shall not be more than the allowable pitch as determined by HG-340, using the value of C given for the thickness of plate and the type of stay used.

(e) For a flanged head welded to the shell, the maximum distance between the inner surface of the supporting flange and lines parallel to the surface of the shell passing through the centers of the stays shall be p as determined by the formula in HG-340, plus the inside radius of the supporting flange, using the value of C given for the thickness of plate and the type of stay used.

(f) The maximum distance between the edges of the tube holes and the center of the first row of stays shall be p as determined by the formula in HG-340, using the value of C given for the thickness of plate and the type of stay used.

(g) When a portion of the head in a horizontal firetube boiler is provided with a manhole opening, the flange of

which is formed from the solid plate and turned inward to a depth of not less than three times the required thickness of the head, measured from the outside or, when an unflanged manhole ring meeting the requirements of HG-321 is provided in a flat stayed head of a firetube boiler, the area to be stayed may be reduced by 100 in.^{2} (645 cm^2) provided both the following requirements are met [see Figs. HG-345.1(a) and HG-345.1(b)].

(1) The distance between the manhole opening and the inner surface of the supporting flange does not exceed one-half the maximum allowable pitch for an unflanged manhole or one-half the maximum allowable pitch plus the inside radius of the supporting flange for a flanged-in manhole in a flanged head.

(2) The distance between the centers of the first row of stays, or the edges of the tube holes, and the manhole opening does not exceed one-half the maximum allowable pitch as determined by HG-340.

HG-346 TUBESHEETS WITH FIRETUBES USED AS STAYS

HG-346.1 Required Thickness, Maximum Pitch, and Design Pressure. The required thickness, maximum pitch, and design pressure for tubesheets with firetubes used as stays shall be calculated using the following formulas:

$$t = \sqrt{\left(\frac{P}{CS}\right)\left(p^2 - \frac{\pi D^2}{4}\right)} \quad (1)$$

$$p = \sqrt{\left(\frac{CSt^2}{P}\right) + \left(\frac{\pi D^2}{4}\right)} \quad (2)$$

$$P = \frac{CSt^2}{p^2 - \left(\frac{\pi D^2}{4}\right)} \quad (3)$$

where

C = 2.7 for tubesheets not over $\frac{7}{16}$ in. (11 mm) thick
= 2.8 for tubesheets over $\frac{7}{16}$ in. (11 mm) thick
D = outside diameter of the tube
P = design pressure
p = maximum pitch measured between the centers of tubes in different rows, which lines may be horizontal, vertical, or inclined
S = maximum allowable stress value given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2
t = required thickness of plate

HG-346.2 Maximum Pitch of Firetubes Used as Stays. The pitch of firetubes used as stays shall not exceed 15 times the diameter of the tube.

HG-346.3 Calculating Firetubes Used as Stays. No calculation need be made to determine the availability of the required cross-sectional area or the maximum allowable pitch for tubes within or on the perimeter of a nest of tubes, which are spaced at less than twice their average diameter.

HG-346.4 Dimensions and Welding of Firetubes Used as Stays

(a) The dimensions of firetubes used as stays shall meet the requirements of HG-312.2 and HG-342.

(b) Firetubes used as stays may be attached by any method permitted in HG-360.2.

(c) Firetubes welded to the tubesheet and used as stays shall meet the requirements of HW-713.

HG-350 LIGAMENTS

HG-350.1 General. The rules in this paragraph apply to groups of openings that form a definite pattern in cylindrical pressure parts and to openings spaced not more than two diameters center to center.

(a) The symbols defined below are used in the formulas of this paragraph:

d = diameter of openings
E = efficiency of ligament
n = number of openings in length p_1
p = longitudinal pitch of adjacent openings
p' = diagonal pitch of adjacent openings
p'' = transverse pitch of adjacent openings
p_1 = pitch between corresponding openings in a series of symmetrical groups of openings

(b) The efficiency of ligaments between openings is defined as the ratio of the average strength of the material between adjacent openings to the average strength of the plate away from the openings. Where a series of openings has more than one efficiency, the lowest value shall govern.

(c) The pitch shall be measured on the flat plate before rolling.

HG-350.2 Openings Parallel to Shell Axis. The ligament efficiency shall be determined as follows.

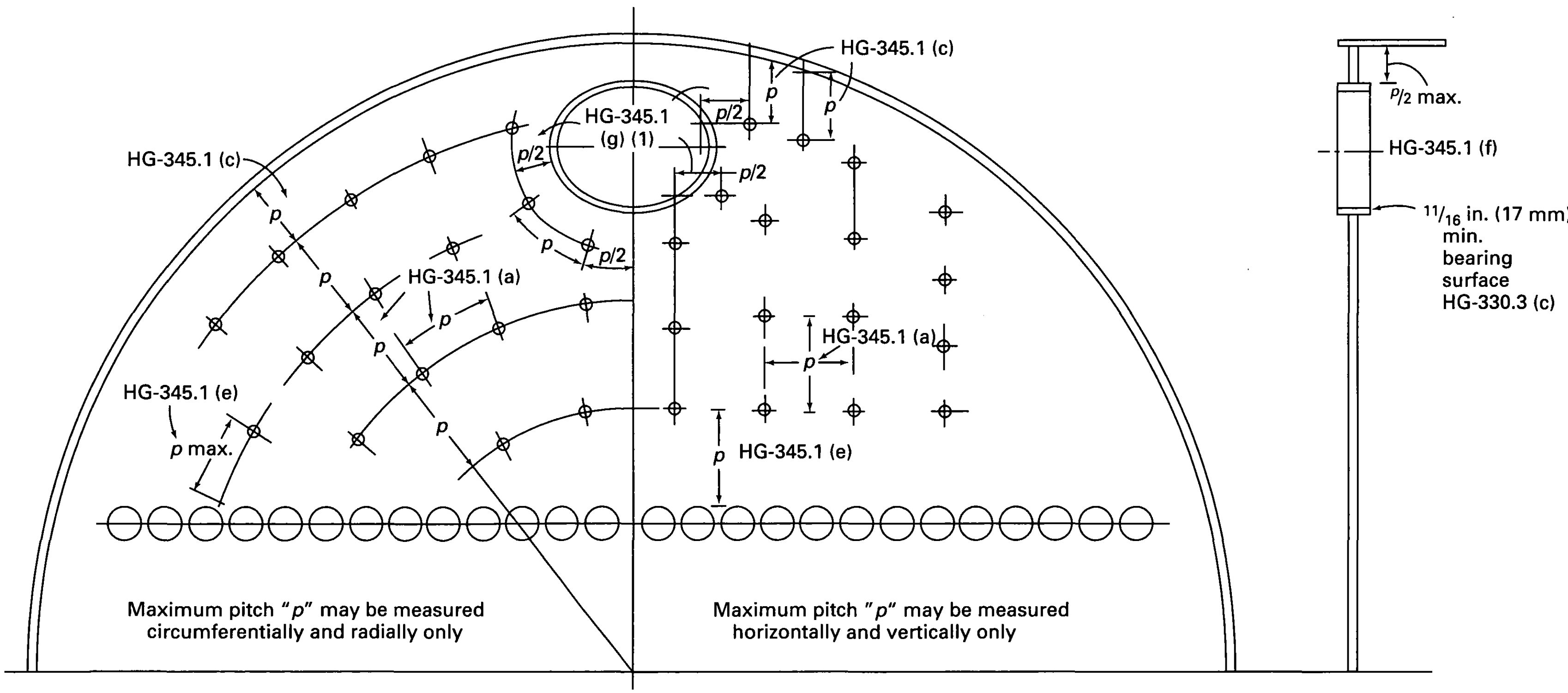
(a) For equal pitch of openings in every row (see Fig. HG-350.1), the efficiency is given by the formula:

$$E = \frac{p - d}{p} \quad (1)$$

(b) For unequal pitch in symmetrical groups of openings (as in Figs. HG-350.2 and HG-350.3), the efficiency is given by the formula:

$$E = \frac{p_1 - nd}{p_1} \quad (2)$$

FIG. HG-345.1(a) SKETCH SHOWING APPLICATION OF HG-345.1 TO THE STAYING OF BOILERS



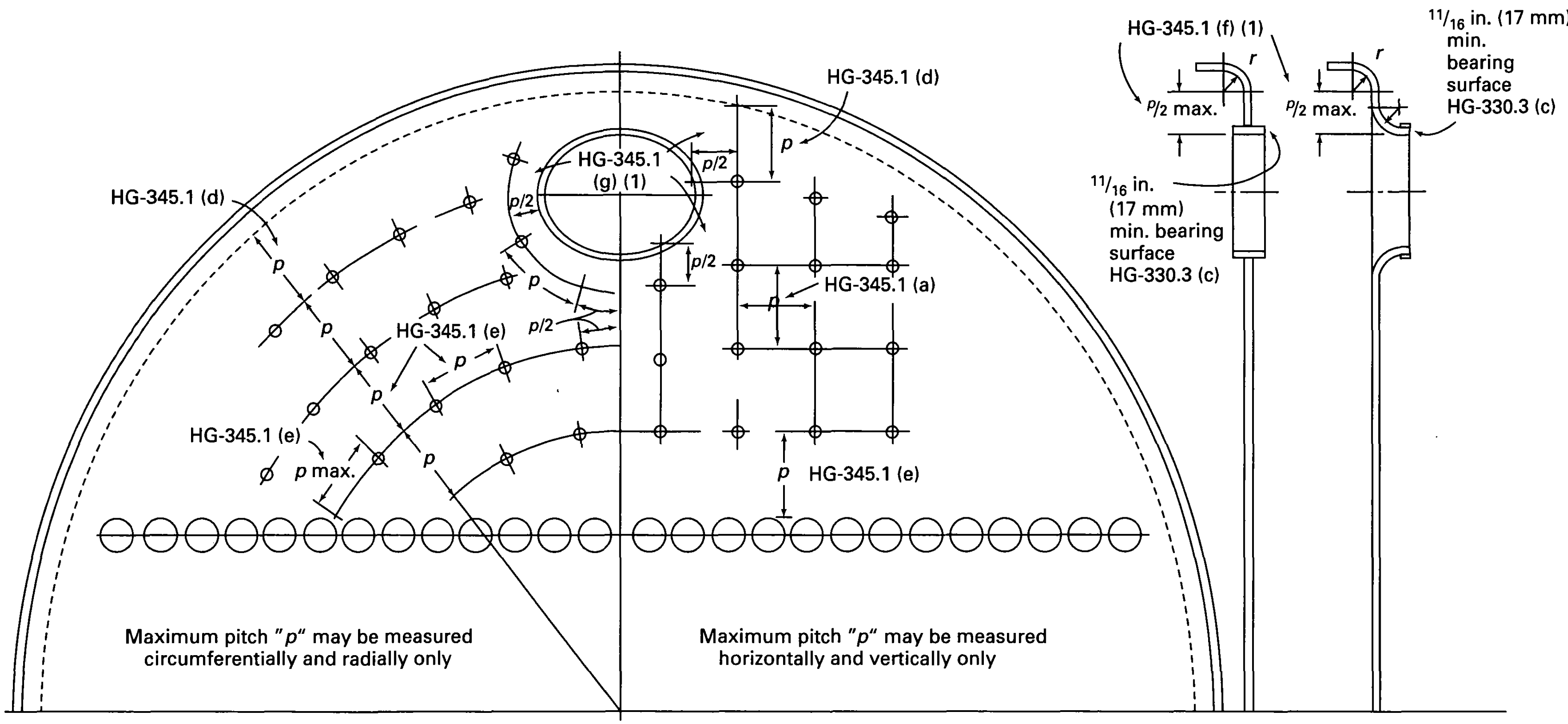
GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Required cross-sectional area to carry total load on segment based upon allowable stresses from Table HF-300.1 and computed by HG-342.1.

(b) Provide the number of stays required to not exceed the maximum calculated pitch.

(c) Diagonal stay stresses must not exceed limits computed from HG-343.1.

FIG. HG-345.1(b) SKETCH SHOWING APPLICATION OF HG-345.1 TO THE STAYING OF BOILERS



GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Required cross-sectional area to carry total load on segment based upon allowable stresses from Table HF-300.1 and computed by HG-342.1.

(b) Provide the number of stays required to not exceed the maximum calculated pitch.

(c) Diagonal stay stresses must not exceed limits computed from HG-343.1.

FIG. HG-350.1 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES EQUAL IN EVERY ROW

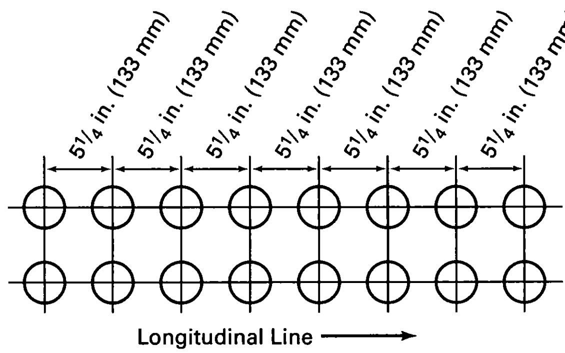
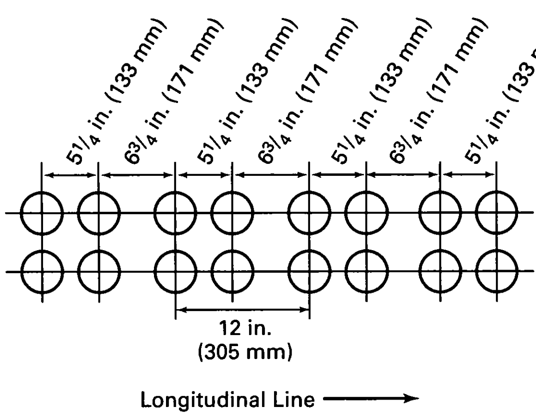


FIG. HG-350.2 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES UNEQUAL IN EVERY SECOND ROW



(c) For openings that do not fall into symmetrical groups, the efficiency shall be the value calculated as follows for the group of openings that gives the lowest efficiency:

(1) the efficiency given by Formula (2) above using p_1 equal to the inside diameter of the shell or 60 in. (1 500 mm), whichever is less

(2) 1.25 times the efficiency given by Formula (2) above using p_1 equal to the inside radius of the shell or 30 in. (750 mm), whichever is less

HG-350.3 Openings Transverse to Shell Axis. The ligament efficiency of openings spaced at right angles to the axis of the shell is equal to two times the efficiency of similarly spaced holes parallel to the shell axis as calculated in accordance with the rules in HG-350.2.

HG-350.4 Holes Along a Diagonal. The ligament efficiency shall be determined as follows.

(a) The efficiency of openings that are equally spaced along diagonal lines (see Fig. HG-350.4) is given by the formula:

$$E = \frac{p' - d}{p' F} \qquad (3)$$

where F is a factor from Fig. HG-321 for the angle that the diagonal makes with a plane through the longitudinal axis of the boiler.

(b) The ligament efficiency of openings that are unequally spaced along diagonal lines shall be determined as in HG-350.1(c) except that Formula (3) shall be used in place of Formula (2).

FIG. HG-350.3 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES VARYING IN EVERY SECOND AND THIRD ROW

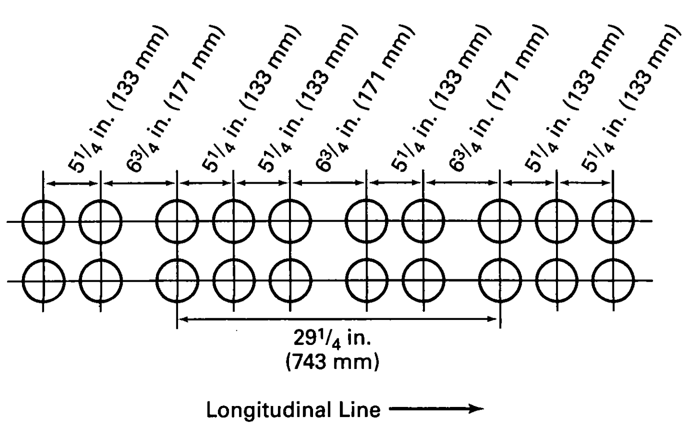


FIG. HG-350.4 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH TUBE HOLES ON DIAGONAL LINES

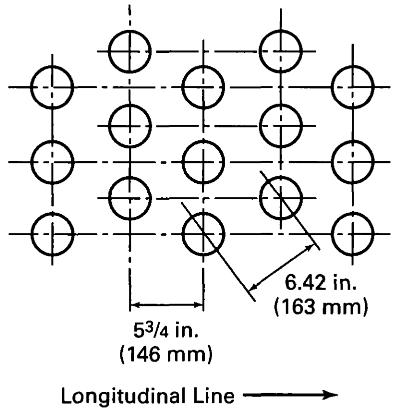


TABLE HG-360
PERMITTED O-RING MATERIALS

Material	Temperature Limit, °F (°C)
Hydrogenated Nitrile Rubber (HNBR)	300 (150)
Ethylene Propylene Diene Rubber (EPDM)	300 (150)
TFE/Propropylene Rubber (FEPM)	450 (230)
Perfluorinated Elastomer (FFKM)	480 (250)

HG-360 REQUIREMENTS FOR TUBE HOLES AND TUBE ATTACHMENTS

HG-360.1 Tube Holes and Ends

(a) Tube holes shall be drilled full size from the solid plate, or they may be punched ½ in. (13 mm) smaller in diameter than full size when the plate thickness exceeds ⅜ in. (10 mm) and ⅛ in. (3 mm) smaller in diameter than full size when the plate thickness is ⅜ in. (10 mm) or less, and then drilled, reamed, or finished full size with rotating cutters. Tube holes may be counterbored where the metal is thicker than that required to get a proper bearing by expanding, so as to form narrow seats into which the tube ends can properly expand, provided there is space available to permit a proper amount of flare of the tube end.

(b) The sharp edges of tube holes shall be taken off on both sides of the plate with a file or other tool.

HG-360.2 Attachment of Firetubes

(a) Ends of firetubes may be expanded, expanded and flared, expanded and beaded, expanded and welded, or welded. Firetubes that require consideration as stays in HG-346 shall not be attached by expanding alone.

(b) Firetubes attached by expanding and welding or welding shall comply with HW-713.

(c) Firetubes attached by expanding and flaring or expanding shall comply with the following:

(1) If the firetube ends are in contact with primary furnace gases, the tubes shall extend beyond the tube-sheet a distance not less than the tube thickness or ⅛ in. (3 mm), whichever is greater, but not more than ¼ in. (6 mm) or the tube thickness, whichever is greater.

(2) If the firetube ends are not in contact with primary furnace gases, the tubes shall extend beyond the tubesheet a distance not less than the tube thickness or ⅛ in. (3 mm), whichever is greater, but not more than ⅜ in. (10 mm) or the tube thickness, whichever is greater.

(d) Where firetubes are attached by welding, the tube holes may be drilled, flame cut, or punched. The tube holes may be punched full size provided the thickness of the tubesheet does not exceed 5⁄16 in. (8 mm). The diameter of the tube hole in any case shall not be more than 1⁄32 in. (0.8 mm) greater than the outside diameter of the tube.

HG-360.3 Attachment of Watertubes

(a) Watertubes may be attached by expanding, expanding and flaring, expanding and beading, expanding and welding, or welding. Watertubes attached by expanding and welding or welding shall comply with HW-713.

(b) Where attached by other than expanding and beading, the tubes shall extend beyond the tubesheet a distance not less than ¼ in. (6 mm) nor more than ½ in. (13 mm).

(c) Watertubes not exceeding 2 in. (50 mm) O.D. may be attached mechanically with welded tapered ferrules. When such method of attachment is used, the tapered ferrule shall completely penetrate the head or drum and be mechanically clamped to the header or drum with bolting of no less than ⅜ in. (10 mm) diameter, and the tubing shall not be used to support the pressure vessel.

(d) Where watertubes are attached by welding, the tube holes may be drilled, flame cut, or punched. The tube holes may be punched full size provided the thickness of the tubesheet does not exceed 5⁄16 in. (8 mm). The diameter of the tube hole in any case shall not be more than 1⁄32 in. (0.8 mm) greater than the outside diameter of the tube.

(e) Watertubes in hot water boilers may be installed into headers with the use of O-ring seals in lieu of expanding, welding, or brazing, provided the following conditions are met.

(1) The tube hole diameter shall be not more than 1⁄32 in. (0.8 mm) larger than the outside diameter of the tube.

(2) The tube hole shall be recessed to accommodate the O-ring.

(3) The dimensions of both the O-ring and its retaining groove shall be in accordance with the O-ring manufacturer's recommendations.

(4) The O-ring material shall be suitable for the design conditions. Material selections shall be limited to those shown in Table HG-360.

(5) The O-ring shall be located or shielded in a manner determined by the boiler Manufacturer to preclude the O-ring from being exposed to temperatures higher than the

maximum temperature listed in Table HG-360.

(6) The headers shall be held together by stays adequately designed to carry the end loading and prevent the headers from spreading apart. The maximum allowable stress value of the stays shall not exceed that permitted in Table HF-300.1.

(7) Means shall be provided to prevent the tubes from losing contact with the O-ring seal due to tube movement without loosening the stays.

(8) If the tube length exceeds 6 ft (1.8 m), the tubes shall be supported at their midlength.

TABLE HG-370
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF MATERIAL FOR THREADED CONNECTIONS TO BOILERS

Size of Pipe Connection, DN in. (mm)	Minimum Thickness of Material Required, in. (mm)
Under $\frac{3}{4}$ (20)	$\frac{1}{4}$ (6)
$\frac{3}{4}$ to 1 (20 to 25), incl.	$\frac{5}{16}$ (8)
$1\frac{1}{4}$ to $2\frac{1}{2}$ (32 to 65), incl.	$\frac{7}{16}$ (11)
3 to $3\frac{1}{2}$ (80 to under 100), incl.	$\frac{5}{8}$ (16)
4 to 5 (100 to 125), incl.	$\frac{7}{8}$ (22)
6 to 8 (150 to 200), incl.	1 (25)
9 to 12 (Over 200 to 300), incl.	$1\frac{1}{4}$ (32)

HG-370 EXTERNAL PIPING CONNECTIONS

HG-370.1 Threaded Connections. Pipe connections, if threaded, shall be tapped into material having a minimum thickness as specified in Table HG-370, except that when a curved surface is to be tapped the minimum thickness shall be sufficient to permit at least four full threads to be engaged.

HG-370.2 Flanged Connections

(a) It is recommended that dimensional requirements of bolted flange connections to external piping conform to ANSI B16.5, Steel Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings. Such flanges may be used for pressure–temperature ratings in accordance with the Standard.

(b) Steel flanges that do not conform to ANSI B16.5 shall be designed in accordance with the rules in Appendix II of Section VIII, Division 1, for the design pressure and temperature conditions. The outside diameter and bolting shall conform to a standard approved by ANSI.

ARTICLE 4
PRESSURE RELIEVING DEVICES

HG-400 PRESSURE RELIEVING VALVE REQUIREMENTS

HG-400.1 Safety Valve Requirements for Steam Boilers

(a) Each steam boiler shall have one or more officially rated safety valves that are identified with the V or HV Symbol of the spring pop type adjusted and sealed to discharge at a pressure not to exceed 15 psi (100 kPa).

07 *(b)* No safety valve for a steam boiler shall be smaller than NPS ½ (DN 15) or larger than NPS 4 (DN 100). The inlet opening shall have an inside diameter equal to, or greater than, the seat diameter.

(c) The minimum relieving capacity of valve or valves shall be governed by the capacity marking on the boiler called for in HG-530.

(d) The minimum valve capacity in pounds per hour shall be the greater of that determined by dividing the maximum Btu output at the boiler nozzle obtained by the firing of any fuel for which the unit is installed by 1,000, or shall be determined on the basis of the pounds (kg) of steam generated per hour per square foot (m^2) of boiler heating surface as given in Table HG-400.1. For cast iron boilers constructed to the requirements of Part HC, the minimum valve capacity shall be determined by the maximum output method. In many cases a greater relieving capacity of valves will have to be provided than the minimum specified by these rules. In every case, the requirement of HG-400.1(e) shall be met.

(e) The safety valve capacity for each steam boiler shall be such that with the fuel burning equipment installed, and operated at maximum capacity, the pressure cannot rise more than 5 psi (35 kPa) above the maximum allowable working pressure.

(f) When operating conditions are changed, or additional boiler heating surface is installed, the valve capacity shall be increased, if necessary, to meet the new conditions and be in accordance with HG-400.1(e). The additional valves required, on account of changed conditions, may be installed on the outlet piping provided there is no intervening valve.

TABLE HG-400.1
MINIMUM POUNDS OF STEAM PER HOUR (kg/hr) PER SQUARE FOOT (METER) OF HEATING SURFACE

Boiler Heating Surface	Firetube Boilers	Watertube Boilers
Hand fired	5 (24)	6 (29)
Stoker fired	7 (34)	8 (39)
Oil, gas, or pulverized fuel fired	8 (39)	10 (49)
Waterwall heating surface:		
Hand fired	8 (39)	8 (39)
Stoker fired	10 (49)	12 (59)
Oil, gas, or pulverized fuel fired	14 (68)	16 (78)

GENERAL NOTES:

(a) When a boiler is fired only by a gas having a heat value not in excess of 200 Btu/ft^3 (7 400 kJ/m^3), the minimum safety valves or safety relief valve relieving capacity may be based on the values given for hand fired boilers above.

(b) The minimum safety valve or safety relief valve relieving capacity for electric boilers shall be 3½ lb/hr/kW (1.6 kg/hr/kW) input.

(c) For heating surface determination, see HG-403.

(d) For extended heating surface, the minimum lb/hr/sq ft may be determined by the Manufacturer [see HG-403(d)].

HG-400.2 Safety Relief Valve Requirements for Hot Water Boilers

(a) Each hot water heating or supply boiler shall have at least one officially rated safety relief valve, of the automatic reseating type, identified with the V or HV Symbol, and set to relieve at or below the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler.

(b) Hot water heating or supply boilers limited to a water temperature not in excess of 210°F (99°C) may have, in lieu of the valve(s) specified in (a) above, one or more officially rated temperature and pressure safety relief valves of the automatic reseating type identified with the HV symbol, and set to relieve at or below the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler.

(c) When more than one safety relief valve is used on either hot water heating or hot water supply boilers, the additional valves shall be officially rated and may have a set pressure within a range not to exceed 6 psi (40 kPa) above the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler up to and including 60 psi (400 kPa), and 5% for those having a maximum allowable working pressure exceeding 60 psi (400 kPa).

(d) No safety relief valve shall be smaller than NPS ¾ 07
(DN 20) nor larger than NPS 4 (DN 100) except that boilers

having a heat input not greater than 15,000 Btu/hr (4.4 kW) may be equipped with a rated safety relief valve of NPS ½ (DN 15).

(e) The required steam relieving capacity, in pounds per hour (kg/h), of the pressure relieving device or devices on a boiler shall be the greater of that determined by dividing the maximum output in Btu at the boiler nozzle obtained by the firing of any fuel for which the unit is installed by 1,000, or shall be determined on the basis of pounds (kg) of steam generated per hour per square foot (m^2) of boiler heating surface as given in Table HG-400.1. For cast iron boilers constructed to the requirements of Part HC, the minimum valve capacity shall be determined by the maximum output method. In many cases a greater relieving capacity of valves will have to be provided than the minimum specified by these rules. In every case, the requirements of HG-400.2(g) shall be met.

(f) When operating conditions are changed, or additional boiler heating surface is installed, the valve capacity shall be increased, if necessary, to meet the new conditions and shall be in accordance with HG-400.2(g). The additional valves required, on account of changed conditions, may be installed on the outlet piping provided there is no intervening valve.

(g) Safety relief valve capacity for each boiler with a single safety relief valve shall be such that, with the fuel burning equipment installed and operated at maximum capacity, the pressure cannot rise more than 10% above the maximum allowable working pressure. When more than one safety relief valve is used, the overpressure shall be limited to 10% above the set pressure of the highest set valve allowed by HG-400.2(a).

HG-400.3 Safety and Safety Relief Valves for Tanks and Heat Exchangers

(a) Steam to Hot Water Supply. When a hot water supply is heated indirectly by steam in a coil or pipe within the service limitations set forth in HG-101, the pressure of the steam used shall not exceed the safe working pressure of the hot water tank, and a safety relief valve at least NPS 1 (DN 25), set to relieve at or below the maximum allowable working pressure of the tank, shall be applied on the tank.

(b) High Temperature Water to Water Heat Exchanger.[1] When high temperature water is circulated through the coils or tubes of a heat exchanger to warm water for space heating or hot water supply, within the service limitations set forth in HG-101, the heat exchanger shall be equipped with one or more officially rated safety relief valves that are identified with the V or HV Symbol, set to relieve at or below the maximum allowable working pressure of the heat exchanger, and of sufficient rated capacity to prevent the heat exchanger pressure from rising more than 10% above the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel.

(c) High Temperature Water to Steam Heat Exchanger.[1] When high temperature water is circulated through the coils or tubes of a heat exchanger to generate low pressure steam, within the service limitations set forth in HG-101, the heat exchanger shall be equipped with one or more officially rated safety valves that are identified with the V or HV Symbol, set to relieve at a pressure not to exceed 15 psi (100 kPa), and of sufficient rated capacity to prevent the heat exchanger pressure from rising more than 5 psi (35 kPa) above the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel. For heat exchangers requiring steam pressures greater than 15 psi (100 kPa), refer to Section I or Section VIII, Division 1.

HG-401 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR SAFETY AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

HG-401.1 Mechanical Requirements

(a) The inlet opening shall have an inside diameter approximately equal to, or greater than, the seat diameter. In no case shall the maximum opening through any part of the valve be less than ¼ in. (6 mm) in diameter or its equivalent area.

(b) Safety relief valves officially rated as to capacity shall have pop action when tested by steam.

(c) O-rings or other packing devices when used on the stems of safety relief valves shall be so arranged as not to affect their operation or capacity.

(d) The design shall incorporate guiding arrangements necessary to insure consistent operation and tightness. Excessive lengths of guiding surfaces should be avoided. Bottom guided designs are not permitted on safety relief valves.

(e) Safety valves shall have a controlled blowdown of 2 psi to 4 psi (15 kPa to 30 kPa) and this blowdown need not be adjustable.

(f) Safety valves shall be spring loaded. The spring shall be designed so that the full lift spring compression shall be no greater than 80% of the nominal solid deflection. The permanent set of the spring (defined as the difference between the free height and height measured 10 min after the spring has been compressed solid three additional times after presetting at room temperature) shall not exceed 0.5% of the free height.

(g) There shall be a lifting device and a mechanical connection between the lifting device and the disk capable of lifting the disk from the seat a distance of at least $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) with no pressure on the boiler.

(h) A body drain below seat level shall be provided by the Manufacturer for all safety valves and safety relief valves, except that the body drain may be omitted when

[1] Suggested installation practices for the secondary side of heat exchangers.

the valve seat is above the bottom of the inside diameter of the discharge piping. For valves exceeding NPS 2½ (DN 65) the drain hole or holes shall be tapped not less than NPS ⅜ (DN 10). For valves NPS 2½ (DN 65) or smaller, the drain hole shall not be less than ¼ in. (6 mm) in diameter. Body drain connections shall not be plugged during or after field installation. In safety relief valves of the diaphragm type, the space above the diaphragm shall be vented to prevent a buildup of pressure above the diaphragm. Safety relief valves of the diaphragm type shall be so designed that failure or deterioration of the diaphragm material will not impair the ability of the valve to relieve at the rated capacity.

(i) In the design of the body of the valve consideration shall be given to minimizing the effects of water deposits.

(j) Valves shall be provided with wrenching surfaces to allow for normal installation without damaging operating parts.

(k) The set pressure tolerances, plus or minus, of safety valves shall not exceed 2 psi (15 kPa), and for safety relief valves shall not exceed 3 psi (20 kPa) for pressures up to and including 60 psig (400 kPa) and 5% for pressures above 60 psig (400 kPa).

(l) Safety valves shall be arranged so that they cannot be reset to relieve at a higher pressure than the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler.

HG-401.2 Material Selection

(a) Cast iron seats and disks are not permitted.

(b) Adjacent sliding surfaces such as guides and disks shall both be of corrosion resistant material.

(c) Springs of corrosion resistant material or having a corrosion resistant coating are required.

(d) Material for seats and disks should be such as to provide a reasonable degree of resistance to steam cutting.

(e) Material for valve bodies and bonnets or their corresponding metallic pressure containing parts shall be listed in Section II, except that in cases where a manufacturer desires to make use of materials other than those listed in Section II, he shall establish and maintain specifications requiring equivalent control of chemical and physical properties and quality.

(f) Synthetic disk inserts of O-ring or other types if used shall be compatible with the maximum design temperature established for the valve.

(g) No materials liable to fail due to deterioration or vulcanization when subjected to saturated steam temperature corresponding to capacity test pressure shall be used.

HG-401.3 Manufacture and Inspection

(a) A Manufacturer shall demonstrate to the satisfaction of an ASME designee that his manufacturing, production, and testing facilities and quality control procedures will insure close agreement between the performance of random production samples and the performance of those valves submitted for capacity certification.

(b) Manufacturing, inspection, and test operations including capacity are subject to inspections at any time by an ASME designee.

(c) A Manufacturer may be granted permission to apply the HV Code Symbol to production pressure relief valves capacity certified in accordance with HG-402.3 provided the following tests are successfully completed. This permission shall expire on the fifth anniversary of the date it is initially granted. The permission may be extended for 5 year periods if the following tests are successfully repeated within the 6 month period before expiration.

(1) Two sample production pressure relief valves of a size and capacity within the capability of an ASME accepted laboratory shall be selected by an ASME designee.

(2) Operational and capacity tests shall be conducted in the presense of an ASME designee at an ASME accepted laboratory. The valve Manufacturer shall be notified of the time of the test and may have representatives present to witness the test.

(3) Should any valve fail to relieve at or above its certified capacity or should it fail to meet performance requirements of this Section, the test shall be repeated at the rate of two replacement valves, selected in accordance with HG-401.3(c)(1), for each valve that failed.

(4) Failure of any of the replacement valves to meet the capacity or the performance requirements of this Section shall be cause for revocation within 60 days of the authorization to use the Code Symbol on that particular type of valve. During this period, the Manufacturer shall demonstrate the cause of such deficiency and the action taken to guard against future occurrence, and the requirements of HG-401.3(c) above shall apply.

(d) Safety valves shall be sealed in a manner to prevent the valve from being taken apart without breaking the seal. Safety relief valves shall be set and sealed so that they cannot be reset without breaking the seal.

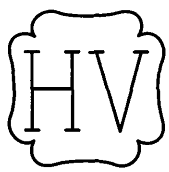
HG-401.4 Manufacturer's Testing

(a) Every safety valve shall be tested to demonstrate its popping point, blowdown, and tightness. Every safety relief valve shall be tested to demonstrate its opening point and tightness. Safety valves shall be tested on steam or air and safety relief valves on water, steam, or air. When the blowdown is nonadjustable, the blowdown test may be performed on a sampling basis.

(b) A Manufacturer shall have a well-established program for the application, calibration, and maintenance of test gages.

(c) Testing time on safety valves shall be sufficient, depending on size and design, to insure that test results are repeatable and representative of field performance.

FIG. HG-402 OFFICIAL SYMBOL FOR STAMP TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD



(d) Test fixtures and test drums shall be of adequate size and capacity to assure representative pop action and accuracy of blowdown adjustment.

(e) A tightness test shall be conducted at maximum expected operating pressure, but not at a pressure exceeding the reseating pressure of the valve.

HG-401.5 Design Requirements. At the time of the submission of valves for capacity certification, or testing in accordance with this Section, the ASME Designee has the authority to review the design for conformity with the requirements of this Section, and to reject or require modification of designs that do not conform, prior to capacity testing.

HG-402 DISCHARGE CAPACITIES OF SAFETY AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

HG-402.1 Valve Markings. Each safety or safety-relief valve shall be plainly marked with the required data by the Manufacturer in such a way that the markings will not be obliterated in service. The markings shall be stamped, etched, impressed, or cast on the valve or on a nameplate, which shall be securely fastened to the valve.

(a) The markings shall include the following:

(1) the name or an acceptable abbreviation of the Manufacturer

(2) Manufacturer's design or type number

(3) NPS size ______ in. (DN) (the nominal pipe size of the valve inlet)

(4) set pressure ______ psi

(5) capacity _____ lb/hr (kg/hr), or capacity ______Btu/hr in accordance with HG-402.7(a)

(6) year built or, alternatively, a coding may be marked on the valves such that the valve Manufacturer can identify the year the valve was assembled and tested, and

(7) ASME Symbol as shown in Fig. HG-402

(b) Nameplates of safety or safety-relief valves may be marked solely in metric units under the following conditions:

(1) The pressure-relief device will be installed in a location where metric units are required or accepted by local authorities, if any.

(2) Metric units shall be those required by the user when not mandated by enforcement authorities.

(3) The Manufacturer's quality control system shall provide for the conversion from U.S. customary units to the metric units that will be marked on the nameplate.

HG-402.2 Authorization to Use ASME Stamp. Each safety valve to which the Code Symbol (Fig. HG-402) is to be applied shall be produced by a Manufacturer and/or Assembler who is in possession of a valid Certificate of Authorization. (See HG-540.)

For all valves to be stamped with the HV Symbol, a Certified Individual (CI) shall provide oversight to ensure that the use of the "HV" Code symbol on a safety valve or safety relief valve is in accordance with this Section and that the use of the "HV" Code symbol is documented on a Certificate of Conformance Form, HV-1.

(a) *Requirements for the Certified Individual (CI).* The CI shall

(1) be an employee of the Manufacturer.

(2) be qualified and certified by the Manufacturer. Qualification shall include the following as a minimum:

(a) knowledge of the requirements of this Section for the application of the "HV" Code Symbol

(b) knowledge of the Manufacturer's quality program

(c) training commensurate with the scope, complexity, or special nature of the activities to which oversight is to be provided

(3) have a record, maintained and certified by the Manufacturer, containing objective evidence of the qualifications of the CI and the training program provided

(b) *Duties of the Certified Individual (CI).* The CI shall

(1) verify that each item to which the Code Symbol is applied meets all applicable requirements of this Section and has a current capacity certification for the "HV" symbol

(2) review documentation for each lot of items to be stamped, to verify, for the lot, that the requirements of this Section have been completed

(3) sign the Certificate of Conformance Form (HV-1) prior to release of control of the item

(c) *Certificate of Conformance Form (HV-1)* (see Appendix N)

(1) The Certificate of Conformance shall be filled out by the Manufacturer and signed by the Certified Individual. Multiple duplicate pressure relief devices may be recorded on a single entry provided the devices are identical and produced in the same lot.

(2) The Manufacturer's written quality control program shall include requirements for completion of Certificates of Conformance forms and retention by the Manufacturer for a minimum of 5 years.

HG-402.3 Determination of Capacity to Be Stamped on Valves. The Manufacturer of the valves that are to be stamped with the Code symbol shall submit valves for testing to a place where adequate equipment and personnel are available to conduct pressure and relieving-capacity tests which shall be made in the presence of and certified by an authorized observer. The place, personnel, and authorized observer shall be approved by the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee. The valves shall be tested in one of the following three methods.

(a) Coefficient Method. Tests shall be made to determine the lift, popping, and blowdown pressures, and the capacity of at least three valves each of three representative sizes (a total of nine valves). Each valve of a given size shall be set at a different pressure. However, safety valves for steam boilers shall have all nine valves set at 15 psig (100 kPa). A coefficient shall be established for each test as follows:

$$K_D = \frac{\text{Actual steam flow}}{\text{Theoretical steam flow}} = \text{Coefficient of discharge}$$

The average of the coefficients K_D of the nine tests required shall be multiplied by 0.90, and this product shall be taken as the coefficient K of that design. The stamped capacity for all sizes and pressures shall not exceed the value determined from the following formulas:

For 45 deg seat,

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$W = 51.5\ \pi DLP \times 0.707K$$

(SI Units)

$$W = 5.25\ \pi DLP \times 0.707K$$

For flat seat,

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$W = 51.5\ \pi DLPK$$

(SI Units)

$$W = 5.25\ \pi DLP$$

For nozzle,

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$W = 51.5APK$$

(SI Units)

$$W = 5.25\ APK$$

where

A = nozzle-throat area
D = seat diameter
K = coefficient of discharge for the design
L = lift
P = (1.10 × set pressure + 14.7) psia or (1.10 × set pressure + 0.101) MPa, for hot water applications or
= (5.0 psi + 15 psi set + 14.7) psia or (0.035 MPa + 0.100 MPa set + 0.101) MPa, for steam boilers
W = weight of steam/hr

NOTE: The maximum and minimum coefficient determined by the tests of a valve design shall not vary more than ±5% from the average. If one or more tests are outside the acceptable limits, one valve of the Manufacturer's choice shall be replaced with another valve of the same size and pressure setting or by a modification of the original valve. Following this test a new average coefficient shall be calculated, excluding the replaced valve test. If one or more tests are now outside the acceptable limits, as determined by the new average coefficient, a valve of the Manufacturer's choice must be replaced by two valves of the same size and pressure as the rejected valve. A new average coefficient, including the replacement valves, shall be calculated. If any valve, excluding the two replaced valves, now falls outside the acceptable limits, the tests shall be considered unsatisfactory.

(b) Slope Method. If a Manufacturer wishes to apply the Code Symbol to a design of pressure relief valves, four valves of each combination of pipe and orifice size shall be tested. These four valves shall be set at pressures that cover the approximate range of pressures for which the valve will be used, or that cover the range available at the certified test facility that shall conduct the tests. The capacities shall be based on these four tests as follows:

(1) The slope (W/P) of the actual measured capacity versus the flow pressure for each test point shall be calculated and averaged:

$$\text{slope} = W/P = \frac{\text{measured capacity}}{\text{absolute flow pressure, psia}}$$

All values derived from the testing must fall within ±5% of the average value:

$$\text{minimum slope} = 0.95 \times \text{average slope}$$

$$\text{maximum slope} = 1.05 \times \text{average slope}$$

If the values derived from the testing do not fall between the minimum and maximum slope values, the Authorized Observer shall require that additional valves be tested at the rate of two for each valve beyond the maximum and minimum values with a limit of four additional valves.

(2) The relieving capacity to be stamped on the valve shall not exceed 90% of the average slope times the absolute accumulation pressure:

$$\text{rated slope} = 0.90 \times \text{average slope}$$

stamped capacity ≤ rated slope × (1.10 × set pressure + 14.7) psia or (1.10 × set pressure + 101) kPa for hot water applications

(c) Three-Valve Method. If a Manufacturer wishes to apply the Code Symbol to steam safety valves or safety relief valves of one or more sizes of a design set at one

pressure, he shall submit three valves of each size of each design set at one pressure for testing and the stamped capacity of each size shall not exceed 90% of the average capacity of the three valves tested.

NOTE: The discharge capacity as determined by the test of each valve tested shall not vary by more than ±5% of the average capacity of the three valves tested. If one of the three valve tests falls outside of the limits, it may be replaced by two valves and a new average calculated based on all four valves, excluding the replaced valve.

HG-402.4 Pressures at Which Capacity Tests Shall Be Conducted. Safety valves for steam boilers shall be tested for capacity at 5 psi (35 kPa) over the set pressure for which the valve is set to operate. Capacity certification tests of safety relief valves for hot water heating and hot water supply boilers shall be conducted at 110% of the pressure for which the valve is set to operate.

HG-402.5 Opening Tests of Temperature and Pressure Safety Relief Valves. For the purpose of determining the set (opening) pressure, the test medium shall be room temperature water. The actual set pressure is defined as the pressure at the valve inlet when the flow rate through the valve is 40 cc/min. Capacity tests shall be conducted with steam (see HG-402.7) at a pressure 10% above the actual water set pressure. For production capacity check tests, the rated capacity shall be based on the actual water set pressure.

HG-402.6 Capacity Tests of Temperature and Pressure Safety Relief Valves. For the purpose of determining the capacity of temperature and pressure safety relief valves, dummy elements of the same size and shape as the regularly applied thermal element shall be substituted and the relieving capacity shall be based on the pressure element only. Valves selected to meet the requirements of production testing, HG-401.3, shall have their temperature elements deactivated by the Manufacturer prior to or at the time of capacity testing.

HG-402.7 Fluid Medium for Capacity Tests. The tests shall be made with dry saturated steam. For test purposes the limits of 98% minimum quality and 20°F (10°C) maximum superheat shall apply. Correction from within these limits may be made to the dry saturated condition. The relieving capacity shall be measured by condensing the steam or with a calibrated steam flowmeter.

To determine the discharge capacity of safety relief valves in terms of Btu, the relieving capacity in pounds for steam per hour W is multiplied by 1,000.

HG-402.8 Where and by Whom Capacity Tests Shall Be Conducted

(a) Tests shall be conducted at a place where the testing facilities, methods, procedures, and person supervising the tests (Authorized Observer) meet the applicable requirements of ASME PTC 25. The tests shall be made under the supervision of and certified by an Authorized Observer. The testing facilities, methods, procedures, and qualifications of the Authorized Observer shall be subject to the acceptance of ASME on recommendation of an ASME Designee. Acceptance of the testing facility is subject to review within each 5 year period.

(b) Capacity test data reports for each valve model, type, and size, signed by the Manufacturer and the Authorized Observer witnessing the tests, shall be submitted to the ASME Designee for review and acceptance.[2]

NOTE: When changes are made in the design, capacity certification tests shall be repeated.

HG-402.9 Test Record Data Sheet. A data sheet for each valve shall be filled out and signed by the authorized observer witnessing the test. Such data sheet will be the manufacturer's authority to build and stamp valves of corresponding design and construction. When changes are made in the design of a safety or safety relief valve in such a manner as to affect the flow path, lift, or performance characteristics of the valve, new tests in accordance with this Section shall be performed.

NOTE: See HG-512 for safety and safety relief valve accumulation test requirements. See HG-701 for safety and safety relief valve installation requirements.

HG-403 HEATING SURFACE

The heating surface shall be computed as follows:

(a) Heating surface, as part of a circulating system in contact on one side with water or wet steam being heated and on the other side with gas or refractory being cooled, shall be measured on the side receiving heat.

(b) Boiler heating surface and other equivalent surface outside the furnace shall be measured circumferentially plus any extended surface.

(c) Waterwall heating surface and other equivalent surface within the furnace shall be measured as the projected tube area (diameter × length) plus any extended surface on the furnace side. In computing the heating surface for this purpose, only the tubes, fireboxes, shells, tubesheets, and the projected area of headers need be considered, except that for vertical firetube steam boilers, only that

[2] Valve capacities are published in "Pressure Relief Device Certifications." This publication may be obtained from The National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors, 1055 Crupper Avenue, Columbus, OH 43229.

portion of the tube surface up to the middle of the gage glass is to be computed.

(d) When extended surfaces or fins are used, the total surface representing the extended surface and its maximum designed generating capacity per square foot, as determined by the Manufacturer, shall be recorded in the remarks section of the Manufacturer's Data Report. Also, the computed extended surface and the related generating capacity per square foot shall be included in the stamping or nameplate as shown in Fig. HG-530.2 and Fig. HG-530.3. The generating capacity attributed to the extended heating surface shall be included in the total minimum relief valve capacity marked on the stamping or nameplate.

HG-405 TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

The thermal sensing elements for temperature and pressure safety relief valves shall be so designed and constructed that they will not fail in any manner that could obstruct flow passages or reduce capacities of the valves when the elements are subjected to saturated steam temperature corresponding to capacity test pressure. Temperature and pressure safety relief valves incorporating these elements shall comply with a nationally recognized standard.[3]

[3] An example of a nationally recognized standard is ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4, Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems.

ARTICLE 5
TESTS, INSPECTION, AND STAMPING

HG-500 PROOF TESTS TO ESTABLISH DESIGN PRESSURE

HG-501 GENERAL

(a) The design pressure for pressure parts of boilers for which the strength cannot be computed with a satisfactory assurance of accuracy shall be established in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph, using one of the test procedures applicable to the type of loading and to the material used in its construction.

(b) The tests in these paragraphs may be used only for the purpose of establishing the design pressure of those elements or component parts for which the thickness cannot be determined by means of the design rules given in the Code. The design pressure of all other elements or component parts shall not be greater than that determined by means of the applicable design rules.

HG-501.1 Types of Tests. Provision is made for two types of tests for determining the internal design pressure:

(a) tests based on yielding of the part to be tested; these tests are limited to materials with a ratio of minimum specified yield to minimum specified ultimate strength of 0.625 or less. If a proof tested part shows no evidence of permanent yielding per HG-502.1 and HG-502.2, it may be Code stamped.

(b) tests based on bursting of the part. The part proof tested under the burst test provisions shall not be Code stamped.

HG-501.2 Retests. A retest shall be allowed on a duplicate pressure part if errors or irregularities are obvious in the test results.

HG-501.3 Precautions. Safety of testing personnel should be given serious consideration when conducting proof tests, and particular care should be taken during the conducting of bursting tests per HG-502.3.

HG-501.4 Pressure Application

(a) Previously Applied. The pressure parts for which the design pressure is to be established shall not previously have been subjected to a pressure greater than $1\frac{1}{2}$ times *the desired or anticipated* design pressure.

(b) Application. In the procedures given in HG-502.1 for the strain measurement test and HG-502.2 for the displacement measurement test, the hydrostatic pressure in the pressure part shall be increased gradually until approximately one-half the anticipated design pressure is reached. Thereafter, the test pressure shall be increased in steps of approximately one-tenth or less of the anticipated design pressure until the pressure required by the test procedure is reached. The pressure shall be held stationary at the end of each increment for a sufficient time to allow the observations required by the test procedure to be made and shall be released to zero to permit determination of any permanent strain or displacement after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in strain or displacement over the previous equal pressure increment.

HG-501.5 Critical Areas. As a check that the measurements are being taken on the most critical areas, the Inspector may require a lime wash or other brittle coating to be applied on all areas of probable high stress concentrations in the test procedures given in HG-502.1 and HG-502.2. The surfaces shall be suitably clean before the coating is applied in order to obtain satisfactory adhesion. The technique shall be suited to the coating material.

NOTE: Strains should be measured as they apply to membrane stresses. In regard to bending stresses it is recognized that high localized and secondary stresses may exist in pressure parts designed and fabricated in accordance with these rules. Insofar as practical, design rules for details have been written to hold such stresses at a safe level consistent with experience.

HG-501.6 Yield Strength and Tensile Strength. For proof tests based on yielding, HG-502.1 and HG-502.2, the yield strength (or yield point for those materials that exhibit that type of yield behavior indicated by a "sharp-kneed" portion of the stress–strain diagram) of the material in the part tested, shall be determined in accordance with the method prescribed in the applicable material specification and as described in ASTM E 8, Tension Testing of Metallic Materials. For proof tests based on bursting, HG-502.3, the tensile strength instead of the yield strength of the material in the part tested shall be similarly determined.

(a) Yield or tensile strength so determined shall be the average from three or four specimens cut from the part tested after the test is completed. The specimens shall be cut from a location where the stress during the test has not exceeded the yield strength. The specimens shall not be

oxygen cut because this might affect the strength of the material. If yield or tensile strength is not determined by test specimens from the pressure part tested, alternative methods are given in HG-502.1, HG-502.2, and HG-502.3 for evaluation of proof test results to establish the design pressure.

(b) When excess stock from the same piece of wrought material is available the test specimens may be cut from this excess stock. The specimens shall not be removed by flame cutting or any other method involving sufficient heat to affect the properties of the specimen.

HG-502 PROCEDURE

HG-502.1 Strain Measurement Test

(a) Subject to limitations of HG-501.1(a), this procedure may be used for pressure parts under internal pressure, constructed of any material permitted to be used under the rules of Section IV. Strains shall be measured in the direction of the maximum stress at the most highly stressed parts (see HG-501.5) by means of strain gages of any type capable of indicating strains to 0.00005 in./in. (0.005%). Pressure shall be applied as provided in HG-501.4(b).

(b) After each increment of pressure has been applied, readings of the strain gages and the hydrostatic pressure shall be taken and recorded. The pressure shall be released and any permanent strain at each gage shall be determined after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in strain for this increment over the previous equal pressure increment. Only one application of each increment of pressure is required.

(c) Two curves of strain against test pressure shall be plotted for each gage line as the test progresses, one showing the strain under pressure and one showing the permanent strain when the pressure is removed. The test may be discontinued when the test pressure reaches the value H that will, by the formula, justify the desired working pressure, but shall not exceed the pressure at which the plotted points for the most highly strained gage line reaches the value given below for the material used:

(1) 0.2% permanent strain for carbon, low alloy, and high alloy steels

(2) 0.5% strain under pressure for copper-base alloys

(d) The design pressure P for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas:

(1) if the average yield strength is determined by HG-501.6,

$$P = 0.5H\frac{Y_s}{Y_a}$$

(2) if the actual average yield strength is not determined by test specimens,

$$P = 0.4H$$

where

H = hydrostatic test pressure at which the test was stopped in accordance with HG-502.1(c)

Y_a = actual average yield strength from test specimens

Y_s = specified minimum yield strength

HG-502.2 Displacement Measurement Test

(a) Subject to the limitations of HG-501.1(a), this procedure may be used only for pressure parts under internal pressure, constructed of materials having a definitely determinable yield point. Displacement shall be measured at the most highly stressed parts (see HG-501.5) by means of measuring devices of any type capable of measuring to 1 mil (0.025 mm). This displacement may be measured between two diametrically opposed reference points in a symmetrical structure, or between a reference point and a fixed base point. Pressure shall be applied as provided in HG-501.4(b).

(b) After each increment of pressure has been applied, readings of the displacement and the hydrostatic pressure shall be taken and recorded. The pressure shall be released and any permanent displacement shall be determined after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in measured displacement for this increment over the previous equal pressure increment. Only one application of each increment is required. Care must be taken to insure that the readings represent only displacements of the parts on which measurements are being made and do not include any slip of the measuring devices or any movement of the fixed base points or of the pressure part as a whole.

(c) Two curves of displacement against test pressure shall be plotted for each reference point as the test progresses, one showing the displacement under pressure, and one showing the permanent displacement when the pressure is removed. The application of pressure shall be stopped when it is evident that the curve through the points representing displacement under pressure has deviated from a straight line.

(d) The pressure coincident with the proportional limit of the material shall be determined by noting the pressure at which the curve representing displacement under pressure deviates from a straight line. The pressure at the proportional limit may be checked from the curve of permanent displacement by locating the point where the permanent displacement begins to increase regularly with further increases in pressure. Permanent deformation at the beginning of the curve that results from the equalization of stresses and irregularities in the material may be disregarded.

The design pressure P at test temperature for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas.

(1) If the average yield strength is determined by HG-501.6,

$$P = 0.5H \frac{Y_s}{Y_a}$$

(2) In order to eliminate the necessity of cutting tensile specimens and determining the actual yield strength of the material under test, one of the following formulas may be used to determine the design pressure:

(a) for carbon steel, meeting an acceptable Code specification, with a specified minimum tensile strength of not over 70,000 psi (480 MPa),

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$P = 0.5H \left(\frac{S}{S + 5{,}000}\right) \qquad (2a)$$

(SI Units)

$$P = 0.5H \left(\frac{S}{S + 34\ 500}\right) \qquad (2a)$$

(b) for any acceptable material listed in Section IV,

$$P = 0.4H \qquad (2b)$$

where

H = hydrostatic test pressure coincident with the proportional limit of the weakest element of the component part tested
S = specified minimum tensile strength
Y_a = actual average yield strength from test specimens
Y_s = specified minimum yield strength

(e) When Formula (2a) or (2b) is used, the material in the pressure part shall have had no appreciable cold working or other treatment that would tend to raise the yield strength above the normal.

HG-502.3 Bursting Tests

(a) This procedure may be used for pressure parts under internal pressure when constructed of any material permitted to be used under the rules of Section IV. The design pressure of any component part proof tested by this method shall be established by a hydrostatic test to failure by rupture of a full-size sample of such pressure part. As an alternative, the hydrostatic test may be stopped when the test pressure reaches a value that will, by the formula in (b) below, justify the design pressure.

(b) The design pressure P, psi, for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by the following formula:

$$P = \frac{B}{5} \times \frac{S}{S_a \text{ or } S_m}$$

where

B = bursting test pressure
S = specified minimum tensile strength
S_a = average actual tensile strength of test specimens,
S_m = maximum tensile strength of range of specification

HG-502.4 Brittle Coating Test Procedure

(a) Subject to the limitations of HG-501.1(a), this procedure may be used only for boiler and boiler parts under internal pressure, constructed of materials having a definitely determinable yield point. The component parts that require proof testing shall be coated with a lime wash or other brittle coating in accordance with HG-501.5. Pressure shall be applied in accordance with HG-501.4. The parts being proof tested shall be examined between pressure increments for signs of yielding as evidenced by flaking of the brittle coating, or by the appearance of strain lines. The application of pressure shall be stopped at the first sign of yielding, or if desired, at some lower pressure.

(b) The design pressure P for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas:

(1) if the average yield strength is determined in accordance with HG-501.6,

$$P = 0.5H \frac{Y_s}{Y_a}$$

(2) to eliminate the necessity of cutting tensile specimens and determining the actual yield strength of the material under test, one of the following formulas may be used to determine the design pressure:

(a) for carbon steel meeting an acceptable Code specification, with a specified minimum tensile strength of not over 70,000 psi (480 MPa),

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$P = 0.5H \left(\frac{S}{S + 5{,}000}\right) \qquad (2a)$$

(SI Units)

$$P = 0.5H \left(\frac{S}{S + 34\ 500}\right) \qquad (2a)$$

(b) for any acceptable material listed in Section IV,

$$P = 0.4H \qquad (2b)$$

where

H = hydrostatic test pressure at which the test was stopped
S = specified minimum tensile strength
Y_a = actual average yield strength from test specimens
Y_s = specified minimum yield strength

(c) When Formula (2a) or (2b) is used, the material in the pressure part shall have had no appreciable cold working or other treatment that would tend to raise the yield strength above the normal.

HG-503 TESTS OF PARTS SUBJECT TO COLLAPSE

Parts of the boiler normally subject to collapse for which specified rules are not provided in this Section shall withstand without excessive deformation a hydrostatic test of not less than three times the desired design pressure.

HG-504 TESTS OF DUPLICATE PARTS

When the design pressure of a pressure part has been established by a proof test, duplicate parts of the same materials, design, and construction need not be proof tested but shall be given the standard hydrostatic test at $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the maximum allowable working pressure. The dimensions and minimum thickness of the structure to be tested should not vary materially from those actually used. A geometrically similar part may be qualified by a series of tests covering the complete size range of the pressure part.

HG-505 TEST GAGES

(a) An indicating gage shall be connected directly to the pressure part. Intermediate pipe and fittings may be used provided there are no intervening valves. If the indicating gage is not readily visible to the operator controlling the pressure applied, an additional indicating gage shall be provided where it will be visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. For large pressure parts, it is recommended that a recording gage be used in addition to indicating gages.

(b) Dial indicating pressure gages used in testing shall be graduated over a range of about double the intended maximum test pressure, but in no case shall the range be less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ nor more than 4 times that pressure. Digital reading pressure gages having a wider range of pressure may be used provided the readings give the same or greater degree of accuracy as obtained with dial pressure gages.

(c) All gages used in proof testing shall be calibrated against a standard deadweight tester or a calibrated master gage before the proof test is begun. Gages shall be recalibrated at any time that there is reason to believe they are in error.

HG-506 INSPECTION OF PROOF TESTS

Tests to establish the design pressure of pressure parts shall be witnessed and accepted by an Authorized Inspector.

07 HG-510 HYDROSTATIC TESTS

(a) Cast iron boilers shall be tested in accordance with HC-410.

(b) For boilers with integrally finned tubes and a design pressure of 160 psi (1.1 MPa), both the pneumatic test required in HF-204.1(e) and the hydrostatic test of HG-510(c) may be alternatively met by a hydrostatic test on the boiler under the following conditions:

(1) A hydrostatic test pressure of at least 240 psi (1.9 MPa) is applied to the tubes and boiler.

(2) A hold time of 5 min is maintained on the boiler at the required internal test pressure.

(3) The test pressure may then be reduced to maximum allowable working pressure for inspection.

(4) The tubes must be readily visible for inspection while under pressure.

(c) All other boilers shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than the greater of 60 psi (0.400 MPa) or $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the design pressure, except if a boiler made of material in Part HF has its maximum allowable working pressure limited by a Part HC cast iron part the test pressure may be extended to $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the design pressure of the cast iron part or $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the design pressure of the next limiting part, whichever is less.

Close visual inspection is not required during this stage. The hydrostatic test pressure may then be reduced to the maximum allowable working pressure to be stamped on the boiler and maintained at this pressure while close visual inspection for leakage is made of all joints and connections. In making hydrostatic pressure tests, the pressure shall be under such control that the test pressure established shall not be exceeded by more than 10 psi (70 kPa).

HG-512 SAFETY AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVE ACCUMULATION TESTS

If the safety valve or safety relief valve capacity cannot be computed or if it is desirable to prove the computations, it may be checked in any one of the following ways and, if found insufficient, additional capacity shall be provided

(a) by making an accumulation test, that is, by shutting off all discharge outlets from the boiler and forcing the fires to the maximum, the safety valve equipment shall be sufficient to prevent an excess pressure beyond that specified in HG-400.1(f) and HG-400.2(f).

(b) by measuring the maximum amount of fuel that can be burned, and computing the corresponding evaporative capacity upon the basis the heating value of the fuel. (See B-100, B-101, and B-102.)

HG-515 INSPECTION TESTS AND CERTIFICATION OF BOILERS

HG-515.1 General. The inspection and testing of boilers to be marked with the Code H Symbol shall conform to the general requirements for inspection and testing in the following paragraphs and, in addition, to the specific requirements for inspection and tests given in Parts HF and HC.

HG-515.2 Manufacturer's Responsibility. The Manufacturer has the responsibility of providing the Inspector with all specified information and of assuring that the quality control, the detailed examination, and the tests required by this Section are performed at the stages of construction necessary to permit them to be meaningful (see F-202.5). These responsibilities shall include, but not be limited to, providing or making available for review the following:

(a) the Certificate of Authorization from the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee authorizing the Manufacturer to fabricate the type of boiler being constructed (see HG-540)

(b) the drawings and design calculations for the boiler or part (see Part HG, Article 3; Part HF, Article 3; Subpart HW, Article 7; Subpart HB, Article 1300; and Part HC, Article 3)

(c) identification for all materials used in the fabrication of the boiler or part (see Part HG, Article 2; Subpart HW, Article 5; Subpart HB, Article 1100; and Part HC, Article 2)

(d) any Partial Data Reports when required (see HG-531)

(e) access for the Inspector to those parts of the plant concerned with the supply or fabrication of materials for the boiler; keeping the Inspector informed of the progress of the work so that the required inspections can be performed in the proper sequence (see HW-900, HB-1500, and F-202.5)

(f) evidence of examination of all material before and during fabrication to make certain it has the required thickness, has no unacceptable defects, is one of the acceptable materials permitted by this Section, and that traceability to the material identification has been maintained (see HG-201, HC-502.5, F-202.4, and HF-210)

(g) concurrence of the Inspector for correction of nonconformities in accordance with the Quality Control System (see F-202.6)

(h) evidence of qualification of the welding and/or brazing procedures before they are used in fabrication (see HW-610, HB-1001, HB-1202, and F-202.7)

(i) evidence of qualification of all welders, welding operators, or brazers before the welders, welding operators, or brazers are used in production work, except that performance qualification by radiography, in conformance with Section IX, QW-304 for welders or QW-305 for welding operators, may be performed within the first 3 ft (1 m) of the first production weld (see HW-401, HW-610, HB-1001, HB-1202, and F-202.7)

(j) records of examination of parts prior to joining to make certain that they have been properly fitted for welding or brazing and that the surfaces to be joined have been cleaned and the alignment tolerances are maintained (see Subpart HW, Article 8; Subpart HB, Article 14; and F-202.7)

(k) records of examination of parts as fabrication progresses for material marking, that surface defects are not evident, and that dimensional geometrics are maintained (see HG-515.1; HF-210; Subpart HW, Article 8; HC-200; HC-502.5; and HC-502.6)

(l) subjecting the boiler to the required hydrostatic test (see HG-510)

(m) affixing the required stamping and/or nameplate to the boiler and making certain it is affixed to the proper boiler (see HG-530)

(n) preparing the required Manufacturer's Data Report and having it certified by the Inspector (see HG-520) for boilers and boiler parts constructed of wrought materials, and having it certified by a Certified Individual (see HC-502.12); if constructed of cast material (see HC-403)

(o) providing for retention of Manufacturer's Data Reports [see HG-520.1(b), HC-403, and HC-502.10]

(p) the Certificates of Conformance for cast iron boiler sections (see HC-520)

HG-515.3 Inspection by Authorized Inspector

(a) Except as otherwise permitted by Part HC, the inspection required by this Section shall be by an Inspector employed by an ASME Accredited Authorized Inspection Agency,[1] that is, the inspection organization of a state or municipality of the United States, a Canadian province, or of an insurance company authorized to write boiler and pressure vessel insurance. These Inspectors shall have been qualified by written examination under the rules of any state of the United States or province of Canada that has adopted the Code.

(b) The Inspector shall make all inspections specifically required of him plus such other inspections as he believes are necessary to enable him to certify that all boilers and boiler parts constructed of wrought material that he authorizes to be stamped with the Code Symbol have been designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of this Code Section. The required inspections and verifications shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

(1) checking to see that the Manufacturer has a valid Certificate of Authorization (see HG-540) and is working to the quality control system accepted by the Society (see HG-540.1)

(2) checking to see that the design calculations, drawings, specifications, procedures, records, and test results are available (see HG-300, HG-200, HG-500, HF-200, and HW-700)

[1] Whenever Authorized Inspection Agency or AIA is used in this Code, it shall mean an ASME Accredited Authorized Inspection Agency accredited by ASME in accordance with the latest edition of QAI-1.

(3) checking to see that material used in the construction of the boiler and parts complies with the requirements (see HG-200, HF-200, and HB-1100)

(4) checking to see that all welding procedures have been qualified (see HW-910)

(5) checking to see that all welders and welding operators have been qualified (see HW-911)

(6) checking to see that all brazing procedures have been qualified (see HB-1501)

(7) checking to see that all brazer and brazer operators have been qualified (see HB-1502)

(8) checking to see that the proper joint factor is used for brazed joints that can only be inspected from one side (blind joint) (see HB-1503)

(9) checking to see that material imperfections repaired by welding were acceptably repaired (see HW-830 and HB-1402)

(10) visual inspection of boiler parts to confirm that the material identification numbers have been properly transferred (see HF-210)

(11) witnessing of proof tests conducted to establish the maximum allowable working pressure of boilers (see HG-500)

(12) inspecting each boiler and water heater during construction and after completion (see HG-515.3)

(13) performing internal and external inspections and witnessing hydrostatic tests (see HG-510)

(14) verifying that stamping and/or nameplate is proper and that it has been stamped and/or attached to the proper boiler (see HG-530 through HG-533)

(15) signing the certificate of inspection on the Manufacturer's Data Report when the boiler or part is complete and in compliance with all the provisions of this Section (see HG-532.3, HG-533.6, and HG-520.2)

HG-515.4 Duty of Authorized Inspector

(a) Each boiler shall be inspected during construction and after completion and, at the option of the Authorized Inspector, at such other stages of the work as he may designate. For specific requirements, see the applicable parts of this Section. Each Manufacturer or assembler is required to arrange for the services of Authorized Inspectors (see HG-515.2) to perform such inspections on all of this work within the scope of this Section, whether performed in the shop or in the field.

(b) When multiple, duplicate boiler fabrication makes it impracticable for the Inspector to personally perform each of his required duties, the Manufacturer, in collaboration with the Inspector, shall prepare an inspection and quality control procedure setting forth in complete detail the method by which the requirements of this Section shall be maintained (see HG-515 for summaries of the responsibilities of the Manufacturer and the duties of the Inspector). This procedure shall be included in the Manufacturer's written Quality Control System (see HG-540). This procedure shall be submitted to, and shall have received the acceptance of, the inspection agency. It shall then be submitted by the inspection agency for written acceptance by the legal jurisdiction concerned and by an ASME Designee. The inspection procedure shall be used in the plant of the named Manufacturer by the inspection agency submitting it, and shall be carried out by an Inspector in the employ of that inspection agency. Any changes in this inspection and Quality Control Procedure that affect the requirements of this Section are subject to review and acceptance by the parties required for a joint review. The joint reviews required by HG-540 shall include an ASME Designee. The Data Report for a multiple duplicate boiler shall include under "Remarks," the statement "Constructed under the provisions of HG-515.4(b)."

HG-520 MASTER AND PARTIAL DATA REPORTS

HG-520.1 Manufacturer's Master Data Report. Each manufacturer of heating boilers of wrought materials to which the Code H Symbol is to be applied shall compile a Manufacturer's Data Report for each boiler he produces, except that an individual Manufacturer's Data Report may be used to include the serial numbers in uninterrupted sequence of identical boilers completed, inspected, and stamped in a continuous 8 hr period. Form H-2 or H-3 shall be used.

(a) The boiler Manufacturer shall have the responsibility of furnishing a copy of the completed Manufacturer's Data Report at the place of installation to the inspection agency, the purchaser, and the state, municipal, or provincial authority.

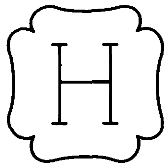
(b) The Manufacturer shall either keep a copy of the Manufacturer's Data Report on file for at least 5 years, or the boiler may be registered and the original Data Report filed with the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors, 1055 Crupper Avenue, Columbus, Ohio 43229

HG-520.2 Partial Data Reports

(a) Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports for those parts of a boiler requiring inspection under this Code, which are furnished by other than the shop of the manufacturer responsible for the completed boiler, shall be executed by the parts manufacturer and shall be forwarded in duplicate to the manufacturer of the finished boiler.

(b) Partial Data Reports (Form H-4) shall be completed for all parts that require inspection under this Code that are fabricated by a manufacturer other than the manufacturer of the completed boiler. These Partial Data Reports, together with his own inspection, shall be the final Authorized Inspector's authority to witness the application of the Code Symbol to the completed boiler.

FIG. HG-530.1 OFFICIAL SYMBOL FOR STAMP TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD



HG-520.3 Supplementary Sheet. Form H-6, Manufacturer's Data Report Supplementary Sheet, shall be used to record additional data where space was insufficient on a Data Report Form. This Manufacturer's Data Report Supplementary Sheet will be attached to the Manufacturer's Data Report Form where used. If Form H-6 is used in conjunction with Form H-5, the Authorized Inspector's certification is not applicable.

HG-530 STAMPING OF BOILERS

07 **HG-530.1 Stamping Requirements for Boilers Other Than Those Constructed Primarily of Cast Iron or Cast Aluminum (See HG-530.2)**

(a) All boilers to which the Code Symbol is to be applied shall be built according to the rules of this Section by a manufacturer who is in possession of a Code Symbol Stamp and a valid Certificate of Authorization. Each boiler shall be stamped with the Code Symbol shown in Fig. HG-530.1 and with the following data:

(1) the boiler manufacturer's name, preceded by the words "Certified by"

(2) maximum allowable working pressure

(3) safety or safety relief valve capacity (minimum), as determined according to HG-400.1(d) and HG-400.2(d)

(4) heating surface, as determined according to HG-403 (or power input for electric boilers)

(5) manufacturer's serial number

(6) year built

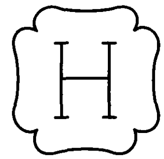
(7) maximum water temperature

NOTE: The year built may be incorporated into the serial number as a prefix consisting of the last two digits of the year.

(b) Items (1) through (7) listed in (a) above, with the markings arranged substantially as shown in Fig. HG-530.2 or Fig. HG-530.3, shall be stamped with letters at least $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) high [except as permitted in HG-530.1(d)] and in some conspicuous place on the boiler proper or on a nameplate at least $\frac{3}{64}$ in. (1.2 mm) thick permanently fastened to the boiler proper. The location of the stamping shall be as follows:

(1) Horizontal Tubular Flue Type Boilers: on the front head above the central rows of tubes or flues.

FIG. HG-530.2 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS 07
FORM OF STAMPING ON COMPLETED BOILERS OR THEIR NAMEPLATES
(Not Applicable for Boilers Constructed Primarily of Cast Iron)



Certified by

____
(Name of Manufacturer)
[1]MAWP, Steam ______
[1]MAWP, Water ______
[1]Maximum Water Temp. ______
[2]Heating surface ______ boiler
[3]Heating surface ______ water wall
[3]Heating surface ______ extended
[3,4]Ext HS generating cap ______
Minimum relief valve capacity ______
Manufacturer's serial no. __________
[5]Year built __________

GENERAL NOTE: Acceptable abbreviations to any of the stamp wording may be used.

NOTES:
(1) For steam only boilers, MAWP Water and Maximum Water Temperature markings are optional.
(2) Kilowatt power input for electric boilers.
(3) List each type of surface separately. May be omitted if type heating surface is not present.
(4) Generating capacity for extended heating surface [see HG-403(d)].
(5) May be omitted when year built is prefix to serial number (see HG-530.1).

(2) Locomotive Firebox, Compact, or Vertical Firetube Type Boilers: over or near the fire door or handhole or washout plug opening on the front end or side.

(3) Watertube Type Boilers: on a head of the top outlet drum. Waterwalls and headers shall carry identifying markings.

(4) Split-Section and Section Firebox Type Wrought Boilers: over or near the fire door or handhole or washout plug opening on the front end or side. Each section shall carry identifying markings.

(5) Scotch Type Boilers: on either side of the shell near the normal water level line adjacent to the front tubesheet.

(c) On any of the above type boilers where there is not sufficient space in the places designated and on other types and new designs of boilers, the nameplate shall be located in a conspicuous place.

(d) When there is insufficient space for the nameplate required above, smaller letter dimensions may be used, provided

(1) stamping shall be as required in HG-530.1(a) and (b) above, and

FIG. HG-530.3 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY

FORM OF STAMPING ON COMPLETED BOILERS OR THEIR NAMEPLATES

(Not Applicable for Boilers Constructed Primarily of Cast Iron)

H

Certified by

____
(Name of Manufacturer)

[1]MAWP, Water ______

[1]Maximum Water Temp. ______

[2]Heating surface ______ boiler

[3]Heating surface ______ water wall

[3]Heating surface ______ extended

[3,4]Ext HS generating cap ______

Minimum relief valve capacity ______

Manufacturer's serial no. ______

[5]Year built ______

GENERAL NOTE: Acceptable abbreviations to any of the stamp wording may be used.

NOTES:

(1) For steam only boilers, MAWP Water and Maximum Water Temperature markings are optional.

(2) Kilowatt power input for electric boilers.

(3) List each type of surface separately. May be omitted if type heating surface is not present.

(4) Generating capacity for extended heating surface [see HG-403(d)].

(5) May be omitted when year built is prefix to serial number (see HG-530.1).

FIG. HG-530.4 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS 07

FORM OF DATA CAST ON CAST IRON BOILER SECTIONS

H

Certified by

(1) (5)
Name of Manufacturer for

MAWP, Steam ______

MAWP, Water ______ (2)

(3)
(Pattern number)

(4)
(Casting date)

NOTE: (1) through (5) refer to HG-530.2(a)(1)–(a)(5); (5) is optional.

(2) character size shall be no smaller than $\frac{5}{32}$ in. (4 mm)

(e) The stamping or nameplate on the boiler proper shall not be covered with insulating or other material unless

(1) the required markings are duplicated and stamped directly on the boiler casing in some conspicuous place using letters and numerals at least $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) high

(2) an opening with a removable cover is provided in the jacket or other form of casing so that, when removed, the stamping or nameplate on the boiler proper can be viewed

(3) the required data are duplicated by stamping or marking with letters at least $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) high on a nonferrous nameplate at least 3 in. × 4 in. (75 mm × 100 mm) size and permanently attaching the nameplate to the casing in some conspicuous place by mechanical means or by an adhesive system meeting the requirements of Appendix 3

(f) The Code Symbol may be preapplied to a nameplate. The nameplate may be attached to the boiler after the final fabrication and examination sequence but before the hydrostatic test, provided the procedure for sequence of stamping is described in the manufacturer's accepted quality control system. The Code Symbol and manufacturer's serial number shall be stamped on nameplates but the other data may be stamped, etched, cast, or impressed thereon.

(g) The ASME Code Symbol Stamp(s) shall not be used by an organization to which it was not issued.

HG-530.2 Marking Requirements for Cast Iron or Cast Aluminum Boilers 07

(a) All boiler parts or sections to which the Code Symbol is to be applied shall be built according to the rules of this Section by a manufacturer[3] who is in possession of a Code Symbol Stamp and a valid Certificate of Authorization. Each boiler section, including end and intermediate cored sections, shall be cast with the Code Symbol shown in Fig. HG-530.1 and with the following data cast in letters or numerals at least $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) high:

(1) the boiler or parts manufacturer's[3] name or acceptable abbreviation, preceded by the words "Certified by:" (or "Cert. by" on cast boiler sections only where space for marking is limited; the abbreviation "Cert. by" shall not be used on nameplates)

(2) maximum allowable working pressure[4]

(3) pattern number

(4) casting date

(5) the shop assembler's[5] name or acceptable abbreviation (if different from manufacturer)[6]

Arrangement of data cast on sections shall be substantially as shown in Fig. HG-530.4 for cast iron steam or hot water heating boilers or Fig. HG-530.5 for cast iron or cast aluminum hot water heating boilers.

[3] The foundry that casts the boiler parts or sections and that may shop assemble.

[4] May be stamped.

[5] The shop that assembles sections into boilers and that is in possession of a Code Symbol Stamp and valid Certificate of Authorization.

[6] Optional.

FIG. HG-530.5 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY
FORM OF DATA CAST ON CAST IRON BOILER SECTIONS

H

Certified by

(1) Name of Manufacturer (5) for

MAWP, Water ______ (2)

(3)
(Pattern number)

(4)
(Casting date)

NOTE: (1) through (5) refer to HG-530.2(a)(1)–(a)(5); (5) is optional.

FIG. HG-530.7 BOILERS SUITABLE FOR WATER ONLY
FORM OF STAMPING ON COMPLETED CAST IRON BOILERS OR THEIR NAMEPLATES

H

Certified by

Name of Shop Assembler

MAWP, Water ______

Maximum Water Temp. ______

Minimum relief valve capacity ______

07 FIG. HG-530.6 STEAM AND WATER BOILERS
FORM OF STAMPING ON COMPLETED CAST IRON BOILERS OR THEIR NAMEPLATES

H

Certified by

Name of Shop Assembler

MAWP, Steam ______

MAWP, Water ______

Maximum Water Temp. ______

Minimum relief valve capacity ______

Other data may be cast on the sections. The marking "ASME" or "ASME standard" shall not be used.

(b) When the boiler size and number of sections have been decided, the completed boiler shall be marked with the Code Symbol shown in Fig. HG-530.1 and with the following data:

(1) the shop assembler's name preceded by the words "Certified by"

(2) maximum allowable working pressure

(3) safety or safety relief valve capacity (minimum), as determined according to HG-400.1(e) and HG-400.2(d)

(4) maximum water temperature

(c) The markings for the completed boiler shall be arranged substantially as shown in Fig. HG-530.6 or Fig. HG-530.7.

(d) Data for more than one size boiler in a model series may be listed on the nameplate. When different model numbers having the same number of sections and jacket length have different minimum safety or safety relief valve capacities, the highest value shall be listed. The following additional information shall be included for each size listed:

(1) boiler model number

(2) number of sections

(3) jacket length

(4) the statement: "To determine boiler size, count the number of sections or measure the jacket length"

(e) The provisions of (b) above shall be met utilizing one of the following methods:

(1) stamping the required markings on a nonferrous nameplate at least 3 in. × 4 in. (75 mm × 100 mm) in size and $\frac{3}{64}$ in. (1.2 mm) thick using letters and numerals at least $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) high and permanently attaching the nameplate to the boiler proper in some conspicuous place. The nameplate shall not be covered with insulating or other material except that when a jacket or other form of casing is applied to a boiler, an opening with a removable cover shall be provided for viewing the required stamping.

(2) stamping the required markings directly into the boiler casing in some conspicuous place using letters and numerals at least $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) high.

(3) stamping or marking the required data on a nonferrous or nonmetallic nameplate at least 3 in. × 4 in. (75 mm × 100 mm) in size using letters and numerals at least $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) high and permanently attaching the nameplate to the casing in some conspicuous place by mechanical means or by an adhesive system. The nameplate and the adhesive system shall meet the requirements of Appendix 3.

Other data may be stamped on the casing or the nameplate provided the required markings are distinct and separate from the other data. The marking "ASME" or "ASME standard" shall not be used.

(4) the Code Symbol may be preapplied to a nameplate.

07 *(5)* the nameplate may be attached to the casing of a cast iron or cast aluminum boiler by the Manufacturer or shop assembler at a plant other than that shown on his Certificate of Authorization provided the plant is owned by the Certificate Holder and the nameplate's control and use is addressed in his Quality Control Manual.

(6) the ASME Code Symbol stamp(s) shall not be used by an organization to which it was not issued.

HG-531 STAMPING OF PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

(a) Parts of boilers for which Partial Data Reports are required by HG-520.2 shall be marked with the following:

(1) the official Code Symbol shown in Fig. HG-530.1 above the word "Part"

(2) the part manufacturer's name

(3) the part manufacturer's serial number

(b) No part or accessory of a boiler may be marked with the Code Symbol shown in Fig. HG-530.1 unless so specified in the Code. The markings "ASME" or "ASME standard" shall not be used.

HG-532 STAMPING OF FIELD ASSEMBLED WROUGHT BOILERS

HG-532.1 Responsibility of Manufacturer of Boiler Unit. When a boiler manufactured of wrought material is furnished by one manufacturer and is not assembled and subjected to hydrostatic test prior to shipment, the manufacturer of the boiler unit shall compile a Manufacturer's Data Report Form H-2 or H-3 recording all items of the complete boiler unit.

HG-532.2 Execution of Manufacturer's Data Report. The Manufacturer's Data Report shall be properly executed by the manufacturer and the Authorized Inspector, who shall sign the certificate of shop inspection certifying that each enumerated item that has been inspected at the shop conforms to the requirements of the ASME Code. The manufacturer in signing each Data Report shall state under his signature the expiration date on the Certificate of Authorization to use the Symbol.

HG-532.3 Application of Stamping and Signing Data Sheets. Proper stamping as required by HG-530.2 shall be applied at the shop and the data sheets shall be signed by the same or different Inspectors who shall indicate the portions of the inspections made at the shop and in the field.

HG-533 INSPECTION AND STAMPING OF FIELD ASSEMBLED BOILER PRESSURE PARTS

HG-533.1 Authorized Assemblers and Welders. The assembly of any parts or subassemblies of the unit that requires welding shall be made by one possessing a heating boiler stamp. The welding of any parts or subassemblies during field assembly shall be done by persons who meet the requirements of HW-610.

HG-533.2 Execution of Data Report Sheet. When the assembly is made by anyone other than the manufacturer of the boiler unit, the Data Report sheet properly executed in accordance with HG-532 shall be forwarded to the assembler who shall be responsible for the proper handling of the Data Report and who shall fill in such items as are not filled in at the shop, and sign the Data Sheet as the "assembler" or "assembling organization" instead of "manufacturer." He shall also append, above his signature, the statement: "We certify that the field assembly of all parts conform with the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code."

HG-533.3 Field Inspection by Authorized Inspector. The field inspection shall be made by an Authorized Inspector (as defined in HG-515.3) and the Inspector shall make such inspections as he believes are needed to enable him to certify that the boiler has been constructed in accordance with the Code. Properly executed Manufacturer's Data Reports, together with the Inspector's own inspection, shall constitute his authority to sign the certificate of field inspection.

HG-533.4 Application of Assembler's Stamp. The Assembler's H Stamp, together with the assembler's name or an acceptable abbreviation, shall be applied in the field on the boiler near the stamping called for in HG-530.1, when the assembly is accepted by the Authorized Inspector.

HG-533.5 Application for H Symbol. Applicants for an H Symbol to be used only in the field assembly of heating boilers shall so state on the application form, and the Certificate of Authorization issued to such applicants shall show that the authorization to use the H Symbol is limited to the field assembly of welded boilers constructed to Section IV (see HG-540).

HG-533.6 Certificate of Field Inspection. The certificate of field inspection on the Data Report shall be executed by the Authorized Inspector. The assembler or assembling organization shall have the responsibility for forwarding and filing of Manufacturer's Data Reports as required by HG-520.1(a) and HG-520.1(b).

HG-533.7 Mechanical Field Assembly. For a boiler manufactured of wrought materials that has not been completed in the Manufacturer's shop, field assembly involving no welding does not need to be performed by a Company possessing a heating boiler stamp. However, when a boiler is not assembled by a stamp holder, the Manufacturer assuming responsibility for the completed boiler is responsible for providing for field inspection by an Authorized Inspector employed by the Manufacturer's Authorized Inspection Agency, and signature of the Certificate of Field Assembly Compliance by a representative of the Manufacturer, after the required hydrostatic test has been completed. Application of an assembler H stamp in accordance with HG-533.4 is not required.

HG-534 FIELD-ASSEMBLED CAST IRON BOILERS

HG-534.1 Hydrostatic Tests. Each individual section or boiler part shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test as required in HC-410 at the Manufacturer's plant prior to shipment.

HG-534.2 Marking. The marking on cast iron boilers shall meet the requirements of HG-530.2. The nameplate shall be attached to the casing by the Manufacturer or Shop Assembler.

HG-534.3 Assembly Instructions. The Manufacturer shall provide printed instructions for the installer to follow when mechanically assembling the boiler, including instructions for performing the hydrostatic test of the assembled boiler in HC-410.1 and HC-410.2.

HG-540 CODE SYMBOL STAMPS

HG-540.1 Authorization. A Certificate of Authorization to use the Code Symbols H, HLW, and/or HV will be granted by the Society pursuant to the provisions of the following paragraphs. Stamps for applying the Code Symbol shall be obtained from the Society.

HG-540.2 Application for Certificate of Authorization

(a) Any organization desiring a Certificate of Authorization shall apply to the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee of the Society, on forms issued by the Society,[7] specifying the Stamp desired and the scope of Code activities to be performed. When an organization intends to build Code items in plants in more than one geographical area, either separate applications for each plant or a single application listing the addresses of all such plants may be submitted. Each application shall identify the Authorized Inspection Agency providing Code inspection at each plant. A separate Certificate of Authorization will be prepared and a separate fee charged by the Society for each plant.

Each applicant must agree that each Certificate of Authorization and each Code Symbol Stamp are at all times the property of the Society, that they will be used according to the rules and regulations of this Section of the Code, and that they will be promptly returned to the Society upon demand, or when the applicant discontinues the Code activities covered by his Certificate, or when the Certificate of Authorization has expired and no new Certificate has been issued. The holder of a Code Symbol Stamp shall not allow any other organization to use it.

(b) Issuance of Authorization. Authorization to use Code Symbol Stamps may be granted or withheld by the Society in its absolute discretion. If authorization is granted, and the proper administrative fee paid, a Certificate of Authorization evidencing permission to use any such Symbol, expiring on the triennial anniversary date thereafter, will be forwarded to the applicant. Each such certificate will identify the Code Symbol to be used, and the type of shop and/or field operations for which authorization is granted (see Appendix K). The Certificate will be signed by the Chairman of the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee and the Director of Accreditation.

(c) Six months prior to the date of expiration of any such Certificate, the applicant must apply for a renewal of such authorization and the issuance of a new Certificate. The Society reserves the absolute right to cancel or refuse to renew such authorization, returning, pro rata, fees paid for the unexpired term.

The Certificate of Authorization for the use of the H, HLW, and/or HV Code Symbol Stamp is valid for 3 years; the H (cast iron) Certificate of Authorization for the H (cast iron) Code Symbol Stamp is valid for one year.

HG-540.3 Inspection Agreement. As a condition of obtaining and maintaining a Certificate of Authorization to use the H or HLW Code Symbol Stamps, the Manufacturer (except for cast iron heating boilers) must have in force at all times an inspection contract or agreement with an Authorized Inspection Agency as defined in HG-515.3 to provide inspection services. This inspection agreement is a written agreement between the Manufacturer and the Inspection Agency that specifies the terms and conditions under which the inspection services are to be furnished and that states the mutual responsibilities of the Manufacturer and the Authorized Inspectors. A Certificate Holder shall notify the Society whenever his agreement with an Authorized Inspection Agency is cancelled or changed to another Authorized Inspection Agency. Manufacturers of pressure relief valves are not required to have an inspection agreement with an Authorized Inspection Agency.

A Certificate of Authorization may be granted to a Manufacturer of safety valves to use the safety valve Symbol Stamp providing such stamp is applied only to safety valves that have been capacity certified in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

[7] The application forms and related information and instructions may be obtained by writing to: ASME, Secretary, Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016.

HG-540.4 Quality Control System. Any Manufacturer or Assembler holding or applying for a Certificate of Authorization to use the H, HLW, or HV Stamp shall have, and demonstrate, a quality control system to establish that all Code requirements, including material, design, fabrication, examination (by the Manufacturer), inspection of boilers, vessels, parts (by the Authorized Inspector), pressure testing, and certification will be met. The quality control system shall be in accordance with the requirements of Appendix F, except for Cast Iron Boiler Certificate Holders. It must be in accordance with the requirements of Article 5 of Part HC.

HG-540.5 Evaluation for Authorization and Reauthorization. Before issuance or triennial renewal of a Certificate of Authorization for use of the H or HLW Stamp, the Manufacturer's facilities and organization are subject to a joint review by his Inspection Agency and an ASME Designee who is selected by the concerned legal jurisdiction, except that for H (cast iron) the review shall be yearly by an ASME Designee selected by ASME. A written description or checklist of the quality control system that identifies what documents and what procedures the Manufacturer will use to produce a Code item shall be available for review.

The purpose of the review is to evaluate the applicant's quality control system and its implementation. The applicant shall demonstrate sufficient administrative and fabrication functions of the system to show that he has the knowledge and ability to produce the Code items covered by his quality control system. Fabrication functions may be demonstrated using current work, a mock-up, or a combination of the two.

A written report to the Society shall be made jointly by the ASME Designee and the Inspection Agency employed by the Manufacturer to do his Code inspection. This report is then reviewed by the Subcommittee on Boiler and Pressure Vessel Accreditation, which will either issue a Certificate of Authorization or notify the applicant of deficiencies revealed by the review. In such a case, the applicant will be given an opportunity to explain or correct these deficiencies.

Certificates of Authorization will be endorsed to indicate the scope of activity authorized. Authorization may include field operations if the review team determines that these operations are adequately described in the quality control manual, and this determination is accepted by the Society.

Before issuance or renewal of a Certificate of Authorization for use of the HV stamp, the valve Manufacturer's facilities and organization are subject to a review by an ASME Designee. A written description or checklist of the quality control system, which identifies the documents and procedures the Manufacturer will use to produce Code safety and safety relief valves, shall be available for review. The ASME Designee shall make a written report to the Society, where the Subcommittee on Boiler and Pressure Vessel Accreditation will act on it as described above.

Before issuance or renewal of a Certificate of Authorization for use of the H (cast iron) Stamp to produce cast iron boilers, each Manufacturer (the foundry who casts the boiler parts or sections and who may shop assemble) or Assember is subject to review by an ASME Designee. A written description or checklist of the quality control system in accordance with the requirements of Part HC shall be available for review. The ASME Designee shall make a written report to the Society, where the Subcommittee on Boiler and Pressure Vessel Accreditation will act on it as described above.

HG-540.6 Authorization of Changes. The Manufacturer may at any time make changes in the quality control system concerning the methods of achieving results, subject to acceptance by the Authorized Inspector. For Manufacturers of multiple duplicate pressure vessels,[8] acceptance of these changes by the jurisdiction (if applicable) and an ASME Designee is also required. For Manufacturers of HV stamped safety and safety relief valves, such acceptance shall be by a representative from an ASME-designated organization.

For those areas where there is no jurisdiction, that function shall be performed by an ASME Designee selected by ASME. Where a jurisdiction does not review a Manufacturer's facility, that function shall be performed by an ASME Designee who is selected by the concerned legal jurisdiction. Where the jurisdiction is the Manufacturer's Inspection Agency, the joint review and joint report shall be made by the jurisdiction and an ASME Designee.

HG-540.7 Code Construction Before Receipt of Certificate of Authorization. When used to demonstrate his quality control system, a Manufacturer may start fabricating Code items before receipt of a Certificate of Authorization to use a Code Symbol Stamp under the following conditions.

(a) The fabrication is done with the participation of the Authorized Inspector and is subject to his acceptance.

(b) The activity is in conformance with the applicant's quality control system.

(c) The item is stamped with the appropriate Code Symbol and certified once the applicant receives his Certificate of Authorization from the Society.

HG-540.8 Regulations on Use of Code Symbol Stamps. The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee may at any time make such regulations concerning the issuance and use of Code Symbol Stamps as it deems appropriate, and all such regulations shall become binding upon the holders of any valid Certificates of Authorization.

[8] See HG-515.4 for additional requirements applicable to multiple, duplicate pressure vessel fabrication.

ARTICLE 6
INSTRUMENTS, FITTINGS, AND CONTROLS

HG-600 GENERAL

All instruments, fittings, and controls described in this Article shall be installed prior to operation.

HG-601 FOR STEAM HEATING BOILERS

HG-602 STEAM GAGES

(a) Each steam boiler shall have a steam gage or a compound steam gage connected to its steam space or to its water column or to its steam connection. The gage or piping to the gage shall contain a siphon or equivalent device that will develop and maintain a water seal that will prevent steam from entering the gage tube. The piping shall be so arranged that the gage cannot be shut off from the boiler except by a cock placed in the pipe at the gage and provided with a tee- or lever-handle arranged to be parallel to the pipe in which it is located when the cock is open. The gage connection boiler tapping, external siphon, or piping to the boiler shall not be less than NPS $\frac{1}{4}$ (DN 8). Where steel or wrought iron pipe or tubing is used, the boiler connection and external siphon shall be not less than NPS $\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 15). Ferrous and nonferrous tubing having inside diameters at least equal to that of standard pipe sizes listed above may be substituted for pipe.

(b) The scale on the dial of a steam boiler gage shall be graduated to not less than 30 psi (200 kPa) nor more than 60 psi (414 kPa). The travel of the pointer from 0 psi to 30 psi (0 kPa to 200 kPa) pressure shall be at least 3 in. (75 mm).

HG-603 WATER GAGE GLASSES

(a) Each steam boiler shall have one or more water gage glasses attached to the water column or boiler by means of valved fittings not less than NPS $\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 15), with the lower fitting provided with a drain valve of a type having an unrestricted drain opening not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) in diameter to facilitate cleaning. Gage glass replacement shall be possible with the boiler under pressure. Water glass fittings may be attached directly to a boiler.

Boilers having an internal vertical height of less than 10 in. (250 mm) may be equipped with a water level indicator of the Glass Bull's-Eye type provided the indicator is of sufficient size to show the water at both normal operating and low-water cutoff levels.

(b) The lowest visible part of the water gage glass shall be at least 1 in. (25 mm) above the lowest permissible water level recommended by the boiler Manufacturer. With the boiler operating at this lowest permissible water level, there shall be no danger of overheating any part of the boiler.

Each boiler shall be provided at the time of the manufacture with a permanent marker indicating the lowest permissible water level. The marker shall be stamped, etched, or cast in metal; or it shall be a metallic plate attached by rivets, screws, or welding; or it shall consist of material with documented tests showing its suitability as a permanent marking for the application. This marker shall be visible at all times. Where the boiler is shipped with a jacket, this marker may be located on the jacket.

NOTE: Transparent material other than glass may be used for the water gage provided that the material will remain transparent and has proved suitable for the pressure, temperature, and corrosive conditions expected in service.

(c) In electric boilers of the submerged electrode type, the water gage glass shall be so located to indicate the water levels both at startup and under maximum steam load conditions as established by the manufacturer.

(d) In electric boilers of the resistance element type, the lowest visible part of the water gage shall be located at least 1 in. (25 mm) above the lowest permissible water level specified by the Manufacturer. Each electric boiler of this type shall also be equipped with an automatic low-water cutoff on each boiler pressure vessel so located as to automatically cut off the power supply to the heating elements before the surface of the water falls below the visible part of the glass.

(e) Tubular water glasses on electric boilers having a normal water content not exceeding 100 gal (300 l) shall be equipped with a protective shield.

(f) A water level indicator using an indirect sensing method may be used in lieu of an operating water gauge glass; however, a water gauge glass must be installed and operable but may be shut off by valving. The water level

indicator must be attached to a water column or directly to the boiler by means of valved fittings not less than NPS $\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 15). The device shall be provided with a drain valve of a type having an unrestricted drain opening not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) in diameter to facilitate cleaning. Service and replacement of internal parts and/or housing shall be possible with the boiler under pressure.

HG-604 WATER COLUMN AND WATER LEVEL CONTROL PIPES

(a) The minimum size of ferrous or nonferrous pipes connecting a water column to a steam boiler shall be NPS 1 (DN 25). No outlet connections, except for damper regulator, feedwater regulator, steam gages, or apparatus that does not permit the escape of any steam or water except for manually operated blowdowns, shall be attached to a water column or the piping connecting a water column to a boiler (see HG-705 for introduction of feedwater into a boiler). If the water column, gage glass, low-water fuel cutoff, or other water level control device is connected to the boiler by pipe and fittings, no shutoff valves of any type shall be placed in such pipe, and a cross or equivalent fitting to which a drain valve and piping may be attached shall be placed in the water piping connection at every right angle turn to facilitate cleaning. The water column drain pipe and valve shall be not less than NPS $\frac{3}{4}$ (DN 20).

(b) The steam connections to the water column of a horizontal firetube wrought boiler shall be taken from the top of the shell or the upper part of the head, and the water connection shall be taken from a point not above the center line of the shell. For a cast iron boiler, the steam connection to the water column shall be taken from the top of an end section or the top of the steam header, and the water connection shall be made on an end section not less than 6 in. (150 mm) below the bottom connection to the water gage glass.

HG-605 PRESSURE CONTROL

Each automatically fired steam boiler shall be protected from overpressure by two pressure-operated controls.

(a) Each individual automatically fired steam boiler shall have a safety limit control that will cut off the fuel supply to prevent steam pressure from exceeding the 15 psi (100 kPa) maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler. Each control shall be constructed to prevent a pressure setting above 15 psi (100 kPa).

(b) Each individual steam boiler shall have a control that will cut off the fuel supply when the pressure reaches an operating limit, which shall be less than the maximum allowable pressure.

(c) Shutoff valves of any type shall not be placed in the steam pressure connection between the boiler and the controls described in (a) and (b) above. These controls shall be protected with a siphon or equivalent means of maintaining a water seal that will prevent steam from entering the control. The control connection boiler tapping, external siphon, or piping to the boiler shall not be less than NPS $\frac{1}{4}$ (DN 8), but where steel or wrought iron pipe or tubing is used, they shall not be less than NPS $\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 15). The minimum size of an external siphon shall be NPS $\frac{1}{4}$ (DN 8) or $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) O.D. nonferrous tubing.

HG-606 AUTOMATIC LOW-WATER FUEL CUTOFF AND/OR WATER FEEDING DEVICE

(a) Each automatically fired steam or vapor-system boiler shall have an automatic low-water fuel cutoff so located as to automatically cut off the fuel supply before the surface of the water falls below the lowest visible part of the water gage glass. If a water feeding device is installed, it shall be so constructed that the water inlet valve cannot feed water into the boiler through the float chamber and so located as to supply requisite feedwater.

(b) Such a fuel cutoff or water feeding device may be attached directly to a boiler. A fuel cutoff or water feeding device may also be installed in the tapped openings available for attaching a water glass direct to a boiler, provided the connections are made to the boiler with nonferrous tees or Y's not less than NPS $\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 15) between the boiler and the water glass so that the water glass is attached directly and as close as possible to the boiler; the run of the tee or Y shall take the water glass fittings, and the side outlet or branch of the tee or Y shall take the fuel cutoff or water feeding device. The ends of all nipples shall be reamed to full-size diameter.

(c) Fuel cutoffs and water feeding devices embodying a separate chamber shall have a vertical drain pipe and a blowoff valve not less than NPS $\frac{3}{4}$ (DN 20), located at the lowest point in the water equalizing pipe connections so that the chamber and the equalizing pipe can be flushed and the device tested.

HG-607 MODULAR STEAM HEATING BOILERS

(a) Each module of a modular steam heating boiler shall be equipped with

(1) steam gage, see HG-602

(2) water gage glass, see HG-603

(3) a pressure control that will cut off the fuel supply when the pressure reaches an operating limit, which shall be less than the maximum allowable pressure

(4) low water cutoff, see HG-606

(b) The assembled modular steam boiler shall also be equipped with a safety limit control that will cut off the

fuel supply to prevent steam pressure from exceeding the 15 psi (100 kPa) maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler. The control shall be constructed to prevent a pressure setting above 15 psi (100 kPa).

HG-610 FOR HOT WATER HEATING OR HOT WATER SUPPLY BOILERS

HG-611 PRESSURE OR ALTITUDE GAGES

(a) Each hot water heating or hot water supply boiler shall have a pressure or altitude gage connected to it or to its flow connection in such a manner that it cannot be shut off from the boiler except by a cock with tee or lever handle, placed on the pipe near the gage. The handle of the cock shall be parallel to the pipe in which it is located when the cock is open.

(b) The scale on the dial of the pressure or altitude gage shall be graduated approximately to not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ nor more than $3\frac{1}{2}$ times the pressure at which the safety relief valve is set.

(c) Piping or tubing for pressure- or altitude-gage connections shall be of nonferrous metal when smaller than NPS 1 (DN 25).

HG-612 THERMOMETERS

Each hot water heating or hot water supply boiler shall have a thermometer so located and connected that it shall be easily readable. The thermometer shall be so located that it shall at all times indicate the temperature of the water in the boiler at or near the outlet.

HG-613 TEMPERATURE CONTROL

Each automatically fired hot water heating or hot water supply boiler shall be protected from over-temperature by two temperature-operated controls.

(a) Each individual automatically fired hot water heating or hot water supply boiler shall have a high temperature limit control that will cut off the fuel supply to prevent water temperature from exceeding its marked maximum water temperature at the boiler outlet. This control shall be constructed to prevent a temperature setting above the maximum.

(b) Each individual hot water heating or hot water supply boiler shall have a control that will cut off the fuel supply when the system water temperature reaches a preset operating temperature, which shall be less than the maximum water temperature.

HG-614 LOW-WATER FUEL CUTOFF

(a) Each automatically fired hot water boiler with heat input greater than 400,000 Btu/hr (117 kW) shall have an automatic low-water fuel cutoff that has been designed for hot water service, and it shall be so located as to automatically cut off the fuel supply when the surface of the water falls to the level established in (b) below (see Fig. HG-703.2).

(b) As there is no normal waterline to be maintained in a hot water boiler, any location of the low-water fuel cutoff above the lowest safe permissible water level established by the boiler manufacturer is satisfactory.

(c) A coil-type boiler or a watertube boiler with heat input greater than 400,000 Btu/hr (117 kW) requiring forced circulation to prevent overheating of the coils or tubes shall have a flow-sensing device installed in lieu of the low-water fuel cutoff required in (a) above to automatically cut off the fuel supply when the circulating flow is interrupted.

(d) A means shall be provided for testing the operation of the external low-water fuel cutoff without resorting to draining the entire system. Such means shall not render the device inoperable except as described as follows. If the means temporarily isolates the device from the boiler during this testing, it shall automatically return to its normal position. The connection may be so arranged that the device cannot be shut off from the boiler except by a cock placed at the device and provided with a tee or lever-handle arranged to be parallel to the pipe in which it is located when the cock is open.

HG-615 MODULAR HOT WATER HEATING BOILERS

(a) Each module of a modular hot water heating boiler shall be equipped with

(1) pressure/altitude gage, see HG-611

(2) thermometer, see HG-612

(3) temperature control that will cut off the fuel supply when the temperature reaches an operating limit, which shall be less than the maximum allowable temperature

(b) The assembled modular hot water heating boiler shall also be equipped with

(1) a safety limit control that will cut off the fuel supply to prevent the water temperature from exceeding the maximum allowable temperature at the boiler outlet. The control shall be constructed to prevent a temperature setting above the maximum. This control shall be located within 3 ft. (1.0 m) of the fitting connecting the last module to the heating supply piping.

(2) low water fuel cutoff, see HG-614.

HG-620 FOR ALL BOILERS

HG-621 INSTRUMENTS, FITTINGS, AND CONTROLS MOUNTED INSIDE BOILER JACKETS

Any or all instruments, fittings, and controls required by these rules may be installed inside of boiler jackets provided the water gage on a steam boiler is accessible without the use of tools and provided the water gage and pressure gage on a steam boiler or the thermometer and pressure gage on a water boiler are visible through an opening or openings at all times.

HG-630 ELECTRIC WIRING

HG-631 ELECTRICAL CODE COMPLIANCE

All field wiring for controls, heat generating apparatus, and other appurtenances necessary for the operation of the boiler or boilers should be installed in accordance with the provisions of the National Electric Code and/or should comply with the applicable local electrical codes. All boilers supplied with factory mounted and wired controls, heat generating apparatus, and other appurtenances necessary for the operation of the boilers should be installed in accordance with the provisions of the nationally recognized standards such as listed in footnote 2 of HG-640.

HG-632 TYPE CIRCUITRY TO BE USED

Whether field or factory wired, the control circuitry shall be positively grounded and shall operate at 150 V or less. One of the two following systems may be employed to provide the control circuit.

(a) Two-Wire Nominal 120 V System With Separate Equipment Ground Conductor

(1) This system shall consist of the line, neutral, and equipment ground conductors. The control panel frame and associated control circuitry metallic enclosures shall be electrically continuous and be bonded to the equipment ground conductor.

(2) The equipment ground conductor and the neutral conductor shall be bonded together at their origin in the electrical system as required by the NEC.[1]

(3) The line side of the control circuit shall be provided with a time delay fuse sized as small as practicable.

(b) Two-Wire Nominal 120 V System Obtained By Using an Isolation Transformer

(1) The two-wire control circuit shall be obtained from the secondary side of an isolation transformer. One wire from the secondary of this transformer shall be electrically continuous and shall be bonded to a convenient cold water pipe. All metallic enclosures of control components shall be securely bonded to this ground control circuit wire. The primary side of the isolation transformer will normally be a two-wire source with a potential of 230 V or 208 V or 440 V.

(2) Both sides of the two-wire primary circuit shall be fused. The hot leg on the load side of the isolation transformer shall be fused as small as practicable and in no case fused above the rating of the isolation transformer.

HG-633 LIMIT CONTROLS

Limit controls shall be wired on the hot or line side of the control circuit.

HG-634 SHUTDOWN SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A manually operated remote heating plant shutdown switch or circuit breaker should be located just outside the boiler room door and marked for easy identification. Consideration should also be given to the type and location of the switch to safeguard against tampering. If the boiler room door is on the building exterior the switch should be located just inside the door. If there is more than one door to the boiler room, there should be a switch located at each door.

(a) For atmospheric-gas burners, and oil burners where a fan is on a common shaft with the oil pump, the complete burner and controls should be shut off.

(b) For power burners with detached auxiliaries, only the fuel input supply to the firebox need be shut off.

HG-640 CONTROLS AND HEAT GENERATING APPARATUS

(a) Oil and gas-fired and electrically heated boilers should be equipped with suitable primary (flame safeguard) safety controls, safety limit switches, and burners or electric elements as required by a nationally recognized standard.[2]

(b) The symbol of the certifying organization[3] that has investigated such equipment as having complied with a nationally recognized standard shall be affixed to the equipment and shall be considered as evidence that the unit was manufactured in accordance with that standard.

---

[1] See Appendix H.

[2] Examples of these nationally recognized standards are:
American National Standard/CSA Standard Z21.13/CSA 4.9 for Gas-Fired Low Pressure Steam and Hot Water Boilers.
American National Standard/CSA Standard Z21.17/CSA 2.7 for Domestic Gas Conversion Burners.
Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 296, Standards for Safety, Oil Burners.
Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 726, Standards for Safety, Oil Fired Boiler Assemblies.
Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 795, Standards for Safety, Commercial–Industrial Gas-Heating Equipment.
Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 834, Electric Heating, Water Supply and Power Boilers.

[3] A certifying organization is one that provides uniform testing, examination, and listing procedures under established, nationally recognized standards and that is acceptable to the authorities having jurisdiction.

ARTICLE 7
INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

HG-700 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS, ALL BOILERS

HG-701 MOUNTING SAFETY AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

HG-701.1 Permissible Mounting. Safety valves and safety relief valves shall be located in the top or side[1] of the boiler. They shall be connected directly to a tapped or flanged opening in the boiler, to a fitting connected to the boiler by a short nipple, to a Y-base, or to a valveless header connecting steam or water outlets on the same boiler. Coil or header type boilers shall have the safety valve or safety relief valve located on the steam or hot water outlet end. Safety valves and safety relief valves shall be installed with their spindles vertical. The opening or connection between the boiler and any safety valve or safety relief valve shall have at least the area of the valve inlet.

HG-701.2 Requirements for Common Connections for Two or More Valves

(a) When a boiler is fitted with two or more safety valves on one connection, this connection shall have a cross-sectional area not less than the combined areas of inlet connections of all the safety valves with which it connects.

(b) When a Y-base is used, the inlet area shall be not less than the combined outlet areas. When the size of the boiler requires a safety valve or safety relief valve larger than 4½ in. (115 mm) in diameter, two or more valves having the required combined capacity shall be used. When two or more valves are used on a boiler, they may be single, directly attached, or mounted on a Y-base.

HG-701.3 Threaded Connections. A threaded connection may be used for attaching a valve.

HG-701.4 Prohibited Mountings. Safety and safety relief valves shall not be connected to an internal pipe in the boiler.

HG-701.5 Use of Shutoff Valves Prohibited. No shutoff of any description shall be placed between the safety or safety relief valve and the boiler, or on discharge pipes between such valves and the atmosphere.

HG-701.6 Safety and Safety Relief Valve Discharge Piping

(a) A discharge pipe shall be used. Its internal cross-sectional area shall be not less than the full area of the valve outlet or of the total of the valve outlets discharging thereinto and shall be as short and straight as possible and so arranged as to avoid undue stress on the valve or valves. A union may be installed in the discharge piping close to the valve outlet. When an elbow is placed on a safety or safety relief valve discharge pipe, it shall be located close to the valve outlet downstream of the union.

(b) The discharge from safety or safety relief valves shall be so arranged that there will be no danger of scalding attendants. The safety or safety relief valve discharge shall be piped away from the boiler to the point of discharge, and there shall be provisions made for properly draining the piping. The size and arrangement of discharge piping shall be independent of other discharge piping and shall be such that any pressure that may exist or develop will not reduce the relieving capacity of the relieving devices below that required to protect the boiler.

HG-701.7 Temperature and Pressure Safety Relief Valves. Hot water heating or supply boilers limited to a water temperature of 210°F (99°C) may have one or more officially rated temperature and pressure safety relief valves installed. The requirements of HG-701.1 through HG-701.6 shall be met, except as follows:

(a) A Y-type fitting shall not be used.

(b) If additional valves are used they shall be temperature and pressure safety relief valves.

(c) When the temperature and pressure safety relief valve is mounted directly on the boiler with no more than 4 in. (100 mm) maximum interconnecting piping, the valve may be installed in the horizontal position with the outlet pointed down.

HG-703 PIPING [2]

HG-703.1 Provisions for Expansion and Contraction. Provisions shall be made for the expansion and contraction of steam and hot water mains connected to boilers

[1] The top or side of the boiler shall mean the highest practicable part of the boiler proper but in no case shall the safety valve be located below the normal operating level and in no case shall the safety relief valve be located below the lowest permissible water level.

[2] Guidance for the design of piping systems may be found in ASME B31.9, Building Services Piping.

by providing substantial anchorage at suitable points and by providing swing joints when boilers are installed in batteries, so there will be no undue strain transmitted to the boilers. See Figs. HG-703.1(a), HG-703.1(b), and HG-703.2 for typical schematic arrangements of piping incorporating strain absorbing joints for steam and hot water heating boilers.

HG-703.2 Return Pipe Connections

(a) The return pipe connections of each boiler supplying a gravity return steam heating system shall be so arranged as to form a loop substantially as shown in Fig. HG-703.1(b) so that the water in each boiler cannot be forced out below the safe water level.

(b) For hand-fired boilers with a normal grate line, the recommended pipe sizes detailed as "A" in Fig. HG-703.1 are NPS 1½ (DN 40) for 4 ft^2 (0.37 m^2) or less firebox area at the normal grate line, NPS 2½ (DN 65) for areas more than 4 ft^2 (0.37 m^2) up to 14.9 ft^2 (1.4 m^2), and NPS 4 (DN 100) for 15 ft^2 (1.4 m^2) or more.

(c) For automatically fired boilers that do not have a normal grate line, the recommended pipe sizes detailed as "A" in Fig. HG-703.1 are NPS 1½ (DN 40) for boilers with minimum safety valve relieving capacity 250 lb/hr (113 kg/hr) or less, NPS 2½ (DN 65) for boilers with minimum safety valve relieving capacity from 251 lb/hr (114 kg/hr) to 2,000 lb/hr (900 kg/hr), inclusive, and NPS 4 (DN 100) for boilers with more than 2,000 lb/hr (900 kg/hr) minimum safety valve relieving capacity.

(d) Provision shall be made for cleaning the interior of the return piping at or close to the boiler. Washout openings may be used for return pipe connections and the washout plug placed in a tee or a cross so that the plug is directly opposite and as close as possible to the opening in the boiler.

HG-705 FEEDWATER AND MAKEUP WATER CONNECTIONS

(a) Steam Boilers. Feedwater or water treatment shall be introduced into a boiler through the return piping system. Alternatively, feedwater or water treatment may be introduced through an independent connection. The water flow from the independent connection shall not discharge directly against parts of the boiler exposed to direct radiant heat from the fire. Feedwater or water treatment shall not be introduced through openings or connections provided for inspection or cleaning, safety valve, water column, water gage glass, or pressure gage. The feedwater pipe shall be provided with a check valve or a backflow preventer containing a check valve[3] near the boiler and a stop valve or cock between the check valve and the boiler or between the check valve and the return pipe system.

(b) Hot Water Boilers. Makeup water may be introduced into a boiler through the piping system or through an independent connection. The water flow from the independent connection shall not discharge directly against parts of the boiler exposed to direct radiant heat from the fire. Makeup water shall not be introduced through openings or connections provided exclusively for inspection or cleaning, safety relief valve, pressure gage, or temperature gage. The makeup water pipe shall be provided with a check valve or a backflow preventer containing a check valve[3] near the boiler and a stop valve or cock between the check valve and the boiler or between the check valve and the piping system.

HG-707 OIL HEATERS

(a) A heater for oil or other liquid harmful to boiler operation shall not be installed directly in the steam or water space within a boiler.

(b) Where an external type heater for such service is used, means shall be provided to prevent the introduction into the boiler of oil or other liquid harmful to boiler operation.

HG-708 STORAGE TANKS FOR HOT WATER SUPPLY SYSTEMS

If a system is to utilize a storage tank that exceeds the capacity exception of HLW-101.2(c), the tank shall be constructed in accordance with the rules of Part HLW; Section VIII, Division 1; or Section X. For tanks constructed to Section X, the maximum allowable temperature marked on the tank shall equal or exceed the maximum water temperature marked on the boiler.

HG-709 PROVISIONS FOR THERMAL EXPANSION IN HOT WATER SYSTEMS

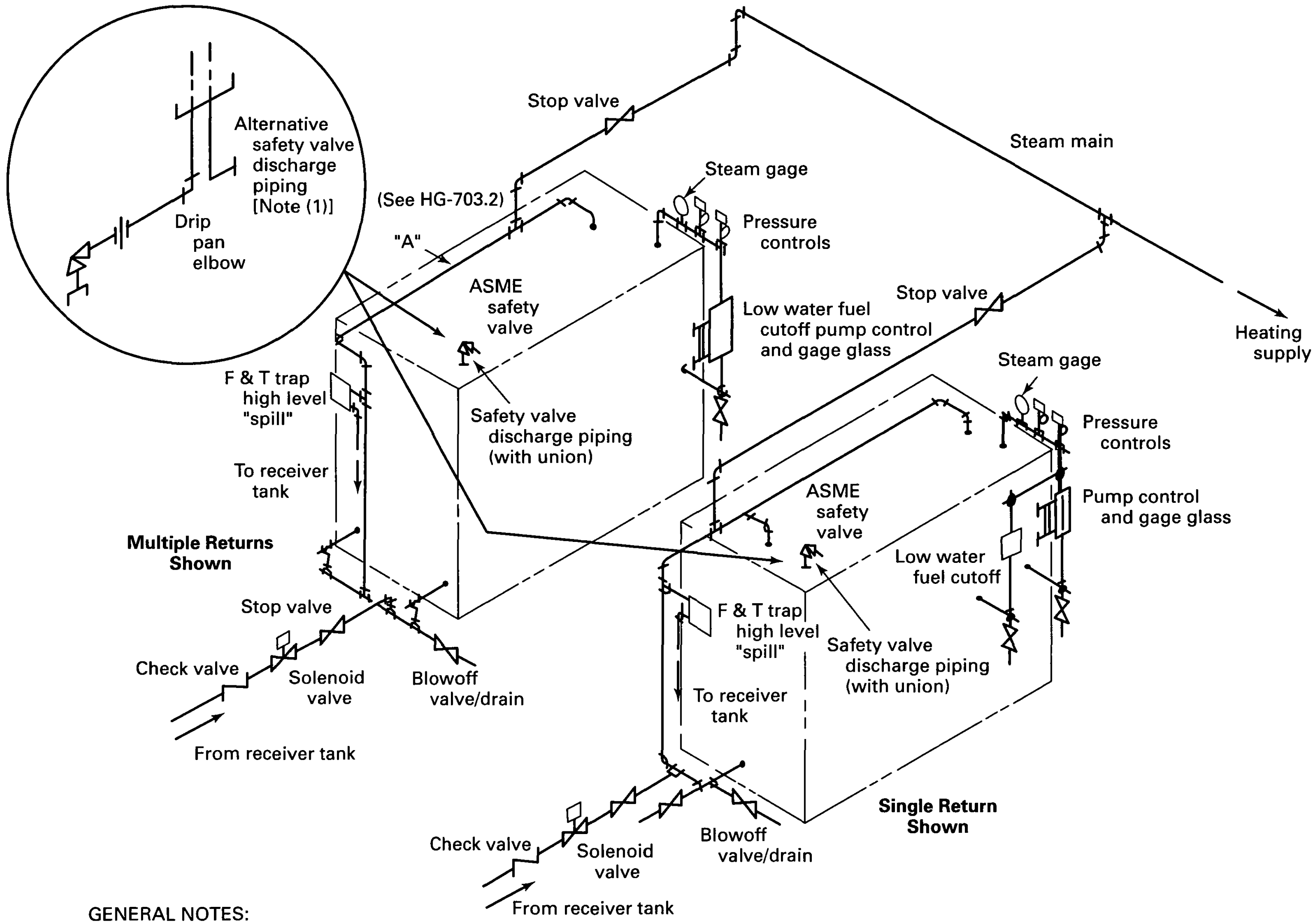
All hot water heating systems incorporating hot water tanks or fluid relief columns shall be so installed as to prevent freezing under normal operating conditions.

HG-709.1 Heating Systems With Open Expansion Tank. An indoor overflow from the upper portion of the expansion tank shall be provided in addition to an open vent, the indoor overflow to be carried within the building to a suitable plumbing fixture or the basement.

HG-709.2 Closed Heating Systems. An expansion tank shall be installed that will be consistent with the volume and capacity of the system. If the system is

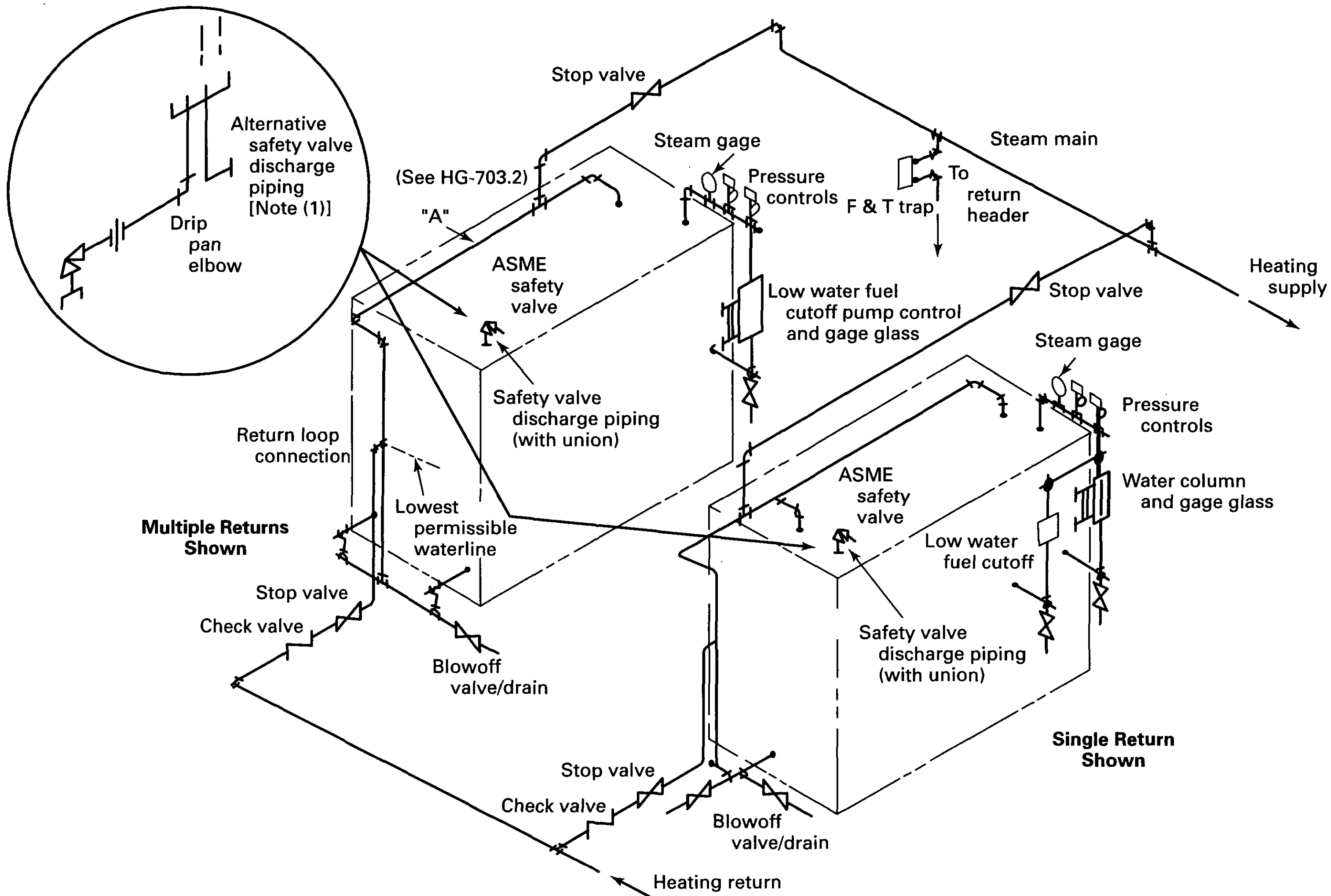
[3] Plumbing codes may require the installation of a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer on a boiler when the makeup water source is from a potable water supply.

FIG. HG-703.1(a) STEAM BOILERS IN BATTERY — PUMPED RETURN — ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION



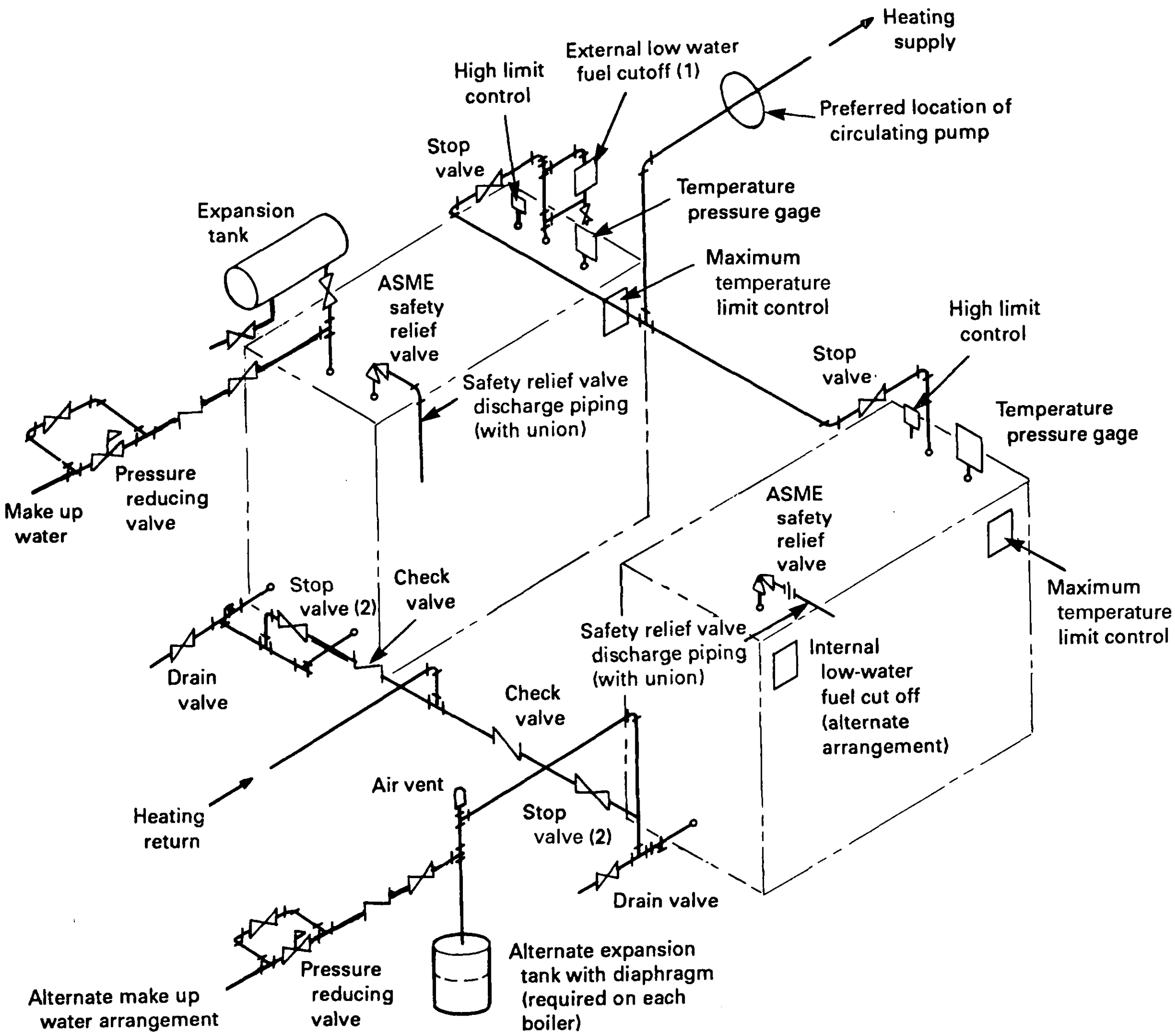
GENERAL NOTES:
(a) Return connections shown for a multiple boiler installation may not always insure that the system will operate properly. In order to maintain proper water levels in multiple boiler installations, it may be necessary to install supplementary controls or suitable devices.
(b) Plumbing codes may require the installation of a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer on a boiler when the makeup water source is from a potable water supply.
NOTE:
(1) Recommended for 1 in. (DN 25) and larger safety valve discharge.

FIG. HG-703.1(b) STEAM BOILERS IN BATTERY — GRAVITY RETURN — ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION



GENERAL NOTES:
(a) Return connections shown for a multiple boiler installation may not always insure that the system will operate properly. In order to maintain proper water levels in multiple boiler installations, it may be necessary to install supplementary controls or suitable devices.
(b) Plumbing codes may require the installation of a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer on a boiler when the makeup water source is from a potable water supply.
NOTE:
(1) Recommended for 1 in. (DN 25) and larger safety valve discharge.

FIG. HG-703.2 HOT WATER BOILERS IN BATTERY — ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION



GENERAL NOTE: Plumbing codes may require the installation of a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer on a boiler when the makeup water source is from a potable water supply.

NOTES:

(1) Recommended control. See HG-614. Acceptable shutoff valves or cocks in the connecting piping may be installed for convenience of control testing and/or service.

(2) The common return header stop valves may be located on either side of the check valves.

designed for a working pressure of 30 psi (200 kPa) or less, the tank shall be suitably designed for a minimum hydrostatic test pressure of 75 psi (520 kPa). Expansion tanks for systems designed to operate above 30 psi (200 kPa) shall be constructed in accordance with Section VIII, Division 1. Alternatively, a tank built to Section X requirements may be used if the pressure and temperature ratings of the tank are equal to or greater than the pressure and temperature ratings of the system. Provisions shall be made for draining the tank without emptying the system, except for prepressurized tanks.

The minimum capacity of the closed type expansion tank may be determined from Table HG-709.2 or from the following formula where the necessary information is available:

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$V_t = [(0.00041T - 0.0466)V_s]/[(P_a/P_f) - (P_a/P_o)]$$

(SI Units)

$$V_t = [(0.18155T - 8.236)V_s]/[(P_a/P_f) - (P_a/P_o)]$$

where

TABLE HG-709.2
EXPANSION TANK CAPACITIES
FOR FORCED HOT WATER SYSTEMS
[Based on average operating water temperature 195°F (90°C), fill pressure 12 psig (83 kPa), and maximum operating pressure 30 psig (200 kPa)]

System Volume, gal (m^3)	Tank Capacities, gal (m^3) Prepressurized Diaphragm Type	Nonpressurized Type
100 (0.38)	9 (0.034)	15 (0.057)
200 (0.76)	17 (0.064)	30 (0.114)
300 (1.14)	25 (0.095)	45 (0.170)
400 (1.51)	33 (0.125)	60 (0.227)
500 (1.89)	42 (0.159)	75 (0.284)
1,000 (3.79)	83 (0.314)	150(0.568)
2,000 (7.57)	165(0.625)	300(1.136)

GENERAL NOTE: System volume includes volume of water in boiler, radiation, and piping, not including the expansion tank. Expansion tank capacities are based on an acceptance factor of 0.4027 for prepressurized types and 0.222 for nonprepressurized types. A procedure for estimating system volume and determining expansion tank sizes for other design conditions may be found in Chapter 12 of the 1996 HVAC Systems and Equipment Volume of the ASHRAE Handbook.

P_a = atmospheric pressure
P_f = fill pressure
P_o = maximum operating pressure
T = average operating temperature
V_s = volume of system, not including tanks
V_t = minimum volume of tanks

HG-709.3 Hot Water Supply Systems. If a system is equipped with a check valve or pressure reducing valve in the cold water inlet line, consideration should be given to the installation of an airtight expansion tank or other suitable air cushion. Otherwise, due to the thermal expansion of the water, the safety relief valve may lift periodically. If an expansion tank is provided, it shall be constructed in accordance with Section VIII, Division 1 or Section X. Except for prepressurized tanks, which should be installed on the cold water side, provisions shall be made for draining the tank without emptying the system. See Fig. HLW-809.1 for a typical acceptable installation.

HG-710 STOP VALVES

HG-710.1 For Single Steam Boilers. When a stop valve is used in the supply pipe connection of a single steam boiler, there shall be one used in the return pipe connection.

HG-710.2 For Single Hot Water Heating Boilers

(a) Stop valves shall be located at an accessible point in the supply and return pipe connections as near the boiler nozzle as is convenient and practicable, of a single hot water heating boiler installation to permit draining the boiler without emptying the system.

(b) When the boiler is located above the system and can be drained without draining the system, stop valves may be eliminated.

HG-710.3 For Multiple Boiler Installations. A stop valve shall be used in each supply and return pipe connection of two or more boilers connected to a common system. See Figs. HG-703.1 and HG-703.2.

HG-710.4 Type of Stop Valve(s)

(a) All valves or cocks shall conform with the applicable portions of HF-203 and may be ferrous or nonferrous.

(b) The minimum pressure rating of all valves or cocks shall be at least equal to the pressure stamped upon the boiler, and the temperature rating of such valves or cocks, including all internal components, shall be not less than 250°F (120°C).

(c) Valves or cocks shall be flanged, threaded, or have ends suitable for welding or brazing.

(d) All valves or cocks with stems or spindles shall have adjustable pressure type packing glands and, in addition, all plug type cocks shall be equipped with a guard or gland. The plug or other operating mechanism shall be distinctly marked in line with the passage to indicate whether it is opened or closed.

(e) All valves or cocks shall have tight closure when under boiler hydrostatic test pressure.

HG-710.5 Identification of Stop Valves by Tags. When stop valves are used, they shall be properly designated substantially as follows by tags of metal or other durable material fastened to them:

Supply Valve – Number ( )

Do Not Close Without Also
Closing Return Valve –
Number ( )

Return Valve – Number ( )

Do Not Close Without Also
Closing Supply Valve –
Number ( )

HG-715 BOTTOM BLOWOFF AND DRAIN VALVES

(a) Bottom Blowoff Valve. Each steam boiler shall have a bottom blowoff connection fitted with a valve or cock connected to the lowest water space practicable with a minimum size as shown in Table HG-715. The discharge piping shall be full size to the point of discharge.

TABLE HG-715
SIZE OF BOTTOM BLOWOFF PIPING, VALVES, AND COCKS

Minimum Required Safety Valve Capacity, lb (kg) of steam/hr [Note (1)]	Blowoff Piping, Valves, and Cocks Min. Size NPS (DN)
Up to 500 (225)	$\frac{3}{4}$ (20)
501 to 1,250 (225 to 550)	1 (25)
1,251 to 2,500 (550 to 1 200)	$1\frac{1}{4}$ (32)
2,501 to 6,000 (1 200 to 2 700)	$1\frac{1}{2}$ (40)
6,001 (2 700) and larger	2 (50)

NOTE:
(1) To determine the discharge capacity of safety relief valves in terms of Btu, the relieving capacity in lb of steam/hr is multiplied by 1,000.

(b) Boilers having a capacity of 25 gal (95 l) or less are exempt from the above requirements, except that they must have an NPS $\frac{3}{4}$ (DN 20) minimum drain valve.

07 *(c) Drain Valve.* Each steam or hot water boiler shall have one or more drain connections, fitted with valves or cocks. These shall be connected at the lowest practicable point on the boiler, or to the lowest point on piping connected to the boiler, at the lowest practicable point on the boiler. The minimum size of the drain piping, valves, and cocks shall be NPS $\frac{3}{4}$ (DN 20). The discharge piping shall be full size to the point of discharge. When the blowoff connection is located at the lowest water containing space, a separate drain connection is not required.

(d) Minimum Pressure Rating. The minimum pressure rating of valves and cocks used for blowoff or drain purposes shall be at least equal to the pressure stamped on the boiler but in no case less than 30 psi (200 kPa). The temperature rating of such valves and cocks shall not be less than 250°F (120°C).

HG-716 MODULAR BOILERS

(a) Individual Modules

(1) The individual modules shall comply with all the requirements of Part HG, except as specified in HG-607, HG-615, and this paragraph. The individual modules shall be limited to a maximum input of 400,000 Btuh (gas), 3 gal/hr (11 l/hr) (oil), or 115 kW (electricity).

(2) Each module of a steam heating boiler shall be equipped with

(a) safety valve, see HG-701

(b) blowoff valve, see HG-715(a)

(c) drain valve, see HG-715(c)

(3) Each module of a modular hot water heating boiler shall be equipped with

(a) safety relief valve, see HG-701

(b) drain valve, see HG-715(c)

(b) Assembled Modular Boilers

(1) The individual modules shall be manifolded together at the job-site without any intervening valves. The header or manifold piping is field piping and is exempt from Article 2, Part HG, HF, HB, or HC.

(2) The assembled modular steam heating boiler shall also be equipped with

(a) feedwater connection, see HG-705(a)

(b) return pipe connection, see HG-703.2

(3) The assembled modular hot water heating boiler shall also be equipped with

(a) makeup water connection, see HG-705(b)

(b) provision for thermal expansion, see HG-709

(c) stop valves, see HG-710.2

HG-720 SETTING

Boilers of wrought materials of the wet-bottom type having an external width of over 36 in. (900 mm) shall have not less than 12 in. (300 mm) between the bottom of the boiler and the floorline, with access for inspection. When the width is 36 in. (900 mm) or less, the distance between the bottom of the boiler and the floorline shall be not less than 6 in. (150 mm), except that, when any part of the wet bottom is not farther from an outer edge than 12 in. (300 mm), this distance shall be not less than 4 in. (100 mm).

HG-725 METHODS OF SUPPORT

HG-725.1 Loadings

(a) The design and attachment of lugs, hangers, saddles, and other supports shall take into account the stresses due to hydrostatic head in determining the minimum thicknesses required. Additional stresses imposed by effects other than working pressure or static head, which increase the average stress by more than 10% of the allowable working stress, shall also be taken into account. These effects include the weight of the component and its contents, and the method of support.

(b) In applying the requirements of (a) above, localized stresses due to concentrated support loads, temperature changes, and restraint against dilation of the boiler due to pressure shall be provided for. Lugs, hangers, brackets, saddles, and pads shall conform satisfactorily to the shape of the shell or surface to which they are attached or are in contact.

HG-725.2 Boilers Over 72 in. (1 800 mm) in Diameter. A horizontal-return tubular boiler over 72 in. (1 800 mm) in diameter shall be supported from steel hangers by the outside-suspension type of setting, independent of the furnace wall. The hangers shall be so designed that the load is properly distributed.

HG-725.3 Boilers Over 54 in. (1 400 mm) up to 72 in. (1 800 mm) in Diameter. A horizontal-return tubular boiler over 54 in. (1 400 mm) and up to and including 72 in. (1 800 mm) in diameter shall be supported by the outside-suspension type of setting, or at four points by not less than eight steel brackets set in pairs, the brackets of each pair to be spaced not over 2 in. (50 mm) apart and the load to be equalized between them. [See Fig. HG-725(a).]

HG-725.4 Boilers up to 54 in. (1 400 mm) in Diameter. A horizontal-return tubular boiler up to and including 54 in. (1 400 mm) in diameter shall be supported by the outside-suspension type of setting, or by not less than two steel brackets on each side.

HG-725.5 Supporting Members. If the boiler is supported by structural steel work, the steel supporting members shall be so located or insulated that the heat from the furnace can not impair their strength.

HG-725.6 Lugs or Hangers. Lugs, hangers, or brackets made of materials in accordance with the Code requirements may be attached by fusion welding provided they are attached by fillet welds along the entire periphery or contact edges. Figure HG-725(b) illustrates an acceptable design of hanger bracket with the additional requirement that the center pin be located at the vertical center line over the center of the welded contact surface. The bracket plates shall be spaced at least $2\frac{1}{2}$ in. (64 mm) apart, but this dimension shall be increased if necessary to permit access for the welding operation. The stresses computed by dividing the total load on each lug, hanger, or bracket, by the minimum cross-sectional area of the weld shall not exceed 2800 psi (19 MPa). Where it is impractical to attach lugs, hangers, or brackets by welding, studs with not less than 10 threads/in. (approx. 4 threads/cm) may be used. In computing the shearing stresses, the root area at the bottom of the thread shall be used. The shearing and crushing stresses on studs shall not exceed 8% of the strength given in Table HF-300.1 for bolting materials.

HG-725.7 Settings. Boilers of wrought materials of the wet-bottom type having an external width of over 36 in. (900 mm) shall be supported so as to have a minimum clearance of 12 in. (300 mm), between the bottom of the boiler and the floor, to facilitate inspection. When the width is 36 in. (900 mm) or less, the clearance between the bottom of the boiler and the floorline shall be not less than 6 in. (150 mm), except when any part of the wet bottom is not farther from the outer edge than 12 in. (300 mm). This clearance shall be not less than 4 in. (100 mm). Boiler insulation, saddles, or other supports shall be arranged so that inspection openings are readily accessible.

FIG. HG-725(a) SPACING AND WELD DETAILS FOR SUPPORTING LUGS IN PAIRS ON HORIZONTAL-RETURN TUBULAR BOILER

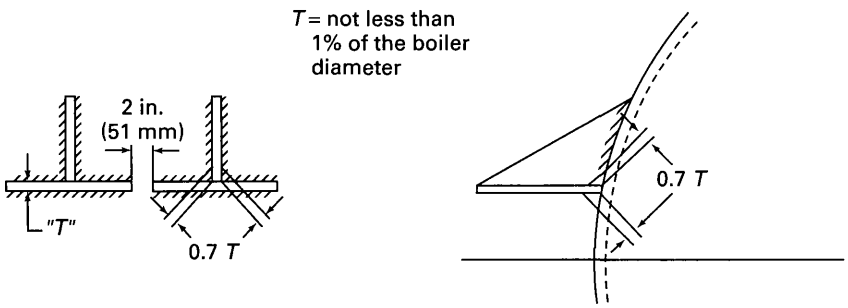
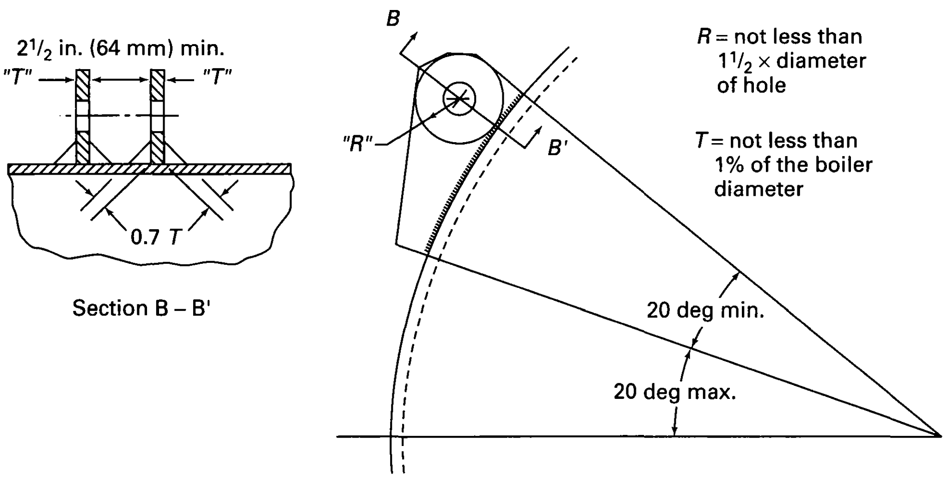


FIG. HG-725(b) WELDED BRACKET CONNECTION FOR HORIZONTAL-RETURN TUBULAR BOILER



PART HF
REQUIREMENTS FOR BOILERS CONSTRUCTED OF WROUGHT MATERIALS

ARTICLE 1
GENERAL

HF-100 SCOPE

The rules in Part HF are applicable to heating boilers that are constructed primarily of wrought materials, and shall be used in conjunction with general requirements of Part HG of this Section.

ARTICLE 2
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

HF-200 GENERAL MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

Materials other than those described herein may not be used, unless approved by the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee in accordance with Appendix 5 in Section II, Part D.

HF-201 PLATE

(a) Plate used in the construction of pressure containing parts shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II for which allowable stress values are given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 except as otherwise provided in HF-203 and HF-205.

(b) Stainless plates of SA-240 for which allowable stress values are given in Table HF-300.1 may be used in the construction of hot water heating boilers provided the following are met:

(1) The water temperature shall not exceed 210°F (99°C).

(2) The material shall be fully annealed.

(c) For pressure retaining plate material, a material test report is required to verify that the chemical and mechanical properties are within the permissible range listed in Section II.

HF-202 RODS, BARS, AND SHAPES

Rods, bars, and shapes may be used in boiler construction for pressure parts such as flange rings, stiffening rings, braces, frames for reinforced openings, stays and staybolts, and similar parts. Rods, bars, and shapes used for pressure parts shall conform to one of the specifications in Section II and shall be limited to those listed in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2, except as otherwise provided in HF-203 and HF-205.

HF-203 PREFABRICATED OR PREFORMED PRESSURE PARTS

Prefabricated or preformed pressure parts for boilers that are subject to allowable working stresses due to internal or external pressure in the boilers and that are furnished by other than the shop of the manufacturer responsible for the completed boilers shall conform to all applicable requirements of the Code as related to a completed boiler, including inspection in the shop of the parts manufacturer and the furnishing of Partial Data Reports except as permitted in HF-203.1, HF-203.2, and HF-203.3.

HF-203.1 Cast, Forged, Rolled, or Die Formed Standard Pressure Parts

(a) Pressure parts such as pipe fittings, valves, flanges, nozzles, welding necks, welding caps, manhole frames and covers, and casings of pumps that are part of a boiler circulating system that are wholly formed by casting, forging, or die forming shall not require inspection, mill test reports or Partial Data Reports; however, they shall be made of materials permitted under Section II or in a Code-accepted standard (such as ANSI) covering the particular type of pressure part. Such parts shall be marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer and such other markings as are required by the several standards. Such markings shall be considered as the manufacturer's certification that the product complies with the material specifications and standards indicated and is suitable for service at the rating indicated. The intent of the paragraph will have been met if, in lieu of the detailed marking on the part itself, the parts described herein have been marked in any permanent or temporary manner that will serve to identify the part with the manufacturer's written listing of the particular items and such listings are available for examination by the Inspector.

(b) Parts of small size falling within this category for which it is difficult or impossible to obtain identified material or that may be stocked and for which mill test reports or certificates cannot be economically obtained and are not customarily furnished, and that do not appreciably affect the safety of the vessel, may be used for relatively unimportant parts or parts stressed to not more than 50% of the stress value permitted by the Code provided they are suitable for the purpose intended and are accepted by the Inspector [see HF-203.1(a)]. The manufacturer of the completed vessel shall satisfy himself that the part is suitable for the design conditions specified for the completed vessel.

HF-203.2 Cast, Forged, Rolled, or Die Formed Nonstandard Pressure Parts. Pressure parts such as shells, heads, removable cover plates, and pipe coils that are attached to other wrought parts and that are wholly formed by casting, forging, rolling, or die forming may be supplied basically as materials. All such parts shall be made of materials permitted under Section II and the manufacturer of the part shall furnish mill test reports or other acceptable evidence to that effect. Such parts shall be marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer and with such other markings as will serve to identify the particular parts with accompanying material identification. The manufacturer of the completed boiler shall satisfy himself that the part is suitable for the design conditions specified for the completed boiler.

HF-203.3 Welded Standard Pressure Parts for Use Other Than the Shell of a Boiler[1]

(a) Pressure parts such as pipe fittings, nozzles, welding necks, welding caps, valves, and flanges that are fabricated by one of the welding processes recognized by the Code shall not require inspection, mill test reports, or Partial Data Reports provided

(1) all such parts are made of materials permitted under Section II or in a Code-accepted standard

(2) if arc or gas welded, the welding complies with the rules of this Section

(b) Such parts shall be marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer and with such other markings as will serve to identify the materials of which the parts are made. Such markings shall be considered as the manufacturer's certification that the product complies with HF-203.3(a)(1). A statement by the parts manufacturer that all welding complies with Code requirements shall be accepted as evidence that the product complies with HF-203.3(a)(2).

HF-204 PIPE AND TUBES

Pipe and tubes of seamless or welded construction shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II for which allowable stress values are given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 except as otherwise provided in HF-203 and HF-205 when used in the construction of pressure containing parts.

HF-204.1 Integrally Finned Tubes. Integrally finned tubes may be made from tubes that conform in every respect with one of the specifications given in Section II, except that the pressure test is not required for nonferrous tubes. These tubes may be used under the following conditions.

(a) The tubes after finning shall have a temper or condition that conforms to one of those provided in the governing specifications.

(b) The maximum allowable stress value for the finned tube shall be that given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 for the tube before finning, except as permitted in (c) below.

(c) The maximum allowable stress value for a temper or condition that has a higher stress value than that of the tube before finning may be used provided that qualifying tensile tests demonstrate that such a temper or condition is obtained. The stress values used shall not exceed those shown in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 for the temper or condition involved. The qualifying tensile tests shall be made on specimens of finned tube from which the fins have been removed by machining.

(d) The maximum allowable internal or external design pressure of the tube shall be based on either the minimum wall thickness of the finned section or of the unfinned section, whichever is smaller.

(e) In addition to the tests required by the governing specifications (except for pressure tests for nonferrous tubes), each tube after finning shall withstand without evidence of leakage an internal pneumatic test of not less than 250 psi (1 720 kPa) for 5 sec. The test method used shall permit easy visual detection of any leakage, such as immersion of the tube under water or a pressure differential method.[2] A test meeting the requirements of HG-510(c) may be substituted for this requirement if the boiler design so permits.

HF-204.2 Electric Resistance Welded Fin Tubes. Tubes with electric resistance welded fins that serve as extended heating surface and have no load-carrying function may be supplied as materials. A Code Certificate holder need not perform the welds attaching the fins. When the welding process attaching the fins is automatic, welding procedure and performance qualification testing is not required.

HF-204.3 Stainless Tubes. Stainless steel tubes, for which allowable stress values are given in Table HF-300.1, may be used in the construction of hot water heating or hot water supply boilers, provided the following conditions are met.

(a) Minimum tube thickness shall be 0.035 in. (0.89 mm).

(b) The required wall thickness of stainless tubes under internal pressure shall be determined in accordance with the rules for Cylindrical Parts Under Internal Pressure in HG-301.

(c) The wall thickness of stainless tubes subject to external pressure shall be determined by using the procedures outlined in HG-312.3.

---

[1] Arc and gas welded pipe for use as the shell of a boiler shall be subject to the same requirements as a shell fabricated from plate, including inspection at the point of manufacture and Partial Data Reports.

[2] The pressure differential method is described in *Materials and Research Standards*, Vol. 1, No. 7, July 1961, published by ASTM.

(d) Tubes installed by rolling shall have an additional 0.04 in. (1.02 mm) wall thickness added to the minimum required thickness.

(e) For austenitic stainless steel materials only, the water temperature shall not exceed 210°F (99°C). [See Table HF-300.1, Note (16).]

(f) Welding or brazing shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

HF-205 MATERIAL NOT FULLY IDENTIFIED

Material that has lost its identity with a permitted specification may be accepted provided that it satisfies the conditions given in either HF-205.1 or HF-205.2.

HF-205.1 Acceptance by Authentic Test Record and Marking. Each piece shall be shown to have chemical requirements and mechanical properties within the permissible range of the permitted specification in Section II by an authentic test record and by marking identifying it with that record. When the permitted specification requires other tests or more restrictive tests than those of the specification covered by the authentic test record, the material shall be subjected to sufficient additional tests to satisfy the Inspector that it complies with the permitted specification.

HF-205.2 Acceptance by Testing

(a) Plate. The chemical check analyses and mechanical tests of plates shall be made as required in the permitted specification with the following modifications. The carbon and manganese contents shall be determined in all check analyses. The Inspector shall decide whether these contents are acceptable when the permitted specification does not specify carbon and manganese limits. When the direction of rolling is not definitely known, two tension specimens shall be taken at right angles to each other from a corner of each plate, and two bend specimens shall be taken from the middle of adjacent sides of each plate. One tension specimen and both bend specimens shall meet the permitted specification requirements.

(b) Tubes and Pipe. Each length of tube or pipe shall be subjected to a chemical check analysis and sufficient mechanical tests to satisfy the Inspector that all the material is identified with a given heat or heat treatment lot and that the material complies with the chemical and mechanical requirements of the permitted specification. Material specified as suitable for welding, cold bending, close coiling, and similar operations shall be given sufficient check tests to satisfy the Inspector that it is suitable for the fabrication procedure to be used.

(c) Rods, Bars, and Shapes. Each length of rods shall be subjected to a chemical check analysis and sufficient mechanical tests to satisfy the Inspector that all the material is identified with a given heat or heat treatment lot, and that the material complies with the chemical and mechanical requirements of the permitted specification. Material specified as suitable for welding, cold bending, and similar operations shall be given check tests to satisfy the Inspector that it is suitable for the fabrication procedure to be used.

HF-205.3 Marking and Report on Tests of Nonidentified Material. When the identity of the material with the permitted specification has been established in accordance with HF-205.1 or HF-205.2, each piece of material (except as alternatively provided in the specification for tubes, pipe, rods, bars, or shapes) shall be marked to the satisfaction of the Inspector by the boiler manufacturer or the testing agency, with a marking giving the permitted specification number and grade or type and a serial S-number identifying the particular lot of material. A suitable report, clearly marked as being a "Report on Tests of Nonidentified Material," shall be furnished, properly filled out and certified by the boiler manufacturer or testing agency, and this report, when accepted by the Inspector, shall constitute authority to use the material.

HF-206 RECERTIFICATION OF MATERIAL PRODUCED TO A SPECIFICATION NOT PERMITTED BY THIS SECTION

A particular production lot of material may be recertified to a permitted specification by the boiler or part manufacturer under the following conditions.

(a) The specification to which the material was produced, processed, and purchased must be available for comparison to the permitted specification.

(b) A test report from the material manufacturer must be available.

(c) The material must have marking, acceptable to the Inspector, for identification to the test report.

(d) The test report must show that all chemical and mechanical properties of the lot comply with the requirements of the permitted specification.

(e) When conformance of the lot to the permitted specification has been established, it may be accepted and marked, as required by the permitted specification, by the boiler or part manufacturer.

HF-207 AUSTENITIC STAINLESS STEEL

Austenitic alloys are subject to stress corrosion cracking, intergranular attack, pitting, and crevice corrosion. Factors that affect the susceptibility of these materials are applied or residual stress, water chemistry and deposition of solids, and material condition. Susceptibility to attack is enhanced when the material is used in a sensitized condition or with residual cold work. Concentration of corrosive agents (e.g., chlorides, caustic or reduced sulfur species) can occur under deposits formed on the surface of these materials and can result in severe under deposit wasting or cracking.

The following preventive measures should be considered in designs utilizing these materials, along with Appendix 6, paragraph 6-300 of Section II-D:

(a) Careful selection of materials for the specific application. For welded applications, low carbon grades or titanium-stabilized grades should be considered.

(b) Proper consideration of fabrication methods and techniques to reduce residual stresses and sites for crevice corrosion. Cold working, grinding, bending, and high-heat input welding should be minimized. In the design of the boiler, stagnant fluid regions should be avoided, as should crevices. Weld joints should be designed to avoid integral back-up rings or back-up bars that are left in place and create a crevice.

(c) Control of boiler water chemistry and avoidance of other environmental sources of chlorides, such as chloride containing insulation or swimming pool environments.

HF-210 MAINTAINING MATERIAL IDENTIFICATION

(a) Material for pressure parts shall carry identification markings as required by the applicable material specification. If the original identification markings are cut out or the material is divided into two or more parts, the marking shall either be accurately transferred prior to cutting or a coded method of identification shall be used to assure identification of each piece of material during subsequent fabrication.

(b) Materials may be identified by any method suitable to the Inspector, provided the method used does not result in sharp discontinuities and identifies the material until the boiler is completed.

ARTICLE 3
DESIGN STRESSES AND MINIMUM THICKNESSES

HF-300 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 give the maximum allowable stress values indicated for ferrous and nonferrous materials, respectively, conforming to the specifications listed therein.

HF-301 MINIMUM THICKNESSES[1]

07 **HF-301.1 Ferrous Plates**

(a) Except as permitted in (c) and (d) below and for cylindrical shells in Table HF-301.1, the minimum thickness of any ferrous plate, or pipe used in lieu of plate, under any pressure shall be $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(b) The minimum thicknesses of ferrous shell and other ferrous plates, heads, and tubesheets for various shell diameters of boilers shall be as shown in Table HF-301.1. All sheets, except those having tubes installed by rolling, may be classified as shell plates.

(c) Carbon steel plate with a thickness less than that permitted by HF-301.1(a), HF-301.1(b), and HG-312.1(a) may be used when all of the following requirements are met:

(1) The operating service shall be limited to closed hot water heating systems at a maximum pressure of 30 psi (200 kPa).

(2) The pressure parts shall be limited to a maximum diameter of 30 in. (750 mm) O.D.

(3) No plate shall be less than $\frac{3}{32}$ in. (2.5 mm) (actual thickness), but if less than $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5.0 mm) (actual thickness), the plate shall not be exposed to the primary products of combustion.

(d) Alloy steel plate of Specification SA-240 type 316Ti, 316L, 439 (UNS S43035), and UNS S43932, with a thickness less than that permitted by HF-301.1(a), HF-301.1(b), and HG-312.1(a), may be used when all of the following requirements are met:

(1) The operating service shall be limited to closed hot water heating systems at a maximum pressure of 80 psi (550 kPa).

(2) The cylindrical parts for combustion chamber and pressure vessel shall be limited to a maximum of 38 in. (950 mm) outside diameter.

(3) The material thickness shall not be less than $\frac{3}{32}$ in. (2.5 mm) (actual thickness) for combustion chamber design.

(4) The material thickness shall not be less than 0.0394 in. (1 mm) (actual thickness) for secondary flue gas heat exchange surfaces.

HF-301.2 Nonferrous Plates

(a) The minimum thickness of any nonferrous plate under pressure shall be $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) for copper, admiralty, and red brass, and $\frac{3}{32}$ in. (2.5 mm) for copper–nickel.

(b) The minimum thicknesses of nonferrous shells and other copper or copper-alloy plates, heads, and tubesheets for various shell diameters of boilers shall be as shown in Table HF-301.2. All sheets, except those having tubes installed by rolling, may be classified as shell plates.

(c) The minimum thickness of any nonferrous tubesheet with tubes installed by rolling shall be $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm).

HF-302 BASIS FOR ESTABLISHING STRESS VALUES IN TABLES HF-300.1 AND HF-300.2

(a) In the determination of allowable stress values for pressure parts, the Committee is guided by successful experience in service, insofar as evidence of satisfactory performance is available. Such evidence is considered equivalent to test data where operating conditions are known with reasonable certainty. In the evaluation of new materials, it is necessary to be guided to a certain extent by the comparison of test information with similar data on successful applications of similar materials.

[1] These minimum thicknesses for pressure shall not be less than required by design formulas in Part HG, Article 3, nor less than those thicknesses established by proof testing in Part HG, Article 5.

(b) At any temperature below the creep range, the allowable stresses are established at no higher than the lowest of the following:

(1) $^1/_5$ of the specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature

(2) $^1/_5$ of the tensile strength at temperature

(3) $^2/_3$ of the specified minimum yield strength at room temperature

(4) $^2/_3$ of the yield strength at temperature

(c) For bolting materials, the basis for setting stresses is the same as for all other materials with the exception that (1) and (2) above are

(1) $^1/_4$ of the specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature, and

(2) $^1/_4$ of the tensile strength at temperature

The following limitation also applies to bolting materials: at temperatures below the creep range, the stresses for materials whose strength has been enhanced by heat treatment or by strain hardening shall not exceed the lesser of 20% of the specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature or 25% of the specified minimum yield strength at room temperature unless these values are lower than the annealed values, in which case the annealed values shall be used.

TABLE HF-300.1
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi (MPa)
(Multiply by 1,000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi (MPa)	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi (MPa)
Plate Steels									
Carbon Steels									
SA-36	...	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	58.0 (400)	36.0 (250)	(1)(2)	11.6 (80.0)
SA-285	A	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-1	45.0 (310)	24.0 (165)	...	9.0 (62.1)
SA-285	B	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-1	50.0 (345)	27.0 (185)	...	10.0 (68.9)
SA-285	C	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	55.0 (380)	30.0 (205)	...	11.0 (75.8)
SA-455	...	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	75.0 (515)	38.0 (260)	(3)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-455	...	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	73.0 (505)	37.0 (255)	(4)	14.6 (101.0)
SA-455	...	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	70.0 (485)	35.0 (240)	(5)	14.0 (96.5)
SA-515	60	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	32.0 (220)	...	12.0 (82.7)
SA-515	65	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	65.0 (450)	35.0 (240)	...	13.0 (89.6)
SA-515	70	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	70.0 (485)	38.0 (260)	...	14.0 (96.5)
SA-516	55	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	55.0 (380)	30.0 (205)	...	11.0 (75.8)
SA-516	60	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	32.0 (220)	...	12.0 (82.7)
SA-516	65	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	65.0 (450)	35.0 (240)	...	13.0 (89.6)
SA-516	70	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	70.0 (485)	38.0 (260)	...	14.0 (96.5)
Sheet Steels									
Carbon Steels									
SA-414	A	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-1	45.0 (310)	25.0 (170)	...	9.0 (62.1)
SA-414	B	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	50.0 (345)	30.0 (205)	...	10.0 (68.9)
SA-414	C	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	55.0 (380)	33.0 (230)	...	11.0 (75.8)
SA-414	D	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	35.0 (240)	...	12.0 (82.7)
SA-414	E	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	65.0 (450)	38.0 (260)	...	13.0 (89.6)
SA-414	F	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-3	70.0 (485)	42.0 (290)	...	14.0 (96.5)
SA-414	G	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-3	75.0 (515)	45.0 (310)	...	15.0 (103.0)
Pipe and Tubes									
Seamless Carbon Steel									
SA-53	A	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	48.0 (330)	30.0 (205)	...	9.6 (66.2)
SA-53	B	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	35.0 (240)	...	12.0 (82.7)
SA-106	A	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	48.0 (330)	30.0 (205)	...	9.6 (66.2)
SA-106	B	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	35.0 (240)	...	12.0 (82.7)
SA-106	C	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-3	70.0 (485)	40.0 (275)	...	14.0 (96.5)
SA-192	...	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-1	47.0 (325)	26.0 (180)	(6)	9.4 (64.8)
SA-210	A-1	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	37.0 (255)	...	12.0 (82.7)

TABLE HF-300.1
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi (MPa) (CONT'D)
(Multiply by 1,000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi (MPa)	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi (MPa)
Pipe and Tubes (Cont'd)									
Electric Resistance Welded Carbon Steel									
SA-53	A	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	48.0 (330)	30.0 (205)	(7)	8.2 (56.3)
SA-53	B	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	35.0 (240)	(7)	10.2 (70.3)
SA-135	A	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	48.0 (330)	30.0 (205)	(7)	8.2 (56.3)
SA-135	B	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	35.0 (240)	(7)	10.2 (70.3)
SA-178	A	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-1	47.0 (325)	26.0 (180)	(6)(7)	8.0 (55.1)
SA-178	C	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	37.0 (255)	(7)	10.2 (70.3)
Butt Welded									
SA-53	F	Carbon steel	1	1	...	48.0 (330)	30.0 (205)	(8)	5.8 (39.7)
Forgings									
Carbon Steels									
SA-105	...	Carbon steel	1	2	...	70.0 (485)	36.0 (250)	...	14.0 (96.5)
SA-181	Class 60	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	30.0 (205)	...	12.0 (82.7)
SA-181	Class 70	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	70.0 (485)	36.0 (250)	...	14.0 (96.5)
SA-266	1	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	30.0 (205)	...	12.0 (82.7)
SA-266	2	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	70.0 (485)	36.0 (250)	...	14.0 (96.5)
SA-266	3	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	75.0 (515)	37.5 (260)	...	15.0 (103.0)
Castings									
Carbon Steels									
SA-216	WCA	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	30.0 (205)	(9)	9.6 (66.2)
SA-216	WCB	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	70.0 (485)	36.0 (250)	(9)	11.2 (77.2)
Bolting									
Carbon Steels									
SA-307	B	Carbon steel	...	...	...	60.0 (415)	...	(10)	7.0 (48.3)
SA-193	B5	5Cr–$\frac{1}{2}$Mo	...	...	...	100.0 (690)	...	(10)	25.0 (172.0)
SA-193	B7	1Cr–0.2Mo	...	...	...	100.0 (690)	...	(10)	25.0 (172.0)
SA-311	1018, Class A	Carbon steel	...	...	...	...	...	(11)(11a)	14.0 (96.5)
	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	(11b)	13.0 (89.6)
SA-311	1035, Class A	Carbon steel	...	...	...	...	...	(11)(11a)	17.0 (117.0)
	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	(11b)	16.0 (110.0)
SA-311	1045, Class A	Carbon steel	...	...	...	...	...	(11)(11a)	19.0 (131.0)
	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	(11b)	18.0 (124.0)
SA-311	1045, Class B	Carbon steel	...	...	...	...	...	(11)(11a)	23.0 (159.0)
SA-311	1050, Class A	Carbon steel	...	...	...	...	...	(11)(11a)	20.0 (138.0)
	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	(11b)	19.0 (131.0)
SA-320	L7	1Cr–0.2Mo	...	...	...	125.0 (860)	...	(10)	25.0 (172.0)
SA-320	L43	1$\frac{3}{4}$Ni–$\frac{3}{4}$Cr–$\frac{1}{4}$Mo	...	...	...	125.0 (860)	...	(10)	25.0 (172.0)
SA-325	1	Carbon steel	...	...	...	...	...	(10)	7.0 (48.3)
SA-354	BC	Carbon steel	...	...	...	...	...	(10)	25.0 (172.0)
SA-354	BD	Carbon steel	...	...	...	...	...	(10)	25.0 (172.0)

TABLE HF-300.1
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi (MPa) (CONT'D)
(Multiply by 1,000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi (MPa)	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi (MPa)
Bars and Stays									
Carbon Steels									
SA-36	...	Carbon steel	1	1	...	58.0 (400)	...	(1)	11.6 (80.0)
SA-675	45	Carbon steel	1	1	...	45.0 (310)	...	...	9.0 (62.1)
SA-675	50	Carbon steel	1	1	...	50.0 (345)	...	...	10.0 (68.9)
SA-675	55	Carbon steel	1	1	...	55.0 (380)	...	...	11.0 (75.8)
SA-675	60	Carbon steel	1	1	...	60.0 (415)	...	...	12.0 (82.7)
SA-675	65	Carbon steel	1	1	...	65.0 (450)	...	...	13.0 (89.6)
SA-675	70 (483)	Carbon steel	1	2	...	70.0 (485)	...	...	14.0 (96.5)
Plate									
Alloy Steel									
SA-240	304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(12)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-240	304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(12)	14.0 (96.5)
SA-240	316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(12)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-240	316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(12)	14.0 (96.5)
SA-240	316Ti	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo–Ti	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(12)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-240	439	18Cr–Ti	7	2	...	60.0 (415)	30.0 (205)	(13)(14)(15)	13.0 (82.7)
SA-240	S44400	18Cr–2Mo	7	2	CS-2	60.0 (415)	40.0 (275)	(13)(16)	12.0 (82.7)
SA-240	S43932	18Cr–Ti–Co	7	2	CS-2	65.0 (450)	30.0 (205)	(13)(14)(15)	13.0 (89.6)
Tube									
Alloy Steel									
SA-213	TP304	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(17)(18)(12)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-213	TP304L	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(17)(18)(12)	14.0 (96.5)
SA-213	TP316	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(17)(18)(12)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-213	TP316L	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(17)(18)(12)	14.0 (96.5)
SA-249	TP304	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(7)(17)(18)(12)	12.8 (103.0)
SA-249	TP304L	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(7)(17)(18)(12)	11.9 (96.5)
SA-249	TP316	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(7)(17)(18)(12)	12.8 (103.0)
SA-249	TP316L	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(7)(17)(18)(12)	11.9 (96.5)
SA-268	S44400	18Cr–2Mo	7	2	CS-2	60.0 (415)	40.0 (275)	(13)(16)	12.0 (82.7)
SA-268	TP439	18Cr–Ti	7	2	CS-2	60.0 (415)	30.0 (205)	(13)(14)(15)	12.0 (82.7)
SA-268	S44735	Smls. 29Cr–4Mo	10J	1	CS-2	75.0 (515)	60.0 (415)	(19)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-268	S44735	Wld. 29Cr–4Mo	10J	1	CS-2	75.0 (515)	60.0 (415)	(7)(19)	15.0 (103.0)
Pipe									
Alloy Steel									
SA-312	TP304	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(18)(12)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-312	TP304L	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(18)(12)	14.0 (96.5)
SA-312	TP316	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(18)(12)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-312	TP316L	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(18)(12)	14.0 (96.5)

TABLE HF-300.1
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi (MPa) (CONT'D)
(Multiply by 1,000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi (MPa)	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi (MPa)
Pipe									
Alloy Steel									
SA-312	TP304	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(7)(18)(12)	12.8 (87.9)
SA-312	TP304L	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(7)(18)(12)	11.9 (82.0)
SA-312	TP316	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(7)(18)(12)	12.8 (87.9)
SA-312	TP316L	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(7)(18)(12)	11.9 (82.0)
Bar									
Alloy Steel									
SA-479	S44400	18Cr–2Mo	7	2	...	60.0 (415)	...	(13)(16)	12.0 (82.7)
SA-479	439	18Cr–Ti	7	2	HA-27	70.0 (485)	40.0 (275)	(13)(14)(15)	14.0 (96.5)
SA-479	304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(17)(12)	14.0 (96.5)
SA-479	316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(17)(12)	14.0 (96.5)
SA-479	304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(10)(12)(20)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-479	ER308	20Cr–10Ni	...	...	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(10)(12)(20)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-479	309S	23Cr–12Ni	8	2	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(10)(12)(20)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-479	309H	23Cr–12Ni	8	2	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(10)(12)(20)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-479	310S	25Cr–20Ni	8	2	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(10)(12)(20)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-479	316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(10)(12)(20)	15.0 (103.0)
Forgings									
Alloy Steel									
SA-182	F304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(18)(12)(21)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-182	F304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(18)(12)(21)	14.0 (96.5)
SA-182	F316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(18)(12)(21)	15.0 (103.0)
SA-182	F316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(18)(12)(21)	14.0 (96.5)
Castings									
Alloy Steel									
SA-351	CF8C	18Cr–10Ni–Cb	8	1	...	70.0 (485)	...	(9)(12)(22)	11.2 (77.2)
SA-351	CF3M	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	...	70.0 (485)	...	(9)(12)(22)	11.2 (77.2)

TABLE HF-300.1
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR FERROUS MATERIALS, ksi (MPa) (CONT'D)
(Multiply by 1,000 to Obtain psi)

NOTES:

(1) These allowable stress values apply also to structural shapes.

(2) SA/CSA-G40.21 as specified in Section IIA, grade 38W or 44W, may be used in lieu of SA-36 for plates and bars not exceeding $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (20 mm). For use at the same maximum allowable stress values as SA-36.

(3) For thicknesses up to $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (9.52 mm), inclusive.

(4) For thicknesses over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. to 0.580 in. (9.5 mm to 14.7 mm), inclusive.

(5) For thicknesses over 0.580 to 0.750 in. (14.7 mm to 19.0 mm), inclusive.

(6) Tensile value is expected minimum.

(7) The stress value includes a joint factor of 0.85.

(8) The stress value includes a joint factor of 0.60.

(9) The stress value includes a casting quality factor of 0.80. Increased casting quality factors as a result of material examination beyond the requirements of the material specifications shall not be permitted.

(10) The stress value is established from a consideration of strength only and will be satisfactory for average service. For bolted joints, where freedom from leakage over a long period of time without retightening is required, lower stress values may be necessary as determined from the relative flexibility of the flange and bolts, and corresponding relaxation properties.

(11) For tie-rods and draw bolts on cast-iron sectional boilers subject to system pressure. Welding is not permitted.
  (a) To $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm) diam. incl.
  (b) Over $\frac{7}{8}$ in. to $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. incl. (22 mm to 32 mm).
  (c) To 3 in. (76 mm) incl.

(12) The water temperature shall not exceed 210°F (98°C).

(13) The maximum thickness of material covered by this Table is $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (9.5 mm).

(14) The service temperature shall not exceed 200°F (93°C).

(15) Filler metal shall be Type 430 with a nominal titanium content of approximately 1.25%. The 300 series of chromium–nickel–iron filler metals shall not be used in welding vessels conforming to the requirements of Section IV.

(16) Filler metal shall be Type 430 with a nominal molybdenum content of approximately 2%. The 300 series of chromium–nickel–iron filler metals shall not be used in welding vessels conforming to the requirements of Section IV.

(17) Tubing material shall be fully annealed.

(18) Limitations of HF-204.2 also apply.

(19) Heat treatment after forming or fabrication is neither required nor prohibited.

(20) For arc or resistance welded studs only.

(21) These allowable stresses apply only to material 5 in. (127 mm) and under in thickness.

(22) The minimum thickness for header material is 0.10 in. (2.6 mm).

TABLE HF-300.2
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR NONFERROUS MATERIALS, ksi
(multiply by 1000 to obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Alloy Designation UNS No.	Product Form	Class/Condition/Temper	P-No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Maximum Allowable Stress Value, ksi Up To 100°F	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500
Aluminum Bronze																	
SB-111	C60800	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	35	NFC-2	50.0	19.0	...	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	9.9	...	...	...
Copper																	
SB-42	C10200	Pipe	Annealed/061	31	NFC-1	30	9	(1)	6.0	5.1	4.9	4.8	4.7	4.0	3.0	...	...
SB-42	C10200	Pipe	Hard Drawn/H80 - ⅛ in. to 2 in. NPS, incl.	31	NFC-4	45	40	(2)(1)	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	8.8	8.3	4.3	...	...
SB-42	C10200	Pipe	Light Drawn/H55 - 2½ in. to 12 in. NPS, incl.	31	NFC-3	36	30	(2)(1)	7.2	7.2	7.2	7.2	7.0	6.8	6.6	...	...
SB-75	C10200	Smls. Tubes	Annealed/050/060	31	NFC-1	30	9	(1)	6.0	5.1	4.9	4.8	4.7	4.0	3.0	...	...
SB-75	C10200	Smls. Tubes	Light Drawn/H55	31	NFC-3	36	30	(2)(1)	7.2	7.2	7.2	7.2	7.0	6.8	6.6	...	...
SB-75	C10200	Smls. Tubes	Hard Drawn/H80	31	NFC-4	45	40	(2)(1)	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	8.8	8.3	4.3	...	...
SB-111	C10200	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Light Drawn/H55	31	NFC-6	36	30	(1)	7.2	7.2	7.2	7.2	7.0	6.8	6.6	...	...
SB-111	C10200	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Hard Drawn/H80	31	NFC-4	45	40	(1)	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	8.8	8.3	4.3	...	...
SB-152	C10200	Plate, Sheet, Strip, & Bar	Hot Rolled/025, Annealed	31	NFC-1	30	10	(1)	6.0	5.6	5.4	5.2	5.0	4.0	3.0	...	...
SB-283	C37700	Forging Brass	As Forged/M10/M11	...	...	46	15	(3)(4)	9.2	9.2	9.0	...	...	...	...	...	...
SB-395	C10200	Smls. Tubes	Light Drawn/H55	31	NFC-6	36	30	(2)(1)	7.2	7.2	7.2	7.2	7.0	6.8	6.6	...	...
Copper-Silicon																	
SB-96	C65500	Plate & Sheet	Annealed/061	33	NFC-2	50	18	(5)	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	5.0	3.7	...	...
SB-98	C65500	Rods	Soft Anneal/060	33	...	52	15	(5)	10.0	10.0	9.9	9.8	9.7	5.0	3.7	...	...
SB-98	C65500	Rods	Quarter Hard/H01	33	...	55	24	(5)	11.0	11.0	11.0	11.0	11.0	8.0	3.8	...	...
SB-98	C65100	Rods	Soft Anneal/060	33	...	40	12	(5)	8.0	7.9	7.9	7.9	7.9	5.0	3.7	...	...
SB-98	C65100	Rods	Half Hard/H02	33	...	55	20	(5)	11.0	11.0	11.0	11.0	11.0	8.0	3.8	...	...
SB-315	C65500	Pipe & Tube	Annealed/030/061	33	NFC-2	50	15	(5)	10.0	10.0	9.9	9.8	9.7	5.0	3.7	...	...
Red-Brass																	
SB-43	C23000	Smls. Pipe	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	40	12	...	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	7.0	4.8	...	...
SB-111	C23000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	40	12	...	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	7.0	4.8	...	...
SB-395	C23000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	40	12	...	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	7.0	4.8	...	...

TABLE HF-300.2
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR NONFERROUS MATERIALS, ksi (CONT'D)
(multiply by 1000 to obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Alloy Designation UNS No.	Product Form	Class/Condition/Temper	P-No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Maximum Allowable Stress Value, ksi Up To 100°F	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500
Admirality																	
SB-395	C44300	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	45	15	...	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	3.5	...	...
SB-395	C44400	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	45	15	...	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	3.5	...	...
SB-395	C44500	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	45	15	...	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	3.5	...	...
SB-171	C44300	Plates, ≤ 4 in.	...	32	NFC-2	45	15	...	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	3.5	...	...
SB-171	C44400	Plates, ≤ 4 in.	...	32	NFC-2	45	15	...	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	3.5	...	...
SB-171	C44500	Plates, ≤ 4 in.	...	32	NFC-2	45	15	...	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	3.5	...	...
Naval Brass																	
SB-171	C46400	Plates, ≤ 3 in.	...	32	NFC-2	50	20	...	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	6.3	2.5	...	...
Copper-Nickel																	
SB-111	C70600	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-3	40	15	...	8.0	8.0	7.9	7.6	7.3	7.1	6.9	6.7	6.6
SB-111	C71000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-3	45	16	...	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0
SB-111	C71500	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-4	52	18	...	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.3	10.1	9.9
SB-171	C70600	Plates, ≤ 5 in.	...	34	NFC-3	40	15	...	8.0	8.0	7.9	7.6	7.3	7.1	6.9	6.7	6.6
SB-171	C71500	Plates, ≤ 2½ in.	...	34	NFC-4	50	20	...	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0
SB-395	C70600	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-3	40	15	...	8.0	8.0	7.9	7.6	7.3	7.1	6.9	6.7	6.6
SB-395	C71000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-3	45	16	...	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0
SB-395	C71500	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-4	52	18	...	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.4	10.3	10.1	9.9
SB-466	C70600	Pipe & Tube	Annealed	34	NFC-3	38	13	...	7.6	7.6	7.5	7.2	6.9	6.7	6.5	6.4	6.3
SB-466	C71000	Pipe & Tube	Annealed	34	NFC-3	45	16	...	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0
SB-466	C71500	Pipe & Tube	Annealed	34	NFC-4	52	18	...	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	9.9
Nickel-Copper																	
SB-164	N04400	Bar	Hot or Cold Worked, Annealed	42	NFN-3	70	25	(6)	14.0	14.0	14.0	14.0	13.6	13.3	13.2	13.1	13.1
SB-164	N04400	Rounds	Hot Worked (As Worked or Stress Relieved)	42	NFN-3	80	40	(6)	16.0	16.0	16.0	16.0	16.0	16.0	16.0	16.0	16.0
SB-165	N04400	Smls. Pipe & Tube, 5 in. O.D. max.	Annealed	42	NFN-3	70	28	(6)	14.0	14.0	14.0	14.0	14.0	14.0	14.0	14.0	14.0
SB-165	N04400	Smls. Pipe & Tube, Over 5 in. O.D.	Annealed	42	NFN-3	70	25	(6)	14.0	14.0	14.0	14.0	13.6	13.3	13.2	13.1	13.1

TABLE HF-300.2
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR NONFERROUS MATERIALS, ksi (CONT'D)
(multiply by 1000 to obtain psi)

Spec. No.	Alloy Designation UNS No.	Product Form	Class/Condition/Temper	P-No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi	Note(s)	Maximum Allowable Stress Value, ksi Up To 100°F	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500
Nickel-Copper (Cont'd)																	
SB-165	N04400	Smls. Pipe & Tube, All Sizes	Stress Relieved	42	NFN-3	85	55	(6)	17.0	17.0	17.0	17.0	17.0	17.0	17.0	17.0	17.0
Integrally Finned Tubes																	
SB-359	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	(7)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Casting, Bronze and Brass																	
SB-61	C92200	Steam or Valve Bronze	...	...	NFN-1	34	16	(8)	5.4	5.4	5.4	5.4	5.4	5.4	4.7	...	...
SB-62	C83600	85-5-5-5 Composition Brass	...	...	NFC-1	30	14	(8)	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	5.8	5.7	5.6	5.5
SB-584	C84400	81-3-7-9 Composition Semi-red Brass	...	...	...	29	13	(8)	4.6	4.6	4.6	4.5	4.3	4.1	4.0	...	...
SB-584	C90300	88-8-0-9 Tin Bronze	...	...	...	40	18	(8)	5.1	5.1	5.1	5.1	5.1	5.1	5.1	...	...
Casting, Bronze, Brass, and Aluminum																	
SB/EN 1706 EN AC4300	AlSi10Mg(a)	Castings	F	...	...	21.8	11.6	(8)(9)	4.6	4.4	4.4	4.3	4.3	3.9	...	...	...
Nickel-Iron-Chromium																	
SB-409	N08810	Plate	Sol. Annealed	45	NFN-9	65	25	(10)	13.0	13.0	13.0	13.0	13.0	13.0	12.9	12.8	12.8
SB-409	N08800	Plate	Annealed	45	NFN-8	75	30	(10)	15.0	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...

NOTES:

(1) When material is to be welded, the phosphorus deoxide types should be specified.

(2) When nonferrous materials conforming to specifications given in Section II are used in welded or brazed construction, the maximum allowable working stresses shall not exceed the values given herein for the material in the annealed condition.

(3) For use in HG-307.2(b) eq. (2), the maximum allowable stress at room temperature (100°F, max.) shall be 10.0 ksi (through 1½ in. thickness) and 9.2 ksi (over 1½ in. thickness).

(4) No welding or brazing permitted.

(5) Copper-silicon alloys are not always suitable when exposed to certain median and high temperatures, particularly steam above 212°F. Therefore this material is limited to the construction of hot water boilers to be operated at a temperature not to exceed 200°F.

(6) To be used for HLW connections only.

(7) Use in accordance with HF-204 and HF-204.1.

(8) The stress value includes a casting quality factor of 0.80. Increased casting quality factors as a result of material examination beyond the requirement of the material specification shall not be permitted. This is not intended to apply to valves and fittings made to recognized standards.

(9) The maximum water temperature shall not exceed 200°F.

(10) The maximum water temperature shall not exceed 210°F.

07

TABLE HF-300.2M
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR NONFERROUS MATERIALS, MPa

Spec. No.	Alloy Designation UNS No.	Product Form	Class/Condition/Temper	P-No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, MPa	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, MPa	Note(s)	Maximum Allowable Stress Value, MPa Up To 40°C	65	100	125	150	175	200	225	250
Aluminum Bronze																	
SB-111	C60800	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	35	NFC-2	345	131	...	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.4	65.8	...	...
Copper																	
SB-42	C10200	Pipe	Annealed/061	31	NFC-1	205	62	(1)	41.4	35.0	33.4	32.9	32.3	27.8	21.7	...	...
SB-42	C10200	Pipe	Hard Drawn/H80 - ⅛ in. to 2 in. NPS, incl.	31	NFC-4	310	275	(2)(1)	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	60.3	57.1	36.3	...	...
SB-42	C10200	Pipe	Light Drawn/H55 - 2½ in. to 12 in. NPS, incl.	31	NFC-3	250	205	(2)(1)	49.6	49.6	49.6	49.6	48.1	46.9	45.7	...	...
SB-75	C10200	Smls. Tubes	Annealed/050/060	31	NFC-1	205	62	(1)	41.4	35.0	33.4	32.9	32.3	27.8	21.7	...	...
SB-75	C10200	Smls. Tubes	Light Drawn/H55	31	NFC-3	250	205	(2)(1)	49.6	49.6	49.6	49.6	48.1	46.9	45.7	...	...
SB-75	C10200	Smls. Tubes	Hard Drawn/H80	31	NFC-4	310	275	(2)(1)	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	60.3	57.1	36.3	...	...
SB-111	C10200	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Light Drawn/H55	31	NFC-6	250	205	(1)	49.6	49.6	49.6	49.6	48.1	46.9	45.7	...	...
SB-111	C10200	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Hard Drawn/H80	31	NFC-4	310	275	(1)	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	60.3	57.1	36.3	...	...
SB-152	C10200	Plate, Sheet, Strip, & Bar	Hot Rolled/025, Annealed	31	NFC-1	205	70	(1)	41.4	38.9	37.1	35.7	34.1	27.8	21.7	...	...
SB-283	C37700	Forging Brass	As Forged/M10/M11	...	...	315	105	(3)(4)	63.4	63.4	61.3	...	...	...	...	...	...
SB-395	C10200	Smls. Tubes	Light Drawn/H55	31	NFC-6	250	205	(2)(1)	49.6	49.6	49.6	49.6	48.1	46.9	45.7	...	...
Copper-Silicon																	
SB-96	C65500	Plate & Sheet	Annealed/061	33	NFC-2	345	125	(5)	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	35.3	27.1	...	...
SB-98	C65500	Rods	Soft Anneal/060	33	...	360	105	(5)	68.9	68.6	68.0	67.4	66.7	35.3	27.1	...	...
SB-98	C65500	Rods	Quarter Hard/H01	33	...	380	165	(5)	75.8	75.8	75.8	75.8	75.8	58.4	29.2	...	...
SB-98	C65100	Rods	Soft Anneal/060	33	...	275	83	(5)	55.2	54.3	54.3	54.3	54.1	35.3	27.1	...	...
SB-98	C65100	Rods	Half Hard/H02	33	...	380	140	(5)	75.8	75.8	75.8	75.8	75.8	58.4	29.2	...	...
SB-315	C65500	Pipe & Tube	Annealed/030/061	33	NFC-2	345	105	(5)	68.9	68.6	68.0	67.4	66.7	35.3	27.1	...	...
Red Brass																	
SB-43	C23000	Smls. Pipe	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	275	83	...	55.2	55.1	55.1	55.1	55.1	50.0	36.3	...	...
SB-111	C23000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	275	83	...	55.2	55.1	55.1	55.1	55.1	50.0	36.3	...	...
SB-395	C23000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	275	83	...	55.2	55.1	55.1	55.1	55.1	50.0	36.3	...	...

TABLE HF-300.2M
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR NONFERROUS MATERIALS, MPa (CONT'D)

Spec. No.	Alloy Designation UNS No.	Product Form	Class/Condition/Temper	P-No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, MPa	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, MPa	Note(s)	Maximum Allowable Stress Value, MPa: Up To 40°C	65	100	125	150	175	200	225	250
Admiralty																	
SB-395	C44300	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	310	105	...	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	27.7	...	...
SB-395	C44400	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	310	105	...	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	27.7	...	...
SB-395	C44500	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	32	NFC-2	310	105	...	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	27.7	...	...
SB-171	C44300	Plates, ≤ 100 mm	...	32	NFC-2	310	105	...	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	27.7	...	...
SB-171	C44400	Plates, ≤ 100 mm	...	32	NFC-2	310	105	...	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	27.7	...	...
SB-171	C44500	Plates, ≤ 100 mm	...	32	NFC-2	310	105	...	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	27.7	...	...
Naval Brass																	
SB-171	C46400	Plates, ≤ 75 mm	...	32	NFC-2	345	140	...	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	45.4	19.9	...	...
Copper-Nickel																	
SB-111	C70600	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-3	275	105	...	55.2	55.2	54.0	52.1	50.3	48.8	47.5	46.5	45.7
SB-111	C71000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-3	310	110	...	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1
SB-111	C71500	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-4	360	125	...	71.7	71.7	71.7	71.7	71.7	71.7	71.4	70.1	68.9
SB-171	C70600	Plates, ≤ 125 mm	...	34	NFC-3	275	105	...	55.2	55.2	54.0	52.1	50.3	48.8	47.5	46.5	45.7
SB-171	C71500	Plates, ≤ 64 mm	...	34	NFC-4	360	140	...	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9
SB-395	C70600	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-3	275	105	...	55.2	55.2	54.0	52.1	50.3	48.8	47.5	46.5	45.7
SB-395	C71000	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-3	310	110	...	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1
SB-395	C71500	Smls. Condenser Tubes	Annealed/061	34	NFC-4	360	125	...	71.7	71.7	71.7	71.7	71.7	71.7	71.4	70.1	68.9
SB-466	C70600	Pipe & Tube	Annealed	34	NFC-3	260	90	...	52.4	52.4	51.3	49.5	47.8	46.3	45.1	44.2	43.5
SB-466	C71000	Pipe & Tube	Annealed	34	NFC-3	310	110	...	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1	62.1
SB-466	C71500	Pipe & Tube	Annealed	34	NFC-4	345	125	...	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9	68.9
Nickel-Copper																	
SB-164	N04400	Bar	Hot or Cold Worked, Annealed	42	NFN-3	485	170	(6)	96.5	96.5	96.5	96.2	93.6	91.9	90.9	90.4	90.4
SB-164	N04400	Rounds	Hot Worked (As Worked or Stress Relieved)	42	NFN-3	550	275	(6)	110	110	110	110	110	110	110	110	110
SB-165	N04400	Smls. Pipe & Tube, 125 mm O.D. max.	Annealed	42	NFN-3	485	195	(6)	96.5	96.5	96.5	96.5	96.5	96.5	96.5	96.5	96.5
SB-165	N04400	Smls. Pipe & Tube, Over 125 mm O.D.	Annealed	42	NFN-3	485	170	(6)	96.5	96.5	96.5	96.2	93.6	91.9	90.9	90.4	90.4
SB-165	N04400	Smls. Pipe & Tube, All sizes	Stress Relieved	42	NFN-3	585	380	(6)	117	117	117	117	117	117	117	117	117

TABLE HF-300.2M
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR NONFERROUS MATERIALS, MPa (CONT'D)

Spec. No.	Alloy Designation UNS No.	Product Form	Class/Condition/Temper	P-No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, MPa	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, MPa	Note(s)	Maximum Allowable Stress Value, MPa Up To 40°C	65	100	125	150	175	200	225	250
Integrally Finned Tubes																	
SB-359	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	(7)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Casting, Bronze and Brass																	
SB-61	C92200	Steam or Valve Bronze	...	...	NFN-1	235	110	(8)	37.5	37.5	37.5	37.5	37.5	37.5	33.4	...	...
SB-62	C83600	85-5-5-5 Composition Brass	...	...	NFC-1	205	97	(8)	41.4	41.4	41.4	41.4	41.3	40.2	39.2	...	...
SB-584	C84400	81-3-7-9 Composition Semi-red Brass	...	...	...	200	90	(8)	32.0	32.0	31.9	30.6	29.3	28.3	27.7	...	...
SB-584	C90300	88-8-0-9 Tin Bronze	...	...	...	275	125	(8)	35.3	35.3	35.3	35.3	35.3	35.3	35.3	...	...
Casting, Bronze, Brass, and Aluminum																	
SB/EN 1706 EN AC4300	AlSi10Mg(a)	Castings	F	...	...	150.0	80.6	(8)(9)	24.0	24.0	24.0	24.0	24.0	...	...	...	...
Nickel-Iron-Chromium																	
SB-409	N08810	Plate	Sol. Annealed	45	NFN-9	450	170	(10)	89.6	89.6	89.6	89.6	89.6	89.6	89.2	88.7	88.3
SB-409	N08800	Plate	Annealed	45	NFN-8	520	210	(10)	103	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...

NOTES:
(1) When material is to be welded, the phosphorus deoxidized types should be specified.
(2) When nonferrous materials conforming to specifications given in Section II are used in welded or brazed construction, the maximum allowable working stresses shall not exceed the values given herein for the material in the annealed condition.
(3) For use in HG-307.2(b) eq.(2), the maximum allowable stress at room temperature (40°C, max.) shall be 68.9 MPa (through 38 mm thickness) and 63.4 MPa (over 38 mm thickness).
(4) No welding or brazing permitted.
(5) Copper-silicon alloys are not always suitable when exposed to certain median and high temperatures, particularly steam above 100°C. Therefore this material is limited to the construction of hot water boilers to be operated at a temperature not to exceed 93°C.
(6) To be used for HLW connections only.
(7) Use in accordance with HF-204 and HF-204.1.
(8) The stress value includes a casting quality factor of 0.80. Increased casting quality factors as a result of material examination beyond the requirement of the material specification shall not be permitted. This is not intended to apply to valves and fittings made to recognized standards.
(9) The maximum water temperature shall not exceed 93°C.
(10) The maximum water temperature shall not exceed 96°C.

TABLE HF-301.1 MINIMUM ALLOWABLE THICKNESS OF FERROUS SHELL PLATES

Diameter or Width of Shell, Tubesheet, or Head, in. (mm)	Minimum Ferrous Material Thickness Allowable Under Rules, in. (mm)	
	Tubesheet or Head With Rolled Tubes	Shell Plate
42 (1 050) or under	$\frac{5}{16}$ (8)	$\frac{1}{4}$ (6) [Note (1)]
Over 42 to 60 (1 050 to 1 500)	$\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)	$\frac{5}{16}$ (8)
Over 60 to 78 (1 500 to 1 950)	$\frac{7}{16}$ (11)	$\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)
Over 78 (1 950)	$\frac{1}{2}$ (13)	$\frac{7}{16}$ (11)

NOTE:

(1) Shell plate $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) thickness is permissible for cylindrical shells 24 in. (600 mm) in diameter or less, and for a maximum allowable working pressure not over 30 psi (207 kPa).

TABLE HF-301.2 MINIMUM ALLOWABLE THICKNESS OF NONFERROUS SHELL PLATES

Diameter or Width of Shell, Tubesheet, or Head, in. (mm) [Note (1)]	Minimum Nonferrous Material Thickness Allowable Under Rules, in. (mm)			
	Tubesheet or Head		Shell Plate	
	Copper, Admiralty, and Red Brass	Copper–Nickel Alloy	Copper, Admiralty, and Red Brass	Copper–Nickel Alloy
24 (600) or under	$\frac{3}{16}$ (5.0) [Note (2)]	$\frac{5}{32}$ (4.0) [Note (2)]	$\frac{1}{8}$ (3.0)	$\frac{3}{32}$ (2.5)
Over 24 to 36 (600 to 900)	$\frac{1}{4}$ (6.0) [Note (2)]	$\frac{3}{16}$ (5.0) [Note (2)]	$\frac{3}{16}$ (5.0)	$\frac{1}{8}$ (3.0)
Over 36 to 42 (900 to 1 050)	$\frac{5}{16}$ (8.0)	$\frac{1}{4}$ (6.0) [Note (2)]	$\frac{1}{4}$ (6.0)	$\frac{3}{16}$ (5.0)
Over 42 to 60 (1 050 to 1 500)	$\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)	$\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)	$\frac{5}{16}$ (8.0)	$\frac{5}{16}$ (8.0)
Over 60 to 78 (1 500 to 1 950)	$\frac{7}{16}$ (11.0)	$\frac{7}{16}$ (11.0)	$\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)	$\frac{3}{8}$ (9.5)
Over 78 (1 950)	$\frac{1}{2}$ (13.0)	$\frac{1}{2}$ (13.0)	$\frac{7}{16}$ (11.0)	$\frac{7}{16}$ (11.0)

NOTES:

(1) For the purpose of applying Tables HF-301.1 and HF-301.2 to a noncylindrical boiler, the equivalent shell diameter shall be taken as the width of the unsupported portion of any plate, measured before stays are installed.

(2) See HF-301.2(c).

PART HF — SUBPART HW REQUIREMENTS FOR BOILERS FABRICATED BY WELDING

ARTICLE 4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

HW-400 SCOPE

The requirements of this Subpart HW are applicable to boilers and parts thereof that are fabricated by welding.

HW-401 RESPONSIBILITY OF MANUFACTURER OR CONTRACTOR

Each manufacturer or contractor is responsible for the welding done by his organization and shall establish the procedures and conduct the tests required in Section IX to qualify the welding procedures he uses in the construction of the weldments built under Section IV and the performance tests of welders and welding operators who apply these procedures.

It should be noted that the use of standard welding procedures is acceptable. All requirements for the use of these procedures shall be in accordance with Section IX. The use of these procedures shall be addressed in the manufacturer's or contractor's Quality Control Manual and shall be available for review by the Authorized Inspector.

ARTICLE 5
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

HW-500 PERMISSIBLE MATERIALS

Materials used in welded construction of pressure parts shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those for which allowable stress values are given in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2 and for which weld group P-Numbers are assigned in Section IX.

(a) Carbon or alloy steel having a carbon content of more than 0.35% shall not be used in welded construction or be shaped by oxygen cutting or other thermal cutting processes.

(b) Stud material for arc stud welding and resistance stud welding of carbon steel shall be low carbon steel of an acceptable material in this Section and with a carbon maximum of 0.27% and with a minimum tensile strength of 60,000 psi (400 MPa). See further limits in HW-730.4 and HW-820.

(c) Materials joined by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes shall be limited to materials assigned P-Numbers in Section IX and shall not include rimmed or semikilled steel.

HW-501 MATERIALS OF DIFFERENT SPECIFICATIONS

Two materials of different specifications may be joined by welding provided the requirements of QW-251.2 of Section IX are met.

HW-502 MATERIALS FOR SMALL PARTS

Small parts used in welded construction under the provisions of HF-203.1 shall be of good weldable quality.

ARTICLE 6
WELDING PROCESSES AND QUALIFICATIONS

HW-600 WELDING PROCESSES

The welding processes that may be used under this Part shall meet all the requirements of Section IX and are restricted to the following:

(a) arc or gas welding processes are restricted to shielded metal arc, submerged arc, gas metal arc, gas tungsten arc, plasma arc, atomic hydrogen metal arc, laser beam, electronic beam, and oxyfuel gas welding

(b) pressure welding processes are restricted to flash, induction, resistance, pressure thermit, pressure gas, and inertia and continuous drive friction welding

(c) definitions are given in Section IX that include variations of these processes

HW-610 WELDING QUALIFICATIONS

Unless specified otherwise for a particular process, the procedures, the welders, and the welding operators used in welding pressure parts and in joining nonpressure parts (attachments) to pressure parts shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX. When the welding process attaching non-pressure parts that have essentially no load-carrying function (such as extended heat transfer surfaces) is automatic, procedure and performance qualification testing is not required.

HW-611 NO PRODUCTION WORK WITHOUT QUALIFICATIONS

No production work shall be undertaken until the procedures, the welders, and the welding operators have been qualified, except that performance qualification by radiography, in conformance with Section IX, QW-304 for welders or QW-305 for welding operators, may be performed within the first 3 ft (1 m) of the first production weld.

HW-612 INTERCHANGE OF QUALIFYING TESTS AMONG MANUFACTURERS PROHIBITED

The performance qualification tests for welders and welding operators conducted by one manufacturer or contractor shall not qualify a welder or welding operator to do work for any other manufacturer or contractor.

HW-613 MAINTENANCE OF RECORDS OF QUALIFICATIONS AND IDENTIFYING MARKS

The Manufacturer or contractor shall maintain qualification records of the welding procedures, welders, and welding operators employed by him showing the date and results of test and the identification mark assigned to each welder. These records shall be certified to by the Manufacturer or contractor by signature or some other method of control in accordance with the Manufacturer's quality control system, and be accessible to the Inspector. The welder or welding operator shall stamp his identification mark on or adjacent to all welded joints made by him at intervals of not greater than 3 ft (1 m), or the Manufacturer shall keep a record of the welded joints on a vessel and the welders and welding operators used in making the joints.

ARTICLE 7
DESIGN OF WELDMENTS

HW-700 DESIGN OF WELDED JOINTS

HW-701 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

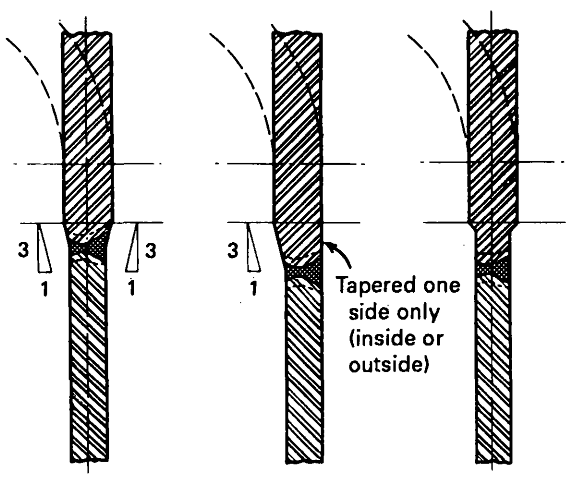
All welds, fillet or full penetration, shall be made to a qualified welding procedure by qualified welders for each welding process employed (manual, semiautomatic, automatic), in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section IX to assure satisfactory penetration and fusion into the base metal to the root of the weld. All members, prior to being welded, shall be properly fitted, aligned, and retained in position in accordance with the procedure specification for the welding procedure to be used.

HW-701.1 Butt Joints. Longitudinal, circumferential, and other joints uniting plates of a drum, shell, or other pressure parts, except as provided in HW-701.1, HW-701.2, HW-701.3, HW-710, HW-711, and HW-712, shall be butt joints. A butt joint shall be double-welded butt or may have filler metal added from one side only, provided the weld penetration is complete and there is reinforcement on both sides of the joint. There shall be no valley either on the edge or in the center of the joint and the weld shall be so built up that the weld metal shall present a gradual increase in thickness from the surface of the plate to the center of the weld. At no point shall the plate on one side of the joint be offset with the plate on the other side of joint in excess of the alignment tolerance in HW-812 except as provided in HW-715(a)(2).

(a) A tapered transition section having a length not less than three times the offset between the adjoining surfaces as shown in Fig. HW-701.1, shall be provided at joints between materials that differ in thickness by more than one-fourth of the thickness of the thinner material or by more than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3.0 mm). The transition section may be formed by any process that will provide a uniform taper. The weld may be partly or entirely in the tapered section or adjacent to it as indicated in Fig. HW-701.1. The transition requirement also applies when there is a reduction in thickness within a cylindrical shell course and to tapers within formed heads. In longitudinal shell joints, the middle lines of the adjoining thicknesses shall be in alignment within the fabricating tolerances specified in HW-812.

(b) Where fusion welded steel plate boilers are made up of two or more courses, the welded longitudinal joints of adjacent courses shall be not less than 6 in. (150 mm) apart.

FIG. HW-701.1 BUTT WELDING OF PLATES OF UNEQUAL THICKNESS



HW-701.2 Lap Joints

(a) Boilers designed for not more than 30 psi (200 kPa) and having inside diameters not exceeding 24 in. (600 mm) I.D. may have longitudinal or circumferential joints uniting plates of a shell made with lap joints, provided the joint is not in direct contact with the products of combustion.

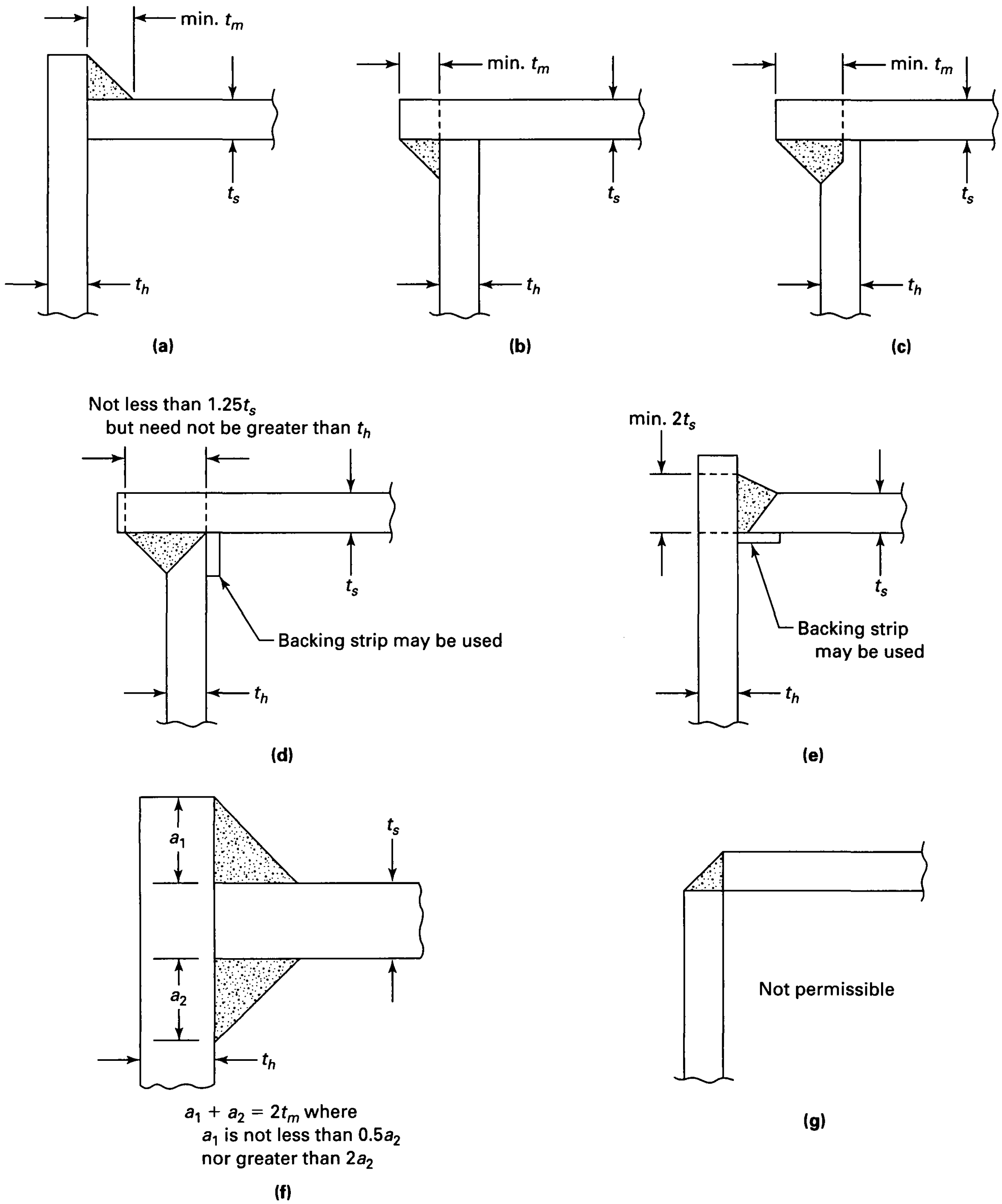
(b) For boilers over 30 psi (200 kPa) or 24 in. (600 mm) I.D., lap joints may be used only where stayed plates are joined, where a cylindrical shell and a stayed wrapper are joined, or as permitted in HW-711.

(c) Except as permitted in HW-701.4 and HW-711, lap joints shall be full fillet welded inside and outside and the throats of the fillet welds shall be not less than 0.7 times the thickness of the thinner plate. The surface overlap shall be not less than 4 times the thickness of the thinner plate.

HW-701.3 Corner or Tee Joints

(a) Boilers designed for not more than 30 psi (200 kPa) may have the corner or tee joints made with single full fillet welds. The throat of the fillet weld shall be not less than 0.7 times the thickness of the thinner plate joined [see Fig. HW-701.3, sketches (a), (b), and (c)].

FIG. HW-701.3 SOME FORMS OF ATTACHMENTS OF PRESSURE PARTS TO FLAT PLATES TO FORM A CORNER JOINT (TEE JOINT)



t_h = nominal head thickness
t_m = lesser of t_s or t_h
t_s = nominal shell thickness

GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Illustrations (a), (b), and (c) are permissible for boilers for pressures up to 30 psi (200 kPa).

(b) Illustrations (d), (e), or (f) are required for boilers designed for pressures over 30 psi (200 kPa).

(c) Illustration (g) is not permissible.

(b) Hot water boilers designed to these rules for pressures in excess of 30 psi (200 kPa) shall have corner or tee joints made only with full penetration welds [see Fig. HW-701.3, sketches (d) and (e)] or double full fillet welds [see Fig. HW-701.3, sketch (f)].

HW-701.4 Single Fillet Joints for Lap Attachment of U-Bend Tubes. Tubes bent to a nominal 180 deg to form a U-bend may be attached to headers by fillet welds provided

(a) the header is not larger than NPS 3 (DN 80)

(b) the maximum thickness of the parts being joined is $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm)

(c) the tubes are inserted, coaxially with a forced fit for a minimum distance of 1.5 times the minimum thickness of the parts being joined, into the end of the header and are attached by fillet welds

(d) the fillet welds are deposited from the outside only with one leg not smaller than the thickness of the header and the other leg not smaller than 1.3 times the thickness of the thinnest part being joined, and

(e) the fillet weld shall not be in contact with primary furnace gasses

HW-702 JOINT EFFICIENCIES

The following joint efficiencies E are to be used in e., HG-301 and HG-305 for joints completed by an arc or gas welding process:

(a) $E = 85\%$ for full penetration butt joints as attained by double welding or by other means that will obtain the same quality of deposited weld metal on the inside and outside weld surfaces, to provide complete joint penetration and assurance that the weld grooves are completely filled (HW-701.1). Welds that use metal backing strips that remain in place are excluded.

(b) $E = 80\%$ for full penetration single-welded butt joints with backing strips other than those included in (a) above.

(c) $E = 60\%$ for single-welded butt joints without use of backing strips.

(d) $E = 65\%$ for double full fillet lap joints meeting the requirements of HW-701.2(b).

(e) $E = 49\%$ for double full fillet lap joints meeting the requirements of HW-701.2(a).

HW-702.1 Joint Efficiencies for External Pressure Design. Joint efficiency E factors are not required to be used when the boiler part is designed for external pressure only.

HW-703 MINIMUM THICKNESS OF WELDED PARTS

The minimum thicknesses specified in HF-301 and Tables HF-301.1 and *HF*-301.2 apply if greater than the thicknesses calculated utilizing the above listed joint efficiency factors with formulas of this Section.

HW-710 WELDED STAYS

HW-710.1 Insertion of Stays. Except as provided in HW-710.4 and HW-710.5, the stays are to be inserted through holes having a maximum gap around the periphery of the stay of $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm). The size of the weld in shear, measured parallel to that portion of the stay in or extended through the plate, shall be not less than $\frac{5}{16}$ times the required diameter of the stay and in no case less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm). For a stay with other than circular cross section, the minimum size of the weld shall be that calculated for a circular stay of the same cross-sectional area. To provide for the above specified welding, the plate may be countersunk by machining or pressing, or the stay may protrude through the plates, or a combination of those methods may be used. The end of the stay shall not be covered by weld metal and shall not be below the surface of the plate.

HW-710.2 Projection of Stays Exposed to Products of Combustion. The ends of stays inserted through plates shall not project more than $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) beyond surfaces exposed to the products of combustion.

HW-710.3 Fit-Up and Welding of Stays. The fit-up and welding shall be such that excessive weld deposits do not project beyond the surface of the plate at the root of the weld.

HW-710.4 Welding of Diagonal Stays. Diagonal stays shall be attached to the inner surface of the shell, but not to a head or tubesheet, by fillet welds only provided the following [see Figs. HW-710.4(a) and HW-710.4(b)]:

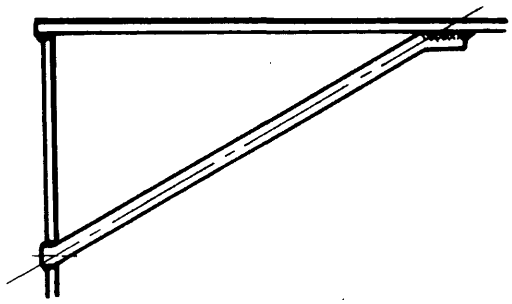
(a) Fillet welds shall be not less than $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) size and shall continue the full length of each side of the portion of the stay in contact with the shell. The product of the aggregate length of these fillet welds times their throat shall be not less than 1.25 times the required cross-sectional area of the stay. A fillet weld across the end of the stay is optional but shall not be credited in calculating the required area of fillet welds.

(b) The longitudinal center line of the stay (projected if necessary) shall intersect the surface of the plate to which the stay is attached within the outer boundaries of the attaching welds (also projected if necessary).

(c) Diagonal stays shall, for boilers designed for not more than 30 psi (200 kPa) pressure, comply with the requirements of HW-710.1, HW-710.2, and HW-710.3 and shall, for boilers designed for pressures in excess of 30 psi (200 kPa), comply with the requirements of HW-710.5.

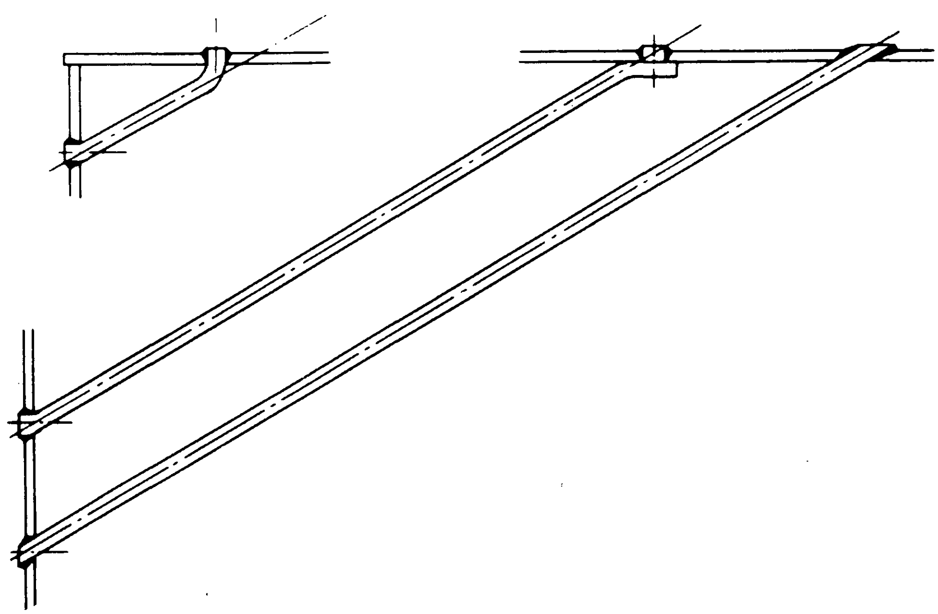
HW-710.5 For Pressures in Excess of 30 psi (200 kPa). The stays shall be inserted into holes countersunk in the sheet except as provided in HW-710.4, and shall be attached by full penetration welds.

FIG. HW-710.4(a) SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF DIAGONAL STAYS FOR INSTALLATION BY WELDING



GENERAL NOTE: A round bar or a round bar with a forged palm

FIG. HW-710.4(b) UNACCEPTABLE TYPES OF DIAGONAL STAYS FOR INSTALLATION BY WELDING



HW-711 HEADS OR TUBESHEETS ATTACHED BY WELDING

HW-711.1 Flanged Heads or Tubesheets. Boilers may be constructed by attaching an outwardly or inwardly flanged head or tubesheet to the shell by fillet welding provided

(a) the head or tubesheet is supported by tubes, or braces, or both

(b) the joint attaching an outwardly flanged head or tubesheet is wholly within the shell and forms no part thereof

(c) inwardly flanged heads or tubesheets are full fillet welded inside and outside

(d) the throats of the full fillet welds are not less than 0.7 times the thickness of the head or tubesheet

(e) on inwardly flanged heads or tubesheets, the minimum length of the straight flange shall conform with the requirements of HW-701.2

(f) the shell at the weld is not in contact with primary furnace gases

(g) these constructions shall not be used on the rear head of a horizontal-return tubular boiler, and inwardly flanged heads or tubesheets shall not be used on a boiler with an extended shell

HW-711.2 Unflanged Heads or Tubesheets. Boilers may be constructed by attaching unflanged heads or tubesheets to the shell by welding, provided

(a) the head or tubesheet is supported by tubes or braces, or both, as required by HG-340, or its thickness is calculated using the appropriate formula from HG-307

(b) the welding for boilers designed for not more than 30 psi (200 kPa) meets the minimum requirements for HW-701.3(a)

(c) the weld for boilers designed for pressure in excess of 30 psi (200 kPa) is a full penetration weld applied from

either or both sides as shown in Fig. HW-701.3, sketch (d) or (e), or a double full fillet weld as shown in Fig. HW-701.3, sketch (f)

(d) the shell or wrapper sheet, where exposed to primary furnace gases and not water cooled, shall not extend beyond the outside face of the head or tubesheet for a distance greater than the thickness of the head or tubesheet

(e) this construction shall not be used on the rear head of a horizontal-return tubular boiler

HW-712 FURNACE ATTACHMENTS

HW-712.1 For Pressures Not More Than 30 psi (200 kPa). A furnace or crown sheet in a boiler designed to these rules for pressures not more than 30 psi (200 kPa) may be attached to a head or tubesheet with a full fillet weld, provided

(a) the furnace shall not extend beyond the outside face of the head or tubesheet for a distance greater than the thickness of the head or tubesheet, unless protected by refractory material; the furnace shall be trimmed to remove any excess material before welding

(b) the throat of the full fillet weld is not less than 0.7 times the thickness of the head or tubesheet

(c) the joint attaching a cylindrical furnace to a head or tubesheet is wholly outside the cylindrical portion of the furnace

HW-712.2 For Pressures in Excess of 30 psi (200 kPa). A furnace or crown sheet in a hot water boiler designed to these rules for pressures in excess of 30 psi (200 kPa) shall be attached to a head or tubesheet, as shown in Fig. HW-701.3, by a full penetration weld, with the furnace or crown sheet extending at least through the full thickness of the head or tubesheet, but when exposed to primary gases, furnace or crown sheet projections shall not extend beyond the face of the plate by more than $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm), unless protected by refractory material.

HW-713 TUBES ATTACHED BY WELDING

(a) The edge of the plate at the tubesheet hole may be beveled or recessed. The depth of any bevel or recess shall not be less than the tube thickness. Where the plate is beveled or recessed, the projection of the tubes beyond the tube sheet shall not exceed a distance equal to the tube thickness, but shall extend at least through the tubesheet.

(b) The maximum and minimum distance the firetube shall extend through the tubesheet shall be in accordance with Table HW-713.

(c) The minimum fillet weld throat plus groove weld depth (if present) shall be no smaller than the tube thickness. For tubes that are not exempt from calculations as stays by HG-346(c), the area of the weld in shear measured parallel to the axis of the tube at the outside diameter of the tube shall additionally not be less than 1.25 times the cross-sectional area of the tube required by HG-342.1.

(d) The above projections do not apply to watertubes; the maximum projection for watertubes is $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm). For attachment of watertubes by welding, see HW-731.

HW-715 HEAD-TO-SHELL ATTACHMENTS

Ellipsoidal, torispherical, hemispherical, and other types of formed heads, concave or convex to the pressure shall have the following requirements as to skirt length.

(a)(1) An ellipsoidal or torispherical head that is attached to a shell by a butt joint need not be provided with a skirt when the nominal head thickness does not exceed $1^1/_4$ times the nominal shell thickness. When the nominal head thickness exceeds $1^1/_4$ times the nominal shell thickness, a skirt shall be provided having a length not less than three times the nominal head thickness or $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm), whichever is smaller. When a skirt is used it shall meet the requirements for shell thickness in HG-301.

(2) Flanged heads concave to pressure may be attached to shells using a butt weld with one plate offset as shown in Fig. HW-715.1 provided the welded joint is not in contact with primary furnace gases. The offset shall be smooth and symmetrical and shall not be machined or otherwise reduced in thickness. There shall be a uniform force fit with the mating section at the root of the weld.

(b) Ellipsoidal or torispherical heads, concave or convex to the pressure, shall have a skirt length not less than that shown in Fig. HW-715.1 provided the welded joint is not in contact with primary furnace gases. Heads that are fitted inside or over a shell shall have a driving fit before welding.

(c) Formed heads of full hemispherical shape, concave to pressure, need not have an integral skirt, but where a skirt is provided for butt welded attachment, the thickness of the skirt shall be at least that required for a seamless cylindrical shell of the same diameter.

(d) Flanged ellipsoidal or torispherical heads convex to pressure may be attached to the shell with a full fillet weld with throat no less than 0.7 times the head thickness. The shell at the weld shall not be in contact with primary furnace gases.

HW-720 OPENINGS IN WELDS

Any type of opening that meets the requirements for reinforcement given in HG-321 may be located in a butt welded joint.

HW-730 WELDED CONNECTIONS

HW-730.1 Strength of Attachment Welds

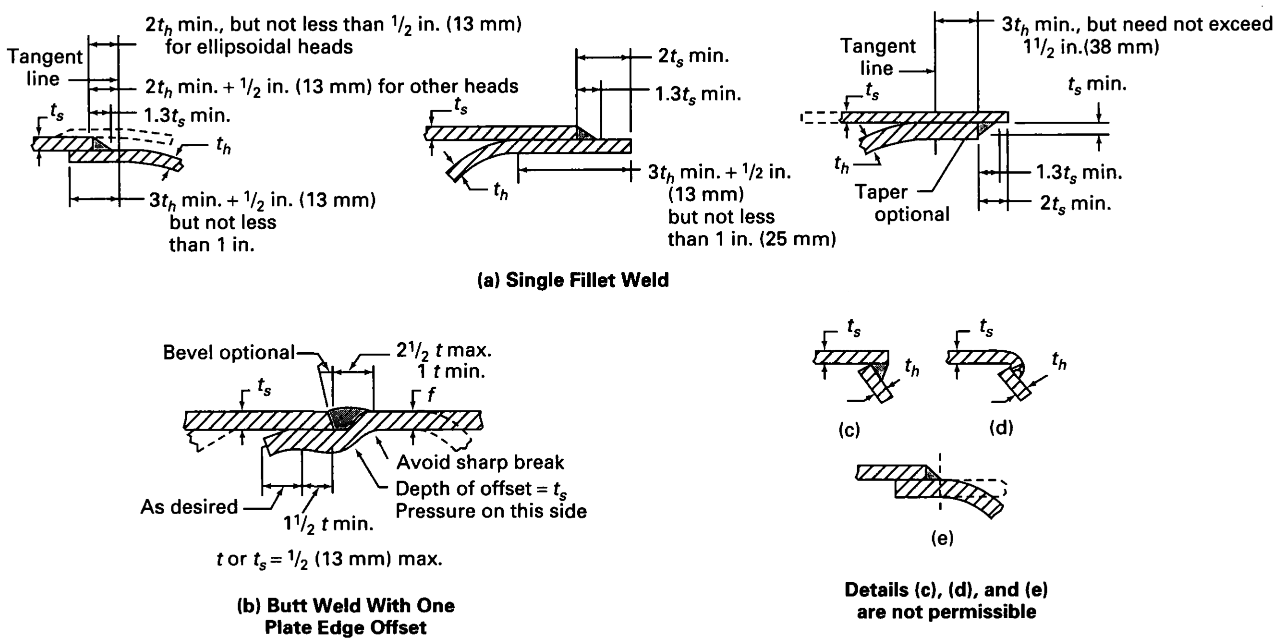
(a) Nozzles, other connections, and their reinforcement may be attached to a boiler by arc or gas welding. Sufficient

TABLE HW-713
FIRETUBE EXTENSION THROUGH TUBESHEETS FOR WELDED CONSTRUCTION

	Tubes Exposed to Primary Furnace Gases [Note (1)]	Tubes Not Exposed to Primary Furnace Gases [Note (1)]
Tubesheet beveled or recessed	min. = the tube shall extend at least through the tubesheet max. = t_{tube}	min. = the tube shall extend at least through the tubesheet max. = greater of t_{tube} or $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm)
Tubesheet not beveled or recessed	min. = t_{tube} max. = greater of t_{tube} or $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm)	min. = t_{tube} max. = greater of t_{tube} or $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm)

NOTE:
(1) See HG-360.2.

FIG. HW-715.1 HEADS ATTACHED TO SHELLS



welding shall be provided on either side of the line through the center of the opening parallel to the longitudinal axis of the shell to develop the strength of the shell as prescribed in HG-327 through shear or tension in the weld, whichever is applicable. The strength of groove welds shall be based on the area subjected to shear or to tension. The strength of fillet welds shall be based on the area subjected to shear, computed on the minimum leg dimension. The inside periphery of fillet weld shall be used in computing its length.

(b) Weld strength calculations for pressure loadings are not required for the following:

(1) nozzle connections made per Fig. HW-731, sketches (a), (b), (c), (g), (h), (o–1), (s–1), (u–1), (v–1), and (w–1)

(2) nozzle connections for openings that are exempt from reinforcement requirements by HG-320.3(c) or HG-320.3(d), and

(3) openings designed in accordance with the rules for ligaments in para. HG-350

HW-730.2 Stress Values for Weld Metal. The allowable stress values for groove and fillet welds and for shear in nozzle necks in percentages of stress values for the vessel material are as follows:

Factor	Percentage of Stress Values, %
Nozzle-wall shear	70
Groove-weld tension	74
Groove-weld shear	60
Fillet-weld shear	49

NOTE: These values are obtained by combining the following factors:87½% for combined end and side loading, 80% for shear strength, and the applicable joint efficiency factors.

HW-730.3 Telltale Holes in Reinforcement Plates and Saddles. Separate reinforcement plates and saddles used to reinforce the material around openings and that are attached to the outside of a boiler shall be provided with at least one telltale hole [maximum size: $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) pipe tap] that may be tapped for a preliminary compressed-air and soapsuds test for tightness of welds that seal off the inside of the boiler. These telltale holes may be left open when the boiler is in service. If the holes are plugged, the plugging material used shall not be capable of sustaining pressure between the plate and the boiler wall.

HW-730.4 Stud Welds. Arc stud welding and resistance stud welding, as defined in E-101, where the boiler pressure exerts a tensile load on the studs, may be used only for the attachments of bolted unstayed flat heads, cover plates and blind flanges, handholes and manholes, with the further limitations as follows:

(a) Studs attached by stud welding shall not be in direct contact with products of combustion or flue gases.

(b) Where the pressure exerts a tensile load on the studs, a full face gasket must be used on flat heads, cover plates and blind flanges attached by stud welding.

(c) The minimum size stud used shall be not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) nominal diameter, and the maximum size shall not exceed $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm) nominal diameter.

(d) The type of stud shall be limited to round externally threaded studs.

(e) Base metal shall be of ferrous material specification as permitted by this Section, and the base metal must be thick enough to prevent burn through. See HW-500(b) for stud material.

(f) The maximum spacing of studs shall not exceed 12 times the nominal diameter of the stud.

(g) The maximum allowable stress for the stud shall be 7800 psi (54 MPa) based on the smallest cross-sectional area (i.e., the root of the thread).

HW-731 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR ATTACHMENT WELDS

HW-731.1 General. The location and minimum size of attachment welds for nozzles and other connections shall conform to the requirements in this paragraph.

(a) Notation. The symbols used in this paragraph and in Fig. HW-731 are defined as follows:

t = nominal thickness of boiler shell or head

t_c = not less than the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) or $0.7\ t_{\min.}$ (inside corner welds may be further limited by a lesser length of projection of nozzle wall beyond the inside face of the boiler wall)

$t_{\min}$ = the smaller of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) or the thickness of the thinner of the parts joined by a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld

t_n = nominal thickness of nozzle wall

t_w = dimension of partial penetration attachment welds (fillet, single-bevel, or single-J), measured as shown in Fig. HW-731

t_1, t_2 = not less than the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) or $0.7t_{\min}$ and $t_1 + t_2$ not less than $1\frac{1}{4}\ t_{\min}$

HW-731.2 Necks Abutting the Boiler Shell

(a) Nozzles abutting the boiler shell shall be attached by a full penetration groove weld. Backing strips shall be used with welds deposited from only one side when the shell thickness is over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) or when complete joint penetration cannot be verified by visual inspection [for example, see Fig. HW-731, sketch (y)].

(b) Nozzles or tubes recessed into thick boiler shells or headers may be welded from only one side by cutting a welding groove in the boiler shell to a depth of not less than t_n on the longitudinal axis of the opening. It is recommended that a recess at least $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) deep be provided at the bottom of the groove in which to center the nozzle. The dimension t_w of the attachment weld shall be not less than t_n or less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) [for example, see Fig. HW-731, sketch (y)].

HW-731.3 Inserted Nozzles Without Added Reinforcement Elements

(a) Nozzles inserted into or through a hole cut in the boiler shell and without additional reinforcement elements shall be attached by a full penetration groove weld or by two partial penetration welds, one on each face of the boiler shell. Permissible types of welds are shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (c) through (h).

(b) Backing strips shall be used with full penetration welds deposited from one side only when the shell thickness is over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) or when complete joint penetration cannot be verified by visual inspection. The two partial penetration welds may be any desired combination of fillet, single-bevel, and single-J welds. The dimension t_w of each weld shall be not less than the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) or $0.7t_{\min}$ and their sum shall be not less than $1\frac{1}{4}\ t_{\min}$ (see Fig. HW-731).

HW-731.4 Inserted Nozzles With Added Reinforcement. Inserted type nozzles having added reinforcement in the form of one or more separate reinforcement plates shall be attached by welds at the nozzle neck periphery and at the outer edge of each reinforcement plate. The weld at the outer edge of each reinforcement plate shall be a fillet weld with a minimum throat dimension of $\frac{1}{2}t_{\min}$. The welds attaching the nozzle to the boiler shell and to the reinforcement shall consist of one of the following combinations:

(a) a single-bevel or single-J weld in the shell plate, and a single-bevel or single-J weld in each reinforcement plate. The dimension t_w of each weld shall be not less than $0.7t_{\min}$ [see Fig. HW-731, sketch (n)].

FIG. HW-731 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS, DRUMS, AND HEADERS

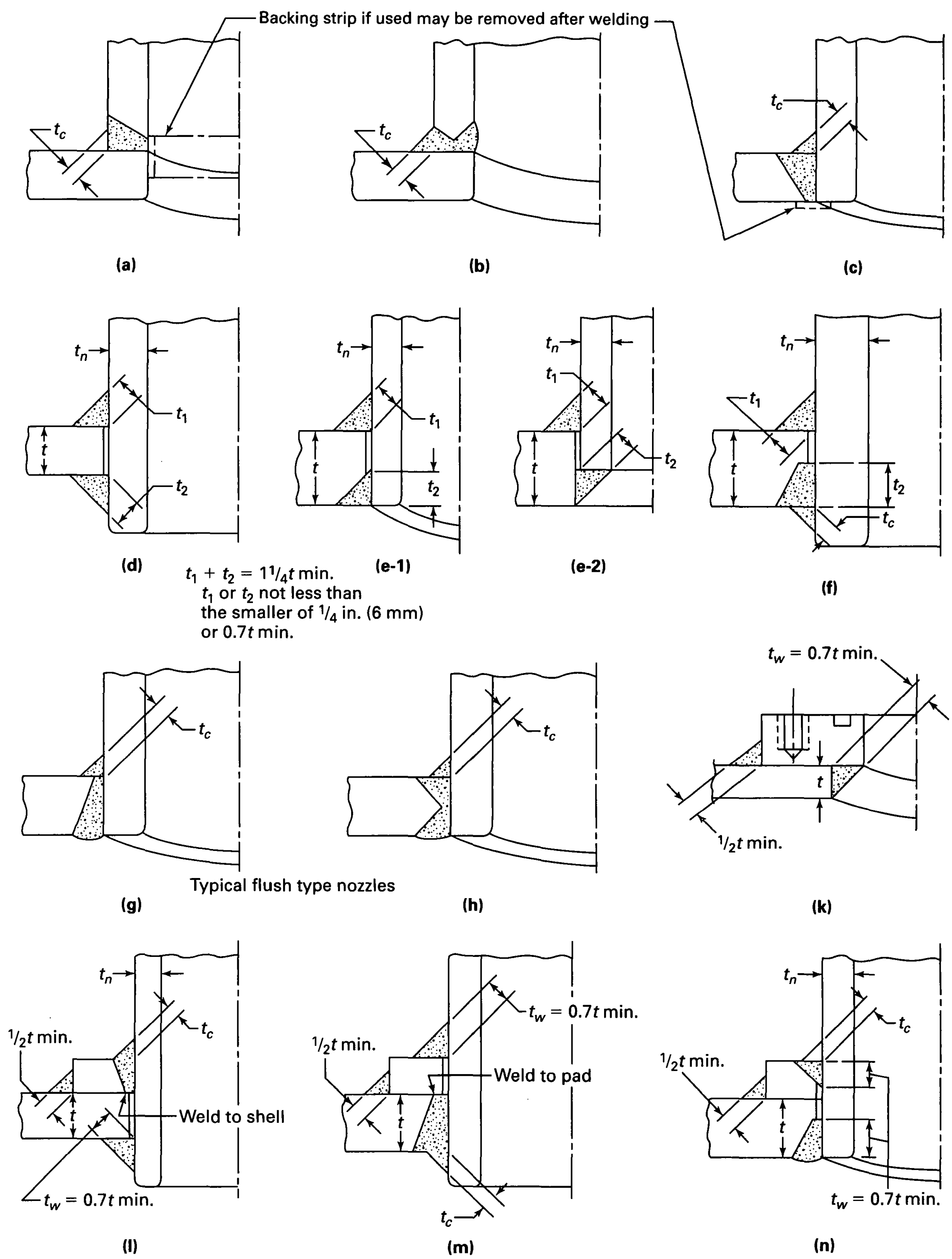
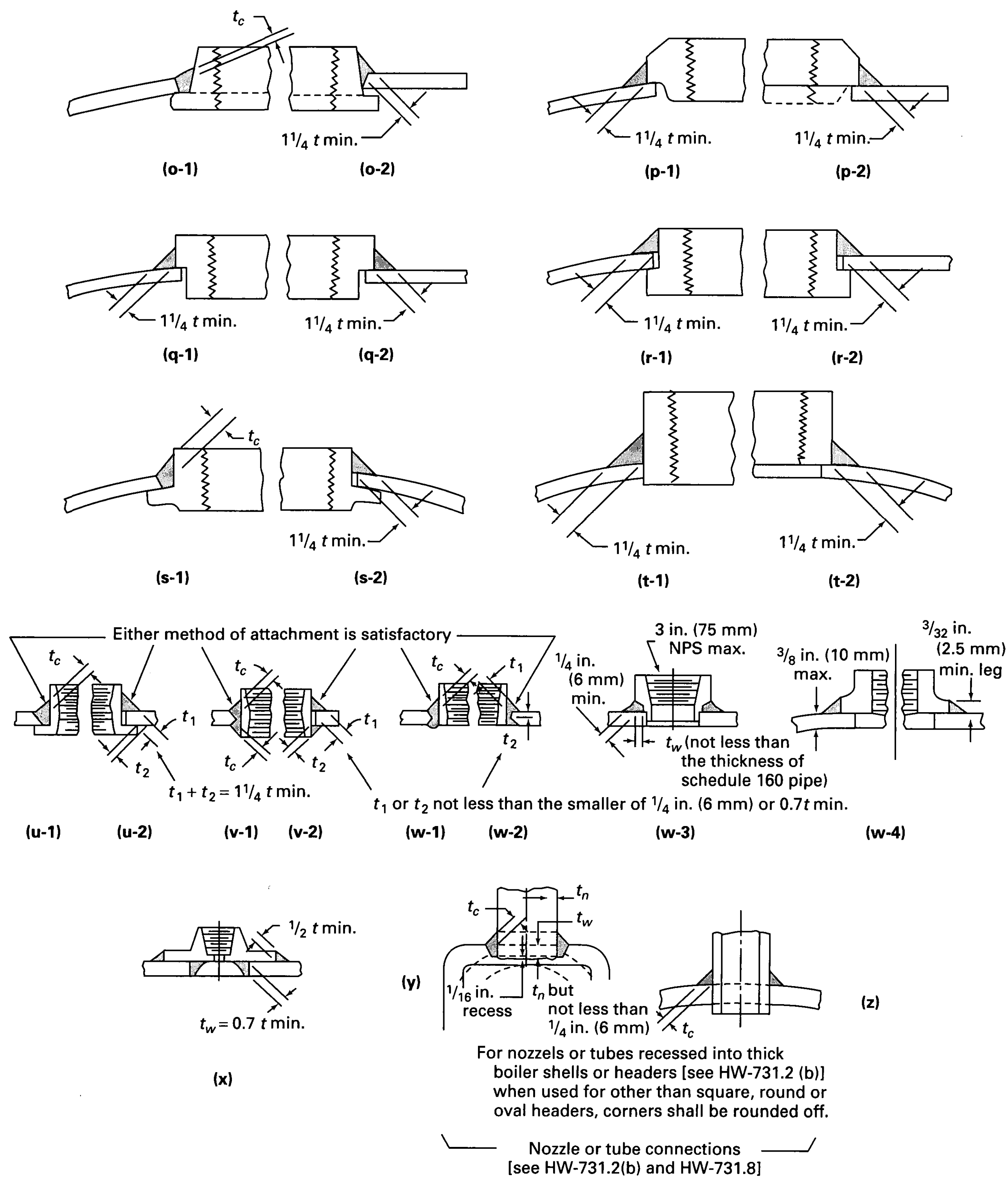


FIG. HW-731 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS, DRUMS, AND HEADERS (CONT'D)



(b) a full penetration groove weld in the shell plate, and a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld with a weld dimension t_w not less than $0.7t_{\min}$ in each reinforcement plate [see Fig. HW-731, sketch (m)].

(c) a full penetration groove weld in each reinforcement plate, and a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld with a weld dimension t_w not less than $0.7t_{\min}$ in the shell plate [see Fig. HW-731, sketch (l)].

HW-731.5 Nozzles With Integral Reinforcement. Nozzles and other connections having integral reinforcement in the form of extended necks or saddle type pads shall be attached by a full penetration weld or by means of a fillet weld along the outer edge and a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld along the inner edge. The throat dimension of the outer weld shall be not less than $\frac{1}{2}t_{\min}$. The dimension t_w of the inner weld shall be not less than $0.7t_{\min}$ [see Fig. HW-731, sketch (k)].

HW-731.6 Fittings. The attachment of fittings shall meet the following requirements.

(a) Except as provided for in HW-731.7, fittings shall be attached by a full penetration groove weld or by two fillet or partial penetration welds, one on each face of the boiler wall. The minimum weld dimensions shall be as shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (u) through (x).

(b) Flange-type fittings not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 80) as shown in Fig. HW-731, sketch (w-4), may be attached without additional reinforcement other than that in the fitting and its attachments, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The boiler wall thickness shall not exceed $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm).

(2) The minimum fillet leg shall be $\frac{3}{32}$ in. (2.5 mm).

(3) The opening in the boiler wall shall not exceed the outside diameter of the nominal pipe plus $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm).

HW-731.7 Fittings and Nozzles Not Exceeding NPS 3 (DN 75)

(a) Fittings, nozzles, or equivalent bolting pads may be attached to vessels having a wall thickness not greater than $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) by a fillet weld deposited from the outside only, having the minimum dimensions shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (o) through (t).

(b) Fittings shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (u-2), (v-2), (w-2), and (x), may be attached by welds that are exempt from size requirements other than those specified in HW-730.1.

(c) Fittings may be attached by a groove and fillet weld from the outside only as shown in Fig. HW-731, sketch (w-3). The groove weld t_w shall not be less than the thickness of Schedule 160 pipe (ANSI B36.10-1979).

(d) Fittings and nozzles not exceeding NPS $1\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 40) as shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (t-1) and (t-2) may be attached to vessels by a fillet weld deposited from the outside only provided the following conditions are met:

(1) The boiler wall thickness shall not exceed $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm).

(2) The fillet weld shall be a minimum of $0.7t$ instead of $1^1/_4t_{\min}$ shown in Fig. HW-731, sketches (t-1) and (t-2), but in no case less than $\frac{3}{32}$ in. (2.5 mm) leg.

HW-731.8 Watertube Attachments. Watertubes not exceeding $3\frac{1}{2}$ in. (89 mm) O.D. may be attached to tubesheets with fillet welds deposited from the outside only, having a minimum weld dimension as shown in Fig. HW-731, sketch (z) [see HG-360.3(d)].

HW-740 RESISTANCE WELDING IN CARBON STEEL FOR OTHER THAN BUTT WELDED JOINTS

Resistance spot and seam welding may be used in the construction of embossed or dimpled assemblies under the following limitations and additional requirements:

(a) Materials used in the resistance welded parts are SA-285 and SA-414 with the further limitation that the carbon content is 0.15 maximum on heat analysis.

(b) Embossed or dimpled assemblies consist of either two embossed plates welded together, or two dimpled plates welded together, or an embossed or dimpled plate welded to a flat plate as in Fig. HW-745 sketch (a). A third, intermediate plate, frame, or series of spacers, as illustrated in Fig. HW-740, sketch (a) or (c), may be used to form a three-ply assembly.

(c) The allowable working pressure for resistance welded embossed or dimpled assemblies shall be the lowest pressure established by the following:

(1) a proof test in accordance with the requirements of HG-500.

(2) the computed value of the plain plate, if used in resistance spot welded construction. The plain plate, if used, shall meet the requirements for braced and stayed surfaces in HG-340.

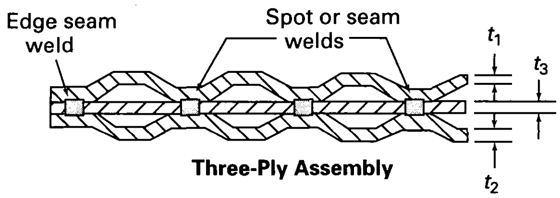
(3) the computed value of the plain plate if used in resistance seam welded construction. The plain plate, if used, shall meet the requirements of HG-307.3(a), formulas (3) and (4), with $z = 2.5$ max., $c = 0.2$.

(d) In lieu of the Procedure and Performance Qualification requirements of Section IX, the following requirements shall be met for resistance spot welded and resistance seam welded pressure vessels.

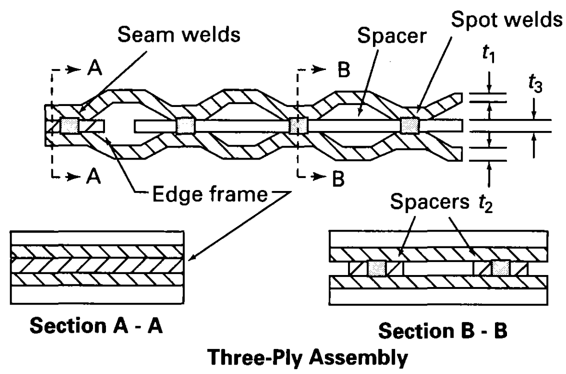
(1) *Proof Test.* A pressure proof test to destruction shall be conducted on a finished vessel or representative panel. The test shall be conducted as specified in HG-502.3. If a representative panel is used, it shall be rectangular in shape and at least 5 pitches in each direction, but not less than 24 in. (600 mm) in either direction.

(2) *Workmanship Samples*

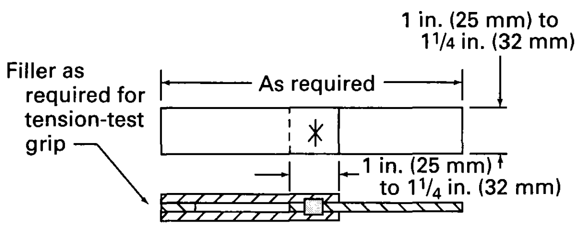
FIG. HW-740 THREE-PLY JOINT ASSEMBLIES



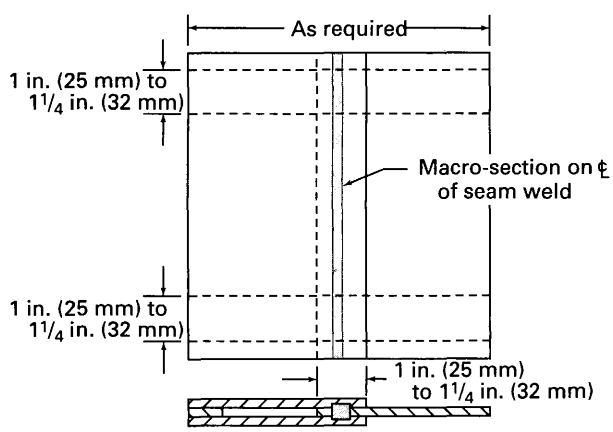
(a) Two outer Embossed or Dimpled Plates Welded to Inner Flat Plate



(b) Two Outer Embossed Plates Welded to Inner Edge Frame and Spacers



(c) Spot-Weld Tension Specimen for Three-Ply Joint



(d) Seam Weld Specimen for Tension and Macro-section for Three-Ply Joint

(a) Three single spot welded specimens, and/or one seam welded specimen, as shown in Fig. HW-745 for two-ply joints, and in Fig. HW-740 for three-ply joints, shall be made immediately before and after the welding of the proof test vessel. These test specimens shall be representative of the manufacturing practice employed in the fabrication of the proof test vessel. When a difference in the amount of magnetic material in the throat of the machine or the part geometry precludes the welding of satisfactory test specimens at the same machine settings as those used for the proof test vessel, sufficient material shall be placed in the throat of the welding machine to compensate for the difference in size of the proof test panel and the small test specimens.

(b) The spot welded specimens shall be subjected to tensile loading for ultimate strength and visually inspected for nugget size, electrode indentation, and evidence of defects. The seam weld specimens shall be similarly tested for ultimate strength and prepared for macrographic examination to reveal nugget size, spacing, penetration, soundness, and surface conditions.

(c) In addition, a typical spot weld sample and seam welded sample shall be cut from the proof test vessel after failure. A portion of each sample shall be sectioned for macroetch examination.

(d) All pertinent information obtained from the foregoing tests shall be recorded. These samples and data constitute workmanship samples that shall be available for comparison with quality control specimens that may be made during production.

(e) With every change in production run of material or gage, the machine setting control will be verified by test samples.

(3) Machine Settings and Controls. The resistance welding machine settings and process control parameters used in the making of the proof test vessel and the workmanship samples shall be recorded. Except for minor variations and adjustments as may be permitted at the discretion of the Authorized Inspector, the applicable settings shall be used in the fabrication of all vessels in a given production run.

(4) Pressure Tests and Inspection. All production vessels shall be pressure tested to a pressure not less than 1.5 times the allowable working pressure. These tests and inspection during fabrication shall be in accordance with HG-510.

(5) Records. Records shall be kept of all data obtained from tests of the proof test vessel, the workmanship samples, the welding machine settings, the welding procedure, and process control parameters. Records shall be kept of all preheat, postheat, and heat-treatment procedures and of inspection procedures.

(6) If spot and seam welding machines other than those used for the initial proof test vessel and workmanship

samples are to be used in production, each additional machine and welding procedure shall be qualified in full accordance with (d). The performance of the additional proof test vessels shall substantiate the allowable working pressure previously established for the specific boiler design.

(7) Lap joints only, between two thicknesses of metal sheet, may be resistance spot or seam welded. The use of projection welding (including resistance stud welding) is excluded.

(8) The range of thickness of sheet materials that may be resistance spot or seam welded under this case shall be as follows

(a)Two-Ply Joints [See Fig. HW-745, Sketch (a)]

(1) The minimum thickness t_1 or t_2 shall be 0.045 in. (1.14 mm).

(2) The maximum thickness t_1 or t_2 shall be $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) nominal.

(b)Three-Ply Joints [See Fig. HW-740, Sketches (a) and (b)]

(1) The two outer layers t_1 and t_2 shall be equal in thickness.

(2) The inner layer t_3 shall be at least as thick as t_1 or t_2.

(3) The minimum thickness of t_1, t_2, and t_3 shall be 0.045 in. (1.14 mm).

(4) The maximum thickness of t_1 and t_2 shall be 0.126 in. (3.20 mm).

(5) The maximum thickness of t_3 shall be 0.188 in. (4.8 mm).

(6) The total thickness of the three layers t_1 + t_2 + t_3 shall be 0.135 in. (3.43 mm) min., 0.378 in. (10 mm) max.

HW-745 RESISTANCE WELDING OF HYDRAULICALLY FORMED PANELS

Resistance spot and seam welding may be used in the construction of embossed or dimpled assemblies under the following limitations and additional requirements.

(a) Materials used in the resistance welded parts of such vessels are carbon steel SA-285, SA-620, and SA-414, or any proven combination, with the further limitation that the carbon content is 0.15% maximum.

(b) Construction consists of employing resistance spot welding or resistance seam welding to join two sheets together [see Fig. HW-740, sketch (a)]. Subsequent to the joining and sealing operation, the assembly is subjected to a hydraulic or pneumatic pressure to achieve a dimpled formation.

Construction may consist of two sheets of equal thickness that results in the formation of a dimpled surface on both sides of an assembly or two sheets of different thicknesses that results in the formation of a dimpled surface on only one side of a pressure assembly. Any number of such assemblies may be joined together, by fusion welding, to make a boiler or boiler parts.

(c) The allowable working pressure for the construction shall be the lowest pressure established by the following:

(1) a proof test in accordance with the bursting test procedures in HG-502 and HG-503 need not be followed, provided that when performing the proof test, the application of pressure is continuous until burst or until the proof test is stopped. In using the formulas for calculating the maximum allowable working pressure, a value of 0.80 shall be used for E, the weld joint efficiency factor. All provisions of HG-501 and HG-504 shall apply.

(2) the computed value of the plain plate, if used in resistance spot welded construction. The plain plate, if used, shall meet the requirements for braced and stayed surfaces in HG-340.

(3) the computed value of the plain plate, if used in resistance seam welded construction. The plain plate, if used, shall meet the requirements of HG-307.3 formulas (3) and (4), with z = 2.5 max., c = 0.2, and E = 1.0.

(d) The following design limitations apply:

(1) A change in any of the following variables will require requalification of the design proof test of (c):

(a) an increase in the spot or row pitch exceeding $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm)

(b) a change in the specification, type, or grade of material or material thickness for either sheet or both sheets

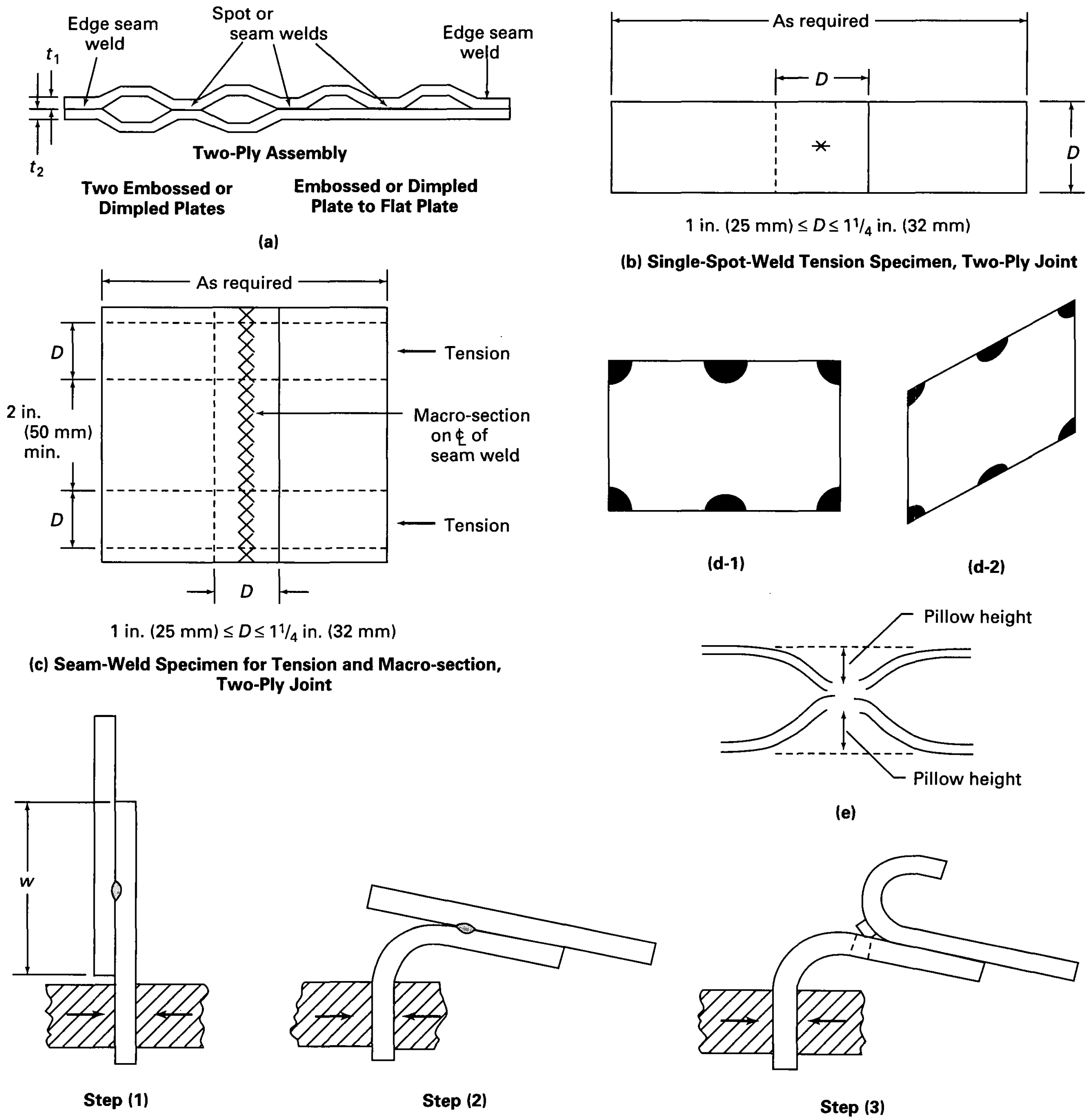
(c) a change in the electrode size or material

(2) A duplicate test panel of that used to establish the maximum allowable working pressure shall be inflated to a pressure at least 5% greater than the maximum forming pressure to be used in production. The rate of pressurization shall be the same as that used in the burst test. The panel shall be sectioned to show at least six spot welds [see Fig. HW-745, sketches (d-1) and (d-2)]. The weld cross sections shall be subjected to macroetch examinations and shall show no cracks. The maximum pillow heights measured, as shown in Fig. HW-745, sketch (e), of panels made in production shall not exceed 95% of the maximum pillow height of this duplicate test panel. The maximum forming pressure shall not exceed 80% of the burst pressure.

(e) In lieu of the Procedure Qualification requirements of Section IX, the following requirements shall be met for resistance spot welded and resistance seam welded panels.

(1) Proof Test. A pressure proof test to destruction as set forth in (c)(1) above shall be conducted on a finished boiler or representative panel. This test may be a separate test or part of the test in (c)(1) above. If a representative panel is used, it shall be rectangular in shape and at least 5 pitches in each direction, but not less than 24 in. (600 mm) in either direction.

FIG. HW-745 TWO-PLY JOINT ASSEMBLIES



Step 1: Grip specimen in vase or other suitable device.

Step 2: Bend specimen (this step may not be required if the gripped portion of the specimen is greatly thicker than the other portion).

Step 3: Peel pieces apart with suitable tool until they are separated.

(f) Peel Test

(a) A typical spot weld sample and seam welded sample shall be cut from the proof test panel after failure. A portion of each sample shall be sectioned for macroetch examination.

(2) Workmanship Samples

(a) Three single spot welded specimens, and/or one seam welded specimen as shown in Fig. HW-745, sketches (b) and (c), shall be made immediately before and after the welding of the proof test panel. These test specimens shall be representative of the manufacturing practice employed in the fabrication of the proof test panel. When a difference in the amount of magnetic material in the throat of the welding machine or the part geometry precludes the welding of satisfactory test specimens at the same machine settings as those used for the proof test panel, sufficient material shall be placed in the throat of the welding machine to compensate for the difference in size of the proof test panel and the small test specimens.

(b) The spot welded specimens shall be subjected to tensile loading for ultimate strength and visually inspected for nugget size, electrode indentation, and evidence of defects. The seam weld specimens shall be similarly tested for ultimate strength and prepared for macrographic examination to reveal nugget size, spacing, penetration, soundness, and surface condition.

(c) All pertinent information obtained from the foregoing tests shall be recorded. These samples and data constitute workmanship samples that shall be available for comparison with quality control specimens that may be made during production.

(d) With every change of material gage, the machine setting control shall be verified by test samples.

(e) At the beginning of each production run, which is a group of panels or assemblies all produced during a 24 hr period using the same welding process, material, and material thickness, either a tension test or a peel test as shown in Fig. HW-745, sketch (f), shall be performed. The acceptance criterion for these tests shall be that the parent metal adjacent to the weld must fail before the weld itself fails.

(3) Machine Settings and Controls. The resistance welding machine settings and process control parameters used in the making of the proof test panel and the workmanship samples shall be recorded. Except for minor variations and adjustments as may be permitted at the discretion of the Inspector, the applicable settings shall be used in the fabrication of all panels in a given production run.

(4) Pressure Tests and Inspection. All production boilers shall be pressure tested to a pressure not less than 1.5 times the allowable working pressure. These tests and inspection during fabrication shall be in accordance with HG-510, except that provisions of HG-510(b) may be exceeded because the application of pressure during formation of the pillows will exceed the design and test pressure by more than the allowed 10 psi (70 kPa).

(5) Records. Records shall be kept of all data obtained from tests of the proof test boiler or panel, duplicate test panel, the workmanship samples, the welding machine settings, and the welding procedure and process control parameters. Records shall be kept of all preheat, postheat, and heat-treatment procedures and of inspection procedures.

(f) If spot and seam welding machines other than those used for the initial proof test panel, duplicate test panel, and workmanship samples are to be used in production, each additional machine and welding procedure shall be qualified in accordance with (e)(2)(a) and (b) above.

(g) Lap joints only, between two thicknesses of metal sheet, may be resistance spot or seam welded. The use of projection welding (including resistance stud welding) is excluded.

(h) The range of thickness of sheet materials that may be resistance spot or seam welded shall be as follows for two-ply joints [see Fig. HW-745, sketch (a)]:

(a) the minimum thickness t_1 or t_2 shall be 0.045 in. (1.14 mm)

(b) the maximum thickness t_1 or t_2 shall be $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) nominal

(i) If arc welding, gas welding, or brazing are used for the attachment of nozzles, tubes, and fittings, for repair or for the closing of peripheral seams, the qualification of welding or brazing procedure and welding or brazing performance shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements of Section IX. Filler metals, if used, shall conform to the requirements of Section IX.

(j) For construction having sheets formed within dies where the dies control the shape of the pillow and restrain the spot welds so that the bending in the sheet is outside the heat affected zone, the welding may be done before or after forming. The requirements and limitations in (d)(2) above do not apply to this method of construction.

ARTICLE 8
FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS

HW-800 FORMING PLATES

The ends of plates that form the longitudinal joints of boiler shells shall be formed by pressure, not sledging, to the proper curvature.

HW-801 BASE METAL PREPARATION

(a) The preparation of joints prior to welding may involve any of the conventional methods in use such as machining, thermal cutting, chipping, grinding, or combinations of these.

(b) Where thermal cutting is used, the effect on the mechanical and metallurgical properties of the base metal shall be taken into consideration.

(c) The method of base metal preparation used shall leave the welding groove with reasonably smooth surfaces and free from deep notches, striations, or irregularities. The surfaces for welding shall be free of all scale, rust, oil, grease, or other foreign materials.

(d) Cast surfaces to be welded shall be machined, chipped, or ground where necessary to remove foundry scale and to expose sound metal.

HW-810 ASSEMBLY

(a) Parts that are being welded shall be fitted, aligned, and retained in position during the welding operation within the tolerance specified in HW-812.

(b) Bars, jacks, clamps, tack welds, or other appropriate means may be used to hold the edges of the parts to be welded in alignment.

(c) Tack welds used to secure alignment shall either be removed completely when they have served their purpose, or their stopping and starting ends shall be properly prepared by grinding or other suitable means so that they may be satisfactorily incorporated into the final weld. Tack welds, whether removed or left in place, shall be made using a fillet weld or butt weld procedure qualified in accordance with Section IX. Tack welds to be left in place shall be made by welders qualified in accordance with Section IX and shall be examined visually for defects, and if found defective shall be removed.

It is not necessary that a subcontractor performing such tack welds for the vessel manufacturer be a holder of an ASME Certificate of Authorization. If the tack welds are permanently left in place, the final vessel manufacturer shall maintain the controls to assure that the necessary welding procedure and performance qualifications are met in order to satisfy Code requirements.

(d) When joining two parts by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes, one of the two parts must be held in a fixed position and the other part rotated. The two faces to be joined must be essentially symmetrical with respect to the axis of rotation. Some of the basic types of applicable joints are solid round to solid round, tube to tube, solid round to tube, solid round to plate, and tube to plate.

HW-812 ALIGNMENT TOLERANCE

(a) The edges of plates at butt joints shall not be offset from each other at any point in excess of the amount in the following table, where t is the plate thickness.

	Direction of Joints in Cylindrical Vessels	
Plate Thickness, in.	Longitudinal	Circumferential
Up to $\frac{1}{2}$ (13 mm), incl.	$\frac{1}{4}\,t$	$\frac{1}{4}\,t$
Over $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ (13 mm to 19 mm), incl.	$\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3.0 mm)	$\frac{1}{4}\,t$
Over $\frac{3}{4}$ (19 mm)	$\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3.0 mm)	$\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5.0 mm)

(b) Butt joints in heads and butt joints between cylindrical shells and hemispherical heads shall meet the requirements in (a) above for longitudinal joints in cylindrical shells.

HW-813 DISTORTION

(a) The cylinder or barrel of a drum or shell shall be circular at any section within a limit of 1% of the mean diameter, based on the differences between the maximum and minimum mean diameters at any section, and if necessary to meet this requirement shall be reheated, rerolled, or reformed. To determine the difference in diameters, measurements may be made on the inside or the outside.

For vessels with longitudinal lap joints, the permissible difference in inside diameters may be increased by the nominal plate thickness.

(b) Cylindrical furnaces and other cylindrical parts subjected to external pressure shall be rolled to a circle with a maximum permissible deviation from the true circle of not more than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm).

HW-820 SPECIFIC WELDING REQUIREMENTS

HW-820.1 Finished Longitudinal and Circumferential Joints

(a) Butt welded joints shall have complete penetration and full fusion. The surface of the weld may be left as-welded provided the weld is free of coarse ripples, grooves, overlaps, abrupt ridges, or valleys. A reduction in thickness due to the welding process is acceptable provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The reduction in thickness shall not reduce the material of the adjoining surfaces below the minimum required thickness at any point.

(2) The reduction in thickness shall not exceed $\frac{1}{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) or 10% of the nominal thickness of the adjoining surface, whichever is less.[1]

HW-820.2 Fillet Welds. In making fillet welds, the weld metal shall be deposited in such a way that adequate penetration into the base metal at the root of the weld is secured. The reduction of the thickness of the base metal due to the welding process at the edges of the fillet weld shall meet the same requirements as for butt welds [see HW-820.1].

HW-820.3 Double-Welded Butt Joints. Before applying weld metal on the second side to be welded, the root of double-welded butt joints shall be prepared by suitable methods such as chipping, grinding, or thermal gouging, so as to secure sound metal at the base of weld metal deposited on the face side, except for those processes of welding by which proper fusion and penetration are otherwise obtained and by which the root of the weld remains free from impurities.

HW-820.4 Stud Welding. In the case where arc stud welding and resistance stud welding is used to attach load carrying studs, a production stud weld test of the procedure and welding operator shall be performed on five studs, welded and tested in accordance with either the bend or torque stud weld testing described in Section IX as follows:

(a) prior to start of daily operation if used continuously on units of similar construction

(b) prior to the start of application to a given unit when not used continuously

(c) after adjustment or servicing is done on welding equipment

HW-820.5 Procedure and Performance Qualification Tests and Material Requirements for Stud Welding. Procedure and performance qualification tests for stud welds shall be made in accordance with Section IX. Further requirements for stud welding are as follows.

(a) Metallic coatings (such as cadmium plating) if used shall not be within $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) from the weld end of the stud.

(b) The base metal must be above 50°F (10°C) during the welding process.

HW-820.6 Stud Welding. When stud welding and resistance stud welding are used for joining nonpressure-bearing attachments, which have essentially no load-carrying function [such as extended heat transfer surfaces and insulation attachment pins, except as provided in HW-840(b)], to pressure parts by an automatic welding process performed in accordance with a Welding Procedure Specification (in compliance with Section IX as far as applicable), procedure and performance qualification testing is not required.

When stud welding is used to attach nonload-carrying studs, a production stud weld test, appropriate to the end use application requirements, shall be specified by the Manufacturer or Assembler and carried out on a separate test plate or tube

(a) prior to the start of daily operation if used continuously on units of similar construction

(b) prior to the start of application to a given unit when not used continuously

(c) after adjustment or servicing is done on welding equipment

HW-820.7 The welded joint between two members joined by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes shall be a full penetration weld. Visual examination of the as-welded flash roll of each weld shall be made as an in-process check. The weld upset shall meet the specified amount within ±10%. The flash shall be removed to sound metal.

HW-820.8 Welding (Brazing) by Non-Certificate Holders

(a) Welders, including brazers, and welding and brazing operators not in the employ of the manufacturer (Certificate of Authorization Holders) may be used to fabricate boilers or parts thereof constructed in accordance with the Section, provided all of the following conditions are met:

[1] It is not the intent of this paragraph to require measurement of reductions in thickness due to the welding process. If a disagreement between the Manufacturer and the Inspector exists as to the acceptability of any reduction in thickness, the depth shall be verified by actual measurement.

(1) All Code construction shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer.

(2) All welding shall be performed in accordance with the Manufacturer's welding procedure specifications which have been qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and this Section.

(3) All welders shall be qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and this Section.

(4) The Manufacturer's quality control system shall include as a minimum the following:

(a) a requirement for complete and exclusive administrative and technical supervision of all welders by the Manufacturer

(b) evidence of the Manufacturer's authority to assign and remove welders at his discretion without involvement of any other organization

(c) a requirement for Assignment of Welder Identification symbols

(d) evidence that this program has been accepted by the Manufacturer's Authorized Inspection Agency which provides the inspection service

(5) The Manufacturer shall be responsible for Code compliance of the completed boiler or part, including Code symbol stamping and providing Data Report Forms properly executed and countersigned by the Inspector.

HW-820.9 Flash Welding. If tube butt welds are made using the flash welding process, production testing shall be performed in accordance with Section IX, QW-199.7.3 as follows:

(a) one example shall be tested at the start of production

(b) one sample shall be tested at the beginning, midpoint, and end of each work shift

(c) when production shifts are consecutive, a test at the end of the shift may serve as the test for the beginning of the next shift

(d) when a welding operator is replaced during production

(e) if any machine's settings are changed

When any production run weld fails to pass the required tests, the welding parameters shall be adjusted until two consecutive welds pass the bend test. In addition, all welds that were made subsequent to the previous successful test shall be either cut out and rewelded or cut out and tested in reverse sequence of welding until two successive welds pass the tests.

HW-830 REPAIR OF WELD DEFECTS

Visible defects, such as cracks, pinholes and incomplete fusion, and defects detected by leakage tests shall be removed by mechanical means or by thermal grooving processes, after which the joint shall be rewelded and reexamined.

HW-840 POSTHYDROTEST WELDING OF NONPRESSURE PARTS TO PRESSURE PARTS

(a) Nonpressure parts, other than insulation attachment pins welded by the capacitive discharge method, may be welded to pressure parts after the hydrostatic test has been performed in accordance with the requirements as set forth in HG-510, provided the following criteria are met.

(1) The welding is done in accordance with this Subpart (see HW-820).

(2) The material requirements shall comply as follows:

(a) The pressure part material is limited to P-No. 1, Group 1 or 2 materials.

(b) The nonpressure attachment material is limited to carbon steel with a carbon content not exceeding 0.20% or any P-No. 1 material.

(c) When the nonpressure attachment material is other than P-No. 1, a minimum 200°F (93°C) preheat shall be applied when the pressure part thickness exceeds $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm).

(3) The attachment is done by stud welding or with fillet welds where the throat of the weld is not to exceed the lesser of 1.5 times the thickness of the pressure part or $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(4) The completed weld is inspected by the Authorized Inspector.

(5) The Manufacturer's Data Report Form shall be signed only after completion of the welding.

(6) Welding is not permitted on brazed joints.

(b) Insulation attachment pins may be stud welded to pressure parts after the hydrostatic test without requiring inspection by the Authorized Inspector and without requiring a production stud weld test, provided the following conditions are met.

(1) Insulation attachment pins shall have a nominal diameter not exceeding 50% of the plate thickness or $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5.0 mm), whichever is less.

(2) Capacitive discharge welding process shall be used.

(3) The procedure shall be included in the Manufacturer's Quality Control Manual, and the Authorized Inspector shall have the opportunity to monitor the process.

(4) The insulation attachment pins shall be installed prior to application of the Code Symbol Stamp and the signing of the Manufacturer's Data Report.

ARTICLE 9
INSPECTION

HW-900 INSPECTION DURING FABRICATION

The manufacturer shall submit the boiler or other pressure part for inspection at such stages of the work as may be designated by the Inspector.

HW-910 CHECK OF WELDING PROCEDURE QUALIFICATIONS

(a) It is the duty of the Inspector to assure himself that the welding procedures employed in construction have been qualified under the provisions of Section IX. The manufacturer shall submit evidence to the Inspector that those requirements have been met.

(b) The Inspector has the right at any time to call for and witness the test welding and testing, although it is not mandatory that he witness the test welding and the testing unless he so desires.

HW-911 CHECK OF WELDER AND WELDING OPERATOR PERFORMANCE QUALIFICATIONS

(a) It is the duty of the Inspector to assure himself that all welding is done by welders or welding operators qualified under the provisions of Section IX. The manufacturer shall make available to the Inspector a certified copy of the record of performance qualification tests of each welder and welding operator as evidence that these requirements have been met.

(b) The Inspector has the right at any time to call for and witness the test welding and testing, although it is not mandatory that he witness the test welding and the testing unless he so desires.

PART HF — SUBPART HB REQUIREMENTS FOR BOILERS FABRICATED BY BRAZING

ARTICLE 10 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

HB-1000 SCOPE

The requirements of this Subpart HB are applicable to boilers and parts thereof that are fabricated by brazing.

HB-1001 RESPONSIBILITY OF MANUFACTURER OR CONTRACTOR

Each manufacturer or contractor is responsible for the brazing done by his organization and shall establish the procedures and conduct the tests required in Section IX to qualify the brazing procedures he uses in the construction of the brazed assemblies built under Section IV and the performance tests of brazers and brazing operators to determine their ability to apply the procedure properly.

ARTICLE 11
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

HB-1100 GENERAL

Materials used in the construction of boilers and parts thereof by brazing shall conform to the specifications in Section II, and shall be limited to those materials for which allowable stress values have been assigned in Table HF-300.1 and Table HF-300.2. The materials being brazed shall be of proved brazing quality with the brazing filler metal employed. Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure under Section IX is considered proof of acceptable material for brazed construction.

HB-1101 COMBINATIONS OF DISSIMILAR MATERIALS

Combinations of dissimilar metals may be joined by brazing provided they meet the qualification requirements of Section IX.

HB-1102 BRAZING FILLER METALS

The selection of the brazing filler metal for a specific application shall depend upon its suitability for the base metals being joined. Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure under Section IX is considered proof of the suitability of the filler metal. Brazing used with brazing filler metals other than those listed in Section II, Part C, SFA-5.8 shall be separately qualified for both procedure and performance qualification in accordance with Section IX.

HB-1103 FLUXES AND ATMOSPHERES

Suitable fluxes or atmospheres or combinations of fluxes and atmospheres shall be used to prevent oxidation of the brazing filler metal and the surfaces to be joined. Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure under Section IX is considered proof of the suitability of the flux and/or atmosphere.

ARTICLE 12
BRAZING PROCESSES, PROCEDURES, AND QUALIFICATIONS

HB-1200 BRAZING PROCESSES

Specific brazing processes which are permitted for use under this Section are classified by method of heating and are torch brazing, furnace brazing, induction brazing, electrical resistance brazing, and dip brazing — salt and flux bath.

HB-1201 JOINT BRAZING PROCEDURES

A joint brazing procedure shall be developed for each different type of joint of a brazed assembly. A recommended form for recording the brazing procedure is shown in QB-480 of Section IX. If more than one joint occurs in a brazed assembly, the brazing sequence shall be specified on the drawing or in instructions accompanying the drawing. If welding and brazing are to be done on the same assembly, the welding shall precede the brazing unless it is determined that the heat of welding will not adversely affect the braze previously made, and the weld will not be adversely contaminated by the brazing metal.

HB-1202 BRAZING QUALIFICATIONS AND RECORDS

HB-1202.1 Qualification of Brazing Procedures

(a) Each brazing procedure employed in the fabrication of boilers shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX. Only qualified procedure specifications shall be followed in construction. Each manufacturer shall conduct the required tests to qualify all brazing procedures to be used by his organization.

(b) The nominal thickness of base material used with lap joints tested using the test fixture shown in QB-463.7 of Section IX shall not exceed $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm). There is no thickness limitation when specimens are tested without the test fixture shown in QB-463.7.

HB-1202.2 Qualification of Brazers and Brazing Operators. All brazers assigned to manual brazing shall have passed the tests prescribed for brazers in Section IX. All brazing operators assigned to brazing by automatic means or by furnace, induction, resistance, or dip brazing shall pass the tests as prescribed in Section IX. Such tests shall be conducted by the manufacturer or contractor.

HB-1202.3 No Production Work Without Qualifications. No production work shall be undertaken until both the brazing procedure and the brazers or brazing operators have been qualified.

HB-1202.4 Maintenance of Records of Qualifications and Identifying Marks

(a) The manufacturer shall maintain qualification records of the brazers and brazing operators employed by him showing the date and results of qualifying tests and the identifying mark assigned to each. These records shall be certified to by the Manufacturer by signature or some other method of control in accordance with the Manufacturer's quality control system, and shall be accessible to the Inspector.

(b) Each brazer and brazing operator so qualified shall be assigned an identifying number, letter, or symbol by the manufacturer which shall be used to identify the work of that brazer or brazing operator.

ARTICLE 13
DESIGN

HB-1300 STRENGTH OF BRAZED JOINTS

(a) It is the responsibility of the designer to determine from suitable tests or from past experience that the specific brazing filler metal selected can produce a joint which will have adequate strength over the operating temperature range. The strength of the brazed joint shall not be less than the strength of the base metal, or the weaker of the two base metals in the case of dissimilar metal joints.

(b) For any type of joint, the strength of the brazed section shall exceed that of the base metal portion of the test specimen in the qualification tension tests provided for in QB-150 of Section IX. Lap joints shall have a sufficient overlap to provide a higher strength in the brazed joint than in the base metal.

HB-1301 BRAZED JOINT EFFICIENCY FACTORS

(a) The joint efficiency factor to be used in design of boilers with brazed joints shall be 0.80 for joints in which visual examination assures that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the entire joint.

(b) The joint efficiency factor to be used in the design of boilers shall be 0.50 for joints in which visual examination will not provide proof that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the entire joint.

HB-1302 MINIMUM THICKNESS

The minimum thickness of nonferrous and other copper or copper-alloy plates, heads, and tubesheets shall be as specified in HF-301.

HB-1303 PERMISSIBLE SERVICE TEMPERATURE

Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure in accordance with Section IX, Part QB is considered satisfactory proof of the adequacy of the base materials, the brazing filler metal, the flux and/or atmosphere, and other variables of the procedure for service not exceeding 250°F (120°C).

HB-1304 APPLICATION OF BRAZING FILLER METAL

The design shall provide for the application of the brazing filler metal as part of the design of the joint. Where practicable, the brazing filler metal shall be applied in such a manner that it will flow into the joint or be distributed across the joint and produce visible evidence that it has penetrated the joint.

(a) Manual Application. The manual application of the brazing filler metal by face-feeding to a joint should be from one side only. Visual observation of the other side of the joint will then show if the required penetration of the joint by the filler metal has been obtained. If the side opposite to the filler metal application cannot be visually examined, as is the case with socket-type joints in pipe and tubing (blind joint), a joint efficiency factor of 0.50 shall be used in design of this joint.

(b) Preplaced Brazing Filler Metal. The brazing filler metal may be preplaced in the form of slugs, powder, rings, strip, cladding, spraying, or other means. After brazing, the brazing filler metal should be visible on both sides of the joint. If the brazing filler metal is preplaced within a blind joint in such a manner that it penetrates the major portion of the joint during brazing and appears at the visible side of the joint, a joint efficiency factor of 0.80 may be used in the design of the joint. If the brazing filler metal is preplaced on the outside or near the outside of a blind joint, and the other side cannot be inspected to ascertain complete penetration, then a joint efficiency factor of 0.50 shall be used in the design of the joint.

HB-1305 JOINT CLEARANCE

(a) The joint clearance shall be kept sufficiently small so that the filler metal will be distributed by capillary attraction. Since the strength of a brazed joint tends to decrease as the joint clearance used is increased, the clearances for the assembly of joints in boilers shall be within the tolerances set up by the joint design and as used for the corresponding qualification specimens made in accordance with Section IX.

(*b*) If greater tolerances are to be used in production, the joint must be requalified for those greater tolerances. The control of tolerances required may be obtained by using rivets, spot welding, crimping, or other means which will not interfere with the quality of the braze. If such means are employed in production, they must also be employed in qualification of procedure, brazer, and operator.

NOTE: For guidance, see Table HB-1305, which gives recommended joint clearances at brazing temperature for various types of brazing filler metal. Brazing alloys will exhibit maximum unit strength if clearances are maintained within these limits.

TABLE HB-1305
RECOMMENDED JOINT CLEARANCES AT BRAZING TEMPERATURE

Brazing Filler Metal	Clearance, in. (mm)
B Al Si Group	0.006–0.010 (0.15–0.25) for laps < $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6.35)
	0.010–0.025 (0.25–0.64) for laps > $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6.35)
B CuP Group	0.001–0.005 (0.02–0.12)
B Ag Group	0.002–0.005 (0.05–0.12)
B Cu Zn Group	0.002–0.005 (0.05–0.12)
B Cu Group	0.000–0.002 (0.00–0.05)

HB-1306 OPENINGS

(*a*) Openings for nozzles and other connections shall be far enough away from any main brazed joint so that the joint and the opening reinforcement plates do not interfere with one another.

(*b*) Openings for pipe connections in boilers having brazed joints may be made by inserting pipe couplings, not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 80), or similar devices in the shell or heads and securing them by welding, provided the welding is performed by welders who have been qualified under the provisions of Section IX for the welding position and type of joint used. Such attachments shall conform to the rules for welded connections.

HB-1307 BRAZED CONNECTIONS

(*a*) Connections, such as saddle type fittings and fittings inserted into openings formed by outward flanging of the vessel wall, in sizes not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 80), may be attached to boilers by lap joints of brazed construction. Sufficient brazing shall be provided on either side of the line through the center of the opening parallel to the longitudinal axis of the shell to develop the strength of the reinforcement through shear in the brazing.

(*b*) For nozzle fittings having a bolting flange and an integral flange for brazing, the thickness of the flange attached to the boiler shall not be less than the thickness of the neck of the fitting.

ARTICLE 14
FABRICATION REQUIREMENTS

HB-1400 CLEANING OF SURFACES TO BE BRAZED

The surfaces to be brazed shall be clean and free from grease, paint, oxides, scale, and foreign matter of any kind. Any chemical or mechanical cleaning method may be used that will provide a surface suitable for brazing.

HB-1401 POSTBRAZING OPERATIONS

Brazed joints shall be thoroughly cleaned of flux residue by any suitable means after brazing and prior to inspection.[1] Other postbrazing operations such as thermal treatments shall be performed in accordance with the qualified procedure.

HB-1402 REPAIR OF DEFECTIVE BRAZING

Brazed joints which have been found to be defective may be rebrazed, where feasible, after thorough cleaning, and by employing the same brazing procedure used for the original braze. If a different brazing procedure is employed i.e., torch repair of furnace brazed parts, a repair brazing procedure shall be established and qualified.

When a repair brazing procedure is established it shall provide control of the application of brazing filler metal to meet the conditions set forth in HB-1301(a). Where these requirements cannot be met, the limitations of HB-1301(b) will apply.

[1] Flux residues can be extremely corrosive as well as interfere with visual inspection.

ARTICLE 15
INSPECTION AND STAMPING

HB-1500 INSPECTION

HB-1501 INSPECTION OF BRAZING PROCEDURE

The Inspector shall examine the procedure for each type of joint being produced and shall determine that the procedure has been qualified in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and shall satisfy himself that fabrication of the joint is in accordance with the procedure. Where there is evidence of consistent poor quality, the Inspector shall have the right at any time to call for and witness tests of the brazing procedure.

HB-1502 CERTIFICATION OF BRAZER AND BRAZING OPERATOR

(a) The manufacturer shall certify that the brazing on a vessel or part thereof has been done by brazers or brazing operators who are qualified under the requirements of Section IX, and the Inspector shall assure himself that only qualified brazers or brazing operators have been used.

(b) The manufacturer shall make available to the Inspector a certified copy of the record of the qualification tests of each brazer and brazing operator. The Inspector shall have the right at any time to call for and witness tests of the ability of a brazer or brazing operator.

HB-1503 VISUAL EXAMINATION

(a) Where possible, both sides of each brazed joint shall be visually examined after flux residue removal. Where it is not possible to inspect one side of a brazed joint (blind joint), the Inspector shall check the design to determine that the proper joint factor has been employed, unless he can assure himself that the brazing filler metal has been preplaced in such a manner that it satisfied HB-1304.

(b) There shall be evidence that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the joint. In a butt braze there shall be no concavity. The braze may be repaired or rebrazed.

(c) The presence of a crack in the brazing filler metal shall be cause for rejection. Dye penetrant inspection may be used if desired. The braze may be repaired or rebrazed.

(d) The presence of a crack in the base metal adjacent to a braze shall be cause for rejection even if the crack is filled with brazing alloy. Such cracking shall not be repaired.

(e) Visible pinholes or open defects in the braze shall be cause for rejection. The joint may be rebrazed.

(f) Rough fillets, particularly those with a convex appearance, are cause for rejection. Such joints may be repaired or rebrazed.

HB-1510 STAMPING

Boilers shall be stamped according to the requirements of HG-530 or the stamping may be placed on a nonferrous plate, irremovably attached to a visible part of the boiler.

PART HC
REQUIREMENTS FOR BOILERS CONSTRUCTED OF CAST IRON

ARTICLE 1
GENERAL

07 HC-100 SCOPE

The rules in Part HC are applicable to heating boilers that are constructed primarily of cast iron sections, and shall be used in conjunction with general requirements of Part HG of this Section.

ARTICLE 2
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

HC-200 GENERAL MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

(a) All materials used for cast sections of boilers that are constructed primarily of cast iron shall meet the requirements of this Article for gray iron castings.

(b) External appurtenances, such as cast or welded headers and other miscellaneous pressure parts, shall be manufactured under part HC or HF-203. The design pressure for these pressure parts for which the strength cannot be computed shall be established in accordance with HG-500.

HC-201 MANUFACTURE

The melting procedure shall be optional with the Manufacturer.

HC-202 CHEMICAL COMPOSITION

Drillings taken from test ingots, broken test specimens, or from castings, shall conform to the following as to chemical composition.

(a) The manganese shall be controlled as required to meet $Mn \geq (1.7 \times S) + 0.2$, where Mn is percent manganese and S is percent sulfur.

(b) The phosphorous content shall not exceed 1.00%.

HC-203 TENSILE STRENGTH CLASSIFICATION

Castings shall be known and listed by classes according to the minimum requirements as to tensile strengths of test bars, specified as follows:

Class No.	Tensile Strength Min., psi (MPa)
20	20,000 (140)
25	25,000 (170)
30	30,000 (200)
35	35,000 (240)
40	40,000 (275)

HC-204 TENSION TEST

The tension test shall be considered the primary test for qualification under this Article. The results of the tension or transverse tests shall determine compliance for the various classes given in HC-203. (See HC-212, Retests.)

HC-205 TEST BARS

Test bars shall be cast separately from the castings (see HC-207). The sizes of cast test bars shall be as determined in HC-206. Tension specimens shall be machined from those castings to the dimensions shown in Fig. HC-205.1. Tension test specimens "cast to size" shall not be used. The test bar castings shown in Fig. HC-206.1 may be used for optional transverse tests, when that test is specified.

HC-206 SELECTION OF TEST BAR SIZE

The dimensions of the test bars as shown in Fig. HC-206.1 shall be determined by the thickness of the controlling section of the casting as follows (the body or shell of the casting shall be the controlling section):

Thickness of Controlling Section of Casting, in. (mm)	Test Bar
0.5 (13) and under	A
0.51 to 1.00 (13.0 to 25)	B
over 1.00 (25)	C

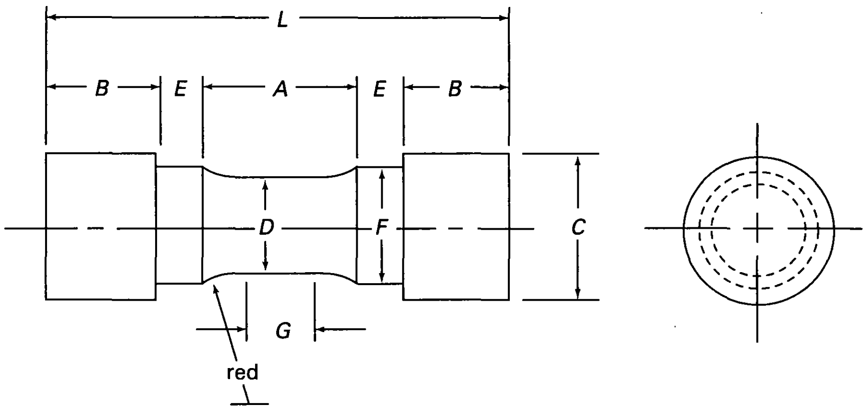
HC-207 MOLDING AND POURING TEST BARS

Test bars shall be made under the same sand conditions as the castings. The bars shall be poured from the same ladles of iron used to pour the castings. The test bars shall receive the same thermal treatment as the castings. Thermal treatment involving a liquid quench from above the critical range is not permitted for castings covered in this Article.

HC-208 TENSILE STRENGTH TEST PROCEDURE

Tension test specimens (Fig. HC-205.1) shall fit the holders of the testing machine in such a way that the load shall be axial. The use of self-aligning shackles is

FIG. HC-205.1 DIMENSIONS OF TENSILE TEST SPECIMEN



Dimensions

	Tension Test Specimen, *A*	Tension test Specimen, *B*	Tension Test Specimen, *C*
G — Length of parallel, min., in. (mm)	0.50 (13)	0.75 (19)	1.25 (32)
D — Diameter, in. (mm)	[0.500 ± 0.010 (13 ± 0.25)]	[0.750 ± 0.015 (19 ± 0.38)]	[1.25 ± 0.025 (32 ± 0.63)]
R — Radius of fillet, min., in. (mm)	1 (25)	1 (25)	2 (51)
A — Length of reduced section, min., in. (mm)	1¼ (32)	1½ (38)	2¼ (57)
L — Overall Length, min., in. (mm)	3¾ (95)	4 (100)	6⅜ (160)
C — Diameter of end section, in. (mm), approximately	¾ (19)	1⅛ (29)	1⅞ (48)
E — Length of shoulder, min., in. (mm)	¼ (6)	¼ (6)	5/16 (8)
F — Diameter of shoulder, in. (mm)	[⅝ ± 1/64 (16 ± 0.4)]	[15/16 ± 1/64 (24 ± 0.4)]	[1 7/16 ± 1/64 (37 ± 0.4)]
B — Length of end section	Note (1)	Note (1)	Note (1)

NOTE:
(1) Optional to fit holders on testing machine. If threaded, root diameter shall not be less than dimension *F*.

recommended.[1] After reaching a stress equivalent to 15,000 psi (100 MPa), the speed of the moving head of the testing machine shall not exceed 0.125 in./min (3.18 mm/min).

HC-209 TRANSVERSE TEST

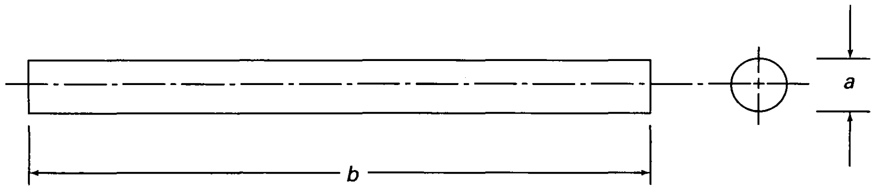
(a) Except for the tensile tests required in HC-402.2, the Manufacturer may waive the tension test and the transverse test may be used. When used, the minimum breaking load, lb, prescribed as follows, shall apply (see HC-212 Retests):

Class No.	Test Bar A 0.875 in. (22 mm) Diam., 12 in. (300 mm) Supports, lb (kg)	Test Bar B 1.20 in. (30 mm) Diam., 18 in. (450 mm) Supports, lb (kg)	Test Bar C 2.00 in. (50 mm) Diam., 24 in. (600 mm) Supports, lb (kg)
20	900 (400)	1,800 (800)	6,000 (2 700)
25	1,025 (450)	2,000 (900)	6,800 (3 000)
30	1,150 (500)	2,200 (1 000)	7,600 (3 400)
35	1,275 (550)	2,400 (1 100)	8,300 (3 700)
40	1,400 (600)	2,600 (1 200)	9,100 (4 100)

(b) Where the transverse test has been made as prescribed in (a) above and the transverse or flexure test bar fails to meet the load requirements, the Manufacturer shall have the right to have a tension test specimen machined from a broken end of the transverse test bar tested. In the event that this tension test specimen conforms to the requirements of the class specified, as prescribed in

[1] The use of ball and socket holders in the tensile strength test is recommended. Tests made under conditions where eccentric loadings may occur will give erroneous results.

FIG. HC-206.1 CAST TEST BARS



Test Bar	Diameter *a*, in. (mm)	Dimensions Length, *b*, in. (mm) [Note (1)]	Distance Between Supports in Transverse Test, in. (mm)	Permissible Variations, in. (mm)
A	0.875 (22)	15 (380)	12 (300)	±0.05 (±1.3)
B	1.20 (30)	21 (530)	18 (460)	±0.10 (±2.5)
C	2.00 (50)	27 (680)	24 (600)	±0.10 (±2.5)

GENERAL NOTE: Test bars shall be plain, cylindrical shapes as shown. Where bars are cast on end, allowance for draft may be made. However, the diameter at the center of the length must correspond to the normal diameter, within the permissible variations.

NOTE:
(1) If only tensile strength are specified, dimensions *b* may be reduced to the minimum length shown in Fig. HC-205.1.

HC-203, the class requirements shall be considered as having been met, irrespective of the transverse breaking load.

HC-210 TRANSVERSE TEST PROCEDURE

(a) The transverse test shall be made on the bar as cast, or as skin machined (provided in the latter case that the diameter is not reduced below the minimum sizes given in Table HC-210) with central loading between supports. Corrections shall be made for sizes of round bars as shown in Table HC-210. In case of slightly elliptical bars (maximum and minimum diameters both within the tolerances given in Table HC-210), loading shall be on the minimum diameter, and the correction factor shall be obtained as follows: Square the depth of the bar measured at the point of application of the original load, multiply by the width, and divide the product by the cube of the diameter of the standard or nominal size bar. A bar whose diameters (maximum and minimum) vary by more than 0.025 in. (0.60 mm) for the 0.875 in. (22 mm) diameter nominal size, or by more than 0.050 in. (1.25 mm) for the 1.2 in. (30 mm) and 2.0 in. (50 mm) diameter nominal sizes, respectively, shall be considered a slightly elliptical bar.

(b) In all cases, controlling dimensions shall be the diameter of the bar at fracture.

(c) The rate of application of the load shall be such that fracture is produced in not less than 15 sec for the 0.875 in. (22 mm) diameter bar, 20 sec for the 1.2 in. (30 mm) diameter bar, and 40 sec for the 2.0 in. (50 mm) diameter bar.

HC-211 NUMBER OF TESTS

(a) For purposes of this requirement, a melting period shall not exceed 8 hr.

(b) For tensile or transverse tests for each class of iron, two or more test bars shall be cast from each melt, one during the first half of the melting period, and the other during the last half of the melting period. For chemical composition test samples, see HC-202.

(c) One chemical composition test and either one tensile or one transverse test shall be made on each melt (or mixture if two or more mixtures of a different class of iron are made in a given melt) for each controlling section (see HC-206) in the castings made from each melt (or mixture).[2]

HC-212 RETESTS

(a) If any test specimen shows defective machining or obvious lack of continuity of metal, it shall be discarded and replaced by another specimen.

(b) In case of the failure of a test bar to meet the specified strength within 90% of its value, a retest may be made. If the retest fails, the casting shall be rejected, except as provided for in (c) below.

[2] Example: If Class 20, Test Bar A, castings alone are being made, one test shall be made on each melt on Test Bar A. If Class 20, controlling sections A and B castings (that is, light and medium sections) are made from the same melt (or mixture), then Test Bars A and B shall be made and tested. In all cases, test bars corresponding to the different tensile classes (Nos. 20, 30, and 40) and controlling sections (A, B, and C) must be made and tested to correspond to the classes of iron specified for the castings, and the controlling sections thereof.

TABLE HC-210
CORRECTION FACTORS FOR TRANSVERSE TEST BARS
(In order to Correct to the Standard Diameter, the Breaking Load and Deflection Obtained in Testing the Bar Shall be Divided by the Respective Correction Factors.)

Test Bar A 0.875 in. (22 mm) in Diameter			Test Bar B 1.20 in. (30 mm) in Diameter			Test Bar C 2.000 in. (50 mm) in Diameter		
Diameter of Test Bars, in. (mm)	Correction Factor Load	Correction Factor Deflection	Diameter of Test Bars, in. (mm)	Correction Factor Load	Correction Factor Deflection	Diameter of Test Bars, in. (mm)	Correction Factor Load	Correction Factor Deflection
0.825 (20.96)	0.838	1.061	1.10 (27.94)	0.770	1.091	1.90 (48.26)	0.857	1.053
0.830 (21.08)	0.853	1.054	1.11 (28.19)	0.791	1.081	1.91 (48.51)	0.871	1.047
0.835 (21.21)	0.869	1.048	1.12 (28.45)	0.813	1.071	1.92 (48.77)	0.885	1.042
0.840 (21.34)	0.885	1.042	1.13 (28.70)	0.835	1.062	1.93 (49.02)	0.899	1.037
0.845 (21.46)	0.900	1.036	1.14 (28.96)	0.857	1.053	1.94 (49.28)	0.913	1.032
0.850 (21.59)	0.916	1.029	1.15 (29.21)	0.880	1.043	1.95 (49.53)	0.927	1.026
0.855 (21.72)	0.933	1.023	1.16 (29.46)	0.903	1.034	1.96 (49.78)	0.941	1.021
0.860 (21.84)	0.949	1.017	1.17 (29.27)	0.927	1.026	1.97 (50.04)	0.955	1.015
0.865 (21.97)	0.966	1.012	1.18 (29.97)	0.951	1.017	1.98 (50.29)	0.970	1.010
0.870 (21.10)	0.983	1.006	1.19 (30.23)	0.975	1.009	1.99 (50.55)	0.985	1.005
0.875 (22.23)	1.000	1.000	1.20 (30.48)	1.000	1.000	2.00 (50.80)	1.000	1.000
0.880 (22.35)	1.017	0.994	1.21 (30.73)	1.025	0.992	2.01 (51.05)	1.015	0.995
0.885 (22.48)	1.034	0.989	1.22 (30.99)	1.051	0.984	2.02 (51.31)	1.030	0.990
0.890 (22.61)	1.051	0.983	1.23 (31.24)	1.077	0.976	2.03 (51.56)	1.046	0.985
0.895 (22.73)	1.069	0.978	1.24 (31.50)	1.105	0.968	2.04 (51.82)	1.061	0.980
0.900 (22.86)	1.087	0.972	1.25 (31.75)	1.130	0.960	2.05 (52.07)	1.076	0.976
0.905 (22.99)	1.106	0.967	1.26 (32.00)	1.158	0.952	2.06 (52.32)	1.092	0.972
0.910 (23.11)	1.125	0.962	1.27 (32.26)	1.185	0.945	2.07 (52.58)	1.109	0.967
0.915 (23.24)	1.143	0.956	1.28 (32.51)	1.214	0.938	2.08 (52.83)	1.125	0.962
0.920 (23.37)	1.162	0.951	1.29 (32.77)	1.242	0.930	2.09 (53.09)	1.141	0.957
0.925 (23.50)	1.181	0.946	1.30 (33.02)	1.271	0.923	2.10 (53.34)	1.158	0.952

(*c*) As provided for in HC-209(b) when the transverse test bars fail to meet the specification requirements, tension test specimens may be machined from the broken ends of the transverse test bar. If the tension specimens meet the requirements of the specified class, the castings shall be accepted.

HC-213 WORKMANSHIP, FINISH, AND REPAIR

(*a*) The surface of the casting shall conform substantially to the dimensions on drawings or to the dimensions predicated by the pattern, and be free from injurious defects. The surface of the casting shall be free from burnt-on sand and shall be reasonably smooth. Risers, fins, and projections used to facilitate the making of the casting shall be removed. In other respects, they shall conform to whatever requirements may be specially agreed upon between the Manufacturer and Purchaser.

(*b*) Seepage about chaplets, and minor leakage defects, may be repaired by peening or by plugging as directed below. Provided the surrounding metal is sound, a minor leak may be plugged with a solid cast iron tapered thread pipe plug. The maximum size of the pipe plug shall be 1 in. NPS (DN 25) and there shall be no less than four full standard pipe threads in the section metal. (See Table HC-213.)

HC-214 EXAMINATIONS AND TESTS

The Manufacturer shall be responsible for all examinations and tests. When requested by a Purchaser, the Manufacturer shall agree to permit a representative of the Purchaser to have entry, at the time while work under the contract of the Purchaser is being performed, to all parts of the Manufacturer's works that concern the castings manufactured to the requirements of this Article. All examinations and tests shall be made at the place of the manufacture prior to shipment, unless otherwise specified and shall be so conducted as not to interfere unnecessarily with the operation of the works.

HC-215 TEST RECORDS

The Manufacturer shall record and retain all test results required by this Article for a period of at least 1 year. The test results shall be readily identifiable with the casting represented by the test results.

TABLE HC-213
PIPE PLUG SIZE FOR MINIMUM WALL THICKNESS

Pipe Plug, NPS (DN)	Minimum Wall Thickness for 4 Thread Engagement, in. (mm)
1/8 (–)	0.15 (3.8)
1/4 (–)	0.22 (5.6)
3/8 (10)	0.22 (5.6)
1/2 (15)	0.285 (7.2)
3/4 (20)	0.285 (7.2)
1 (25)	0.35 (8.9)

ARTICLE 3
DESIGN

HC-300 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

(a) Table HC-300 gives the maximum allowable stress values in tension for castings conforming to the class iron listed therein.

(b) The maximum allowable stress value in bending shall be $1\frac{1}{2}$ times that permitted in tension and the maximum allowable stress value in compression shall be two times that permitted in tension.

(c) Stress values in Table HC-300 shall be used in calculations employing the available formulas in Part HG when applicable to the geometry of the boiler or boiler parts. Where the design pressure cannot be calculated under the available formulas, then the design pressure of the part in question shall be established in accordance with the provisions of HC-400.

TABLE HC-300
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR CAST IRON, ksi (MPa)
(Multiply ksi by 1000 to Obtain psi)

Spec. No. [Note (1)]	Class	Minimum Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Maximum Allowable Design Stress Values in Tension, ksi (MPa)
	20	20.0 (140)	4.0 (28)
	25	25.0 (173)	5.0 (35)
	30	30.0 (207)	6.0 (41)
	35	35.0 (242)	7.0 (48)
	40	40.0 (276)	8.0 (55)

GENERAL NOTE: Multiply MPa by 1000 to obtain kPa.

NOTE:
(1) Cast iron specifications shall comply with Article 2 of Part HC.

HC-301 BASIS FOR ESTABLISHING STRESS VALUES IN TABLE HC-300

In the determination of allowable stress values for pressure parts, the Committee is guided by successful experience in service, insofar as evidence of satisfactory performance is available. Such evidence is considered equivalent to test data where operating conditions are known with reasonable certainty. In the evaluation of new materials, it is necessary to be guided to a certain extent by the comparison of test information with similar data on successful applications of similar materials.

At any temperature below the creep range, the allowable stresses are established at no higher than the lowest of the following:

(1) $\frac{1}{5}$ of the specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature

(2) $\frac{1}{5}$ of the tensile strength at temperature

HC-310 HEADS

HC-310.1 Heads With Pressure on Concave Side. Heads with pressure on the concave side (plus heads) shall be designed in accordance with formulas in HG-305 using the maximum allowable stress value in tension from Table HC-300. Bolted flanges when cast integral with concave heads shall have dimensions that conform to ANSI B16.1, Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Class 125 and Class 250, and may be used as part of a pressure vessel for pressures not exceeding the ANSI ratings at temperatures not exceeding 450°F (230°C).

HC-310.2 Heads With Pressure on Convex Side. The thickness of heads with pressure on the convex side (minus heads) shall not be less than the thickness required in HC-310.1 for plus heads under the same pressure, nor less than 0.01 times the inside diameter of the head skirt.

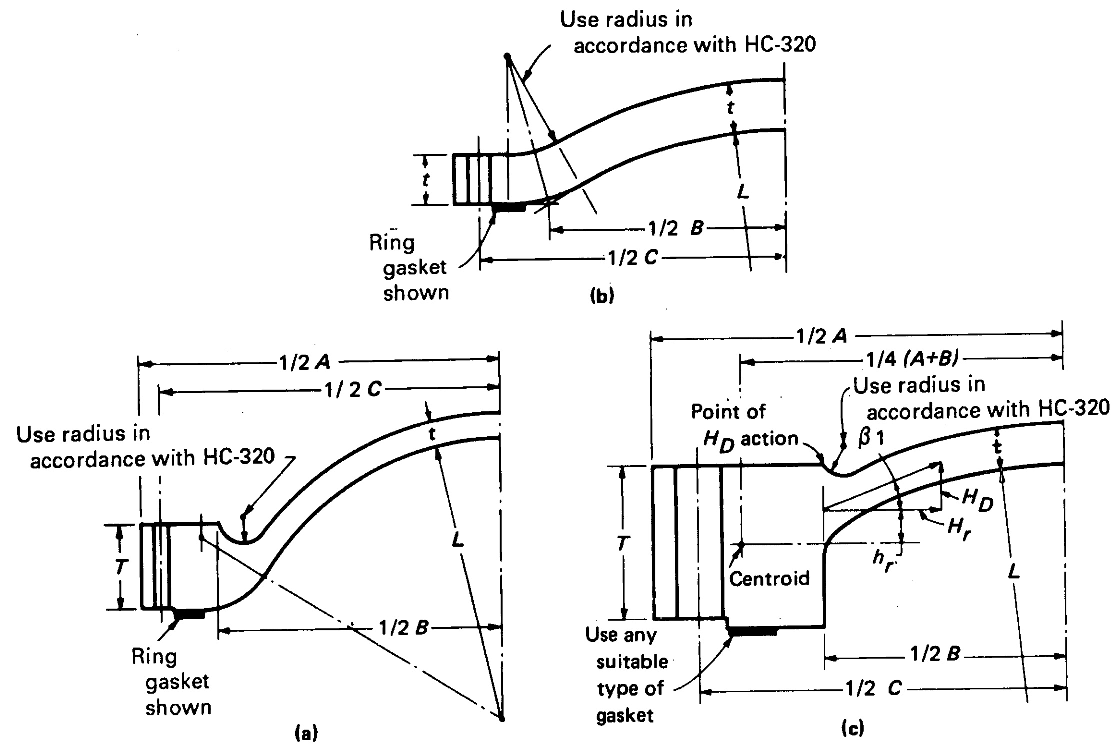
HC-311 SPHERICALLY SHAPED COVERS

Circular cast iron spherically shaped covers with bolting flanges, similar to Fig. HC-311, sketches (a), (b), and (c), shall be designed in accordance with the following, and shall also be subjected to the proof test provisions of HC-400.

(a) Notations. The symbols used in the formulas of this paragraph are defined as follows:

A = outside diameter of flange
B = inside diameter of flange
C = bolt circle diameter
L = inside spherical or crown radius

FIG. HC-311 SPHERICALLY SHAPED COVERS WITH BOLTING FLANGES



M_o = the total moment determined as in Section VIII, Division 1, Appendix 2, 2-6, except that for heads of the type shown in Fig. HC-311, sketch (c), a moment $H_r h_r$ (which may add or subtract) shall be included in addition to the moment $H_D h_D$ where

H_D = axial component of the membrane load in the spherical segment acting at the inside of the flange ring
= $0.785B^2P$

h_D = radial distance from the bolt circle to the inside of the flange ring

H_r = radial component of the membrane load in the spherical segment acting at the intersection of the inside of the flange ring with the center line of the dished cover thickness
= $H_D \cot \beta_1$

h_r = lever arm of force H_r about centroid of flange ring

P = design pressure for existing vessels

r = inside knuckle radius

S = maximum allowable stress value as given in Table HC-300

T = flange thickness

t = minimum required thickness of head plate after forming

β_1 = angle formed by the tangent to the center line of the dished cover thickness at its point of intersection with the flange ring, and a line perpendicular to the axis of the dished cover
= $\arcsin\,[B/(2L + t)]$

NOTE: Since $H_r h_r$ in some cases will subtract from the total moment, the moment in the flange ring when the internal pressure is zero may be the determining loading for the flange design.

HC-311.1 Heads Concave to Pressure. Circular spherically dished heads with bolting flanges, concave to the pressure and conforming to the several types illustrated in Fig. HC-311, shall be designed in accordance with the following formulas:

(a) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HC-311, Sketch (a)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness T:

For ring gasket,

$$T = \sqrt{\frac{M_o}{SB}\left[\frac{A + B}{A - B}\right]}$$

For full-faced gasket,

$$T = 0.6\sqrt{\frac{P}{S}\left[\frac{B(A+B)(C-B)}{A-B}\right]}$$

NOTE: The radial components of the membrane load in the spherical segment are assumed to be resisted by its flange.

Within the range of ANSI B16.1-1975, the flange facings and drillings should conform to those standards and the thickness specified therein shall be considered as a minimum requirement.

(b) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HC-311, Sketch (b)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness for ring gaskets shall be calculated as follows:

(a) For heads with round bolting holes,

$$t = Q + \sqrt{\frac{1.875M_o(C+B)}{SB(7C-5B)}} \qquad \text{(I)}$$

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left[\frac{C+B}{7C-5B}\right] \qquad \text{(II)}$$

(b) For heads with bolting holes slotted through the edge of the head,

$$T = Q + \sqrt{\frac{1.875M_o(C+B)}{SB(3C-B)}} \qquad \text{(III)}$$

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left[\frac{C+B}{3C-B}\right] \qquad \text{(IV)}$$

(3) Flange thickness for full face gaskets shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$T = Q + \sqrt{Q^2 + \frac{3BQ(C-B)}{L}} \qquad \text{(V)}$$

The value of Q in eq. (V) is calculated by eq. (II) for round bolting holes or by eq. (IV) for bolting holes slotted through the edge of the head.

(4) The required flange thickness shall be T as calculated in (2) or (3) above, but in no case less than the value of t calculated in (1).

(c) Heads of the Type Shown in Fig. HC-311, Sketch (c)

(1) Head thickness

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S}$$

(2) Flange thickness

$$T = F + \sqrt{F^2 + J}$$

where

$$F = \frac{PB\sqrt{4L^2 - B^2}}{8S\,(A-B)}$$

and

$$J = \left(\frac{M_o}{SB}\right)\left(\frac{A+B}{A-B}\right)$$

HC-315 OPENINGS AND REINFORCEMENTS

(a) The dimensional requirements in HG-320 through HG-328 are applicable to cast iron and shall be used in the design of openings and reinforcements in boilers and boiler parts.

(b) Cast iron flanges, nozzles, and opening reinforcements that enter into the design calculations of the completed boiler or boiler part, shall be cast integrally with the boiler or boiler part.

HC-320 CORNERS AND FILLETS 07

(a) A liberal radius shall be provided at projecting edges, reentrant corners, and the juncture of non–load-bearing heat-transmitting fins and pins where they connect to the body of the casting, in accordance with good foundry practice. Abrupt changes in surface contour and in wall thickness at junctures shall be avoided.

(b) Fillets and transition sections between adjacent main pressure containment walls or integral attachments thereto, such as nozzles, lugs, supports, flanges, and bosses, shall have radii or the equivalent not less than one times the thickness of the thinner of the sections being joined.

HC-325 WASHOUT OPENINGS

All cast iron steam and hot water boilers shall be provided with washout openings to permit the removal of any sediment that may accumulate therein. Washout plugs shall not be smaller than NPS $1^1\!/_2$ (DN 40) for boilers having gross internal volume more than 5 ft^3 (142 l). Washout plugs shall not be smaller than 1 in. (25 mm) for boilers having gross internal volume not more than 5 ft^3 (142 l). Washout openings may be used for return pipe connections and the washout plug placed in a tee so that the plug is directly opposite and as close as possible to the opening in the boiler.

HC-330 ASSEMBLY METHOD

Cast iron boilers may be assembled using internal connections, such as electrochemically compatible metallic push nipples or grommet seals, or external connections such as cast iron headers or threaded pipe headers. The completed boiler shall satisfactorily pass the hydrostatic test prescribed in HC-410.

ARTICLE 4
TESTS

HC-400 TESTS TO ESTABLISH DESIGN PRESSURE

HC-401 GENERAL

(a) The design pressure for a boiler or boiler parts, for which the strength cannot be computed with a satisfactory assurance of accuracy, shall be established in accordance with the requirement of this paragraph using the following test procedure.

(b) Safety of testing personnel should be given serious consideration when conducting the bursting tests in HC-402.

HC-401.1 Purpose for Which Tests May Be Used. The tests in these paragraphs may be used for the purpose of establishing the design pressure of those parts or component parts for which the thickness cannot be determined by means of design rules given in this Section. Design changes shall also require a retest. The maximum allowable working pressure of all other elements or component parts shall not be greater than that determined by means of the applicable design rules.

HC-401.2 Frequency of Tests. The tests performed in HC-401.1 shall be repeated within every 5 year period. This testing period may be extended when parts are intermittently produced, in which case the tests shall be performed at the time of or before the first production run after the 5 year period. All requirements of HC-403 shall be met.

HC-402 BURSTING TEST PROCEDURE

(a) The design pressure of any component part tested by this method shall be established by a hydrostatic test to failure by rupture of a full-size sample of such pressure part. As an alternative, the hydrostatic test may be stopped when the test pressure reaches a value that will, by the formula in (b), justify the design pressure.

(b) The design pressure of any component part determined by either method shall be based on hydrostatically testing three representative boilers or boiler parts. The lowest value of P_B obtained shall be used in determining the value of P_R in the following formula:

$$P_R = \frac{P_B}{5} \times \left[\frac{\text{Specified minimum tensile strength}^{1}}{\text{Average tensile strength of associated test bar (see HC-402.2)}} \right]$$

where

P_B = test pressure per HC-402(a), psi (kPa)
P_R = design pressure, psi (kPa)

NOTE: Due to the geometry of parts of cast iron boilers, failure under hydrostatic tests is principally in bending. When an analysis of the test indicates failure occurred in bending, P_R may be multiplied by 1.5.

HC-402.1 Test Gages

(a) An indicating gage shall be connected directly to the vessel. If the indicating gage is not readily visible to the operator controlling the pressure applied, an additional indicating gage shall be provided where it will be visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. For large vessels, it is recommended that a recording gage be used in addition to indicating gages.

(b) Dial indicating pressure gages used in testing shall be graduated over a range of about double the intended maximum test pressure, but in no case shall the range be less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ nor more than 4 times that pressure. Digital reading pressure gages having a wider range of pressure may be used provided the readings give the same or greater degree of accuracy as obtained with dial pressure gages.

(c) All gages shall be calibrated against a standard deadweight tester or a calibrated master gage. Gages shall be recalibrated at any time that there is reason to believe that they are in error.

HC-402.2 Associated Test Bars. A separately cast test bar shall be produced, machined, and tested in accordance with the requirements of the tensile bar test procedure in Article 2 of Part HC for each of the three boilers or boiler sections to be tested to destruction [see HC-402(b)]. Each test bar shall be from the same ladle of iron from which is cast the boiler or boiler section to be subjected to bursting. The arithmetical average tensile strength, psi, of the three bars shall be determined and shall equal or exceed the minimum tensile strength, specified in Table HC-300, of the class of iron selected by the Manufacturer for use

[1] The specified tensile strength is the tensile strength for the class of iron set forth in Table HC-300.

in the formula in HC-402(b) for determining the design pressure. In no case shall the actual tensile strength of any of the three test bars, used to determine this arithmetical average tensile strength, be more than 10% under the minimum tensile strength listed in Table HC-300 for the class of iron selected by the Manufacturer. The tensile strengths obtained from the associated test bars shall be recorded on the Manufacturer's Master Data Report for Boilers Constructed From Cast Iron (Form H-5).

HC-403 WITNESSING, RECORDING, AND CERTIFYING TESTS

Tests to establish the design pressure of a boiler or boiler parts shall be witnessed by a Certified Individual (see HC-502.12). These bursting tests shall be recorded on the Manufacturer's Master Data Report for Boilers Constructed From Cast Iron as shown in Form H-5 and the completed form shall be certified by the designated responsible engineering head of the Manufacturer and his signature notarized. These forms shall be kept on file by the Manufacturer as a matter of record.

HC-404 RATING OF PRODUCTION BOILERS BASED ON TESTS

All boilers or boiler parts of the same material, design, and construction, whose design pressures are based on a test to destruction of a sample boiler or boiler part in accordance with HC-402, shall be considered to have design pressures equal to the maximum allowable working pressure thus determined and shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure in conformity with rules of HC-410.

HC-410 HYDROSTATIC TEST

All completed boilers or boiler parts shall satisfactorily pass the hydrostatic test prescribed in this paragraph.

HC-410.1 Steam Boilers. All steam boilers shall have each individual section or boiler part subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure of not less than 60 psig (400 kPa) at the shop where made. The assembled boiler shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test of not less than 45 psig (300 kPa).

HC-410.2 Hot Water Boilers. All hot water heating or hot water supply boilers marked for maximum allowable working pressures not over 30 psi (200 kPa) shall have each individual section or boiler part subjected to a hydrostatic test of not less than 60 psi (400 kPa) at the shop where made. Hot water heating and hot water supply boilers marked for maximum allowable working pressures over 30 psi (200 kPa) shall have each individual section or boiler part subjected to a hydrostatic test of $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the maximum allowable working pressure at the shop where made. The assembled boiler shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the maximum allowable working pressure. 07

HC-410.3 Required Test Pressure. In making hydrostatic pressure tests, the pressure shall be under such control that in no case shall the required test pressure be exceeded by more than 10 psi (70 kPa).

ARTICLE 5
QUALITY CONTROL AND INSPECTION

HC-501 GENERAL

HC-501.1 Quality Control System. Each Manufacturer[1] or shop assembler shall have and maintain a quality control system that will establish that all Code requirements, including material, design, testing, fabrication, examination, and inspection (by the Manufacturer and shop assembler), shall be met.

Providing that Code requirements are suitably identified, the system may include provisions for satisfying any requirements by the Manufacturer or shop assembler or user that exceed minimum Code requirements and may also include provision for quality control of non-Code work. In such systems, the Manufacturer or shop assembler may make changes in parts of the system that do not affect the Code requirements.

The system that the Manufacturer or shop assembler uses to meet the requirements of this Section must be one suitable for his own circumstances. The necessary scope and detail of the system shall depend upon the complexity of the work performed and upon the size and complexity of the organization. A written description of the system the Manufacturer or shop assembler will use to produce a Code item shall be available for review. Depending upon the circumstances, the description may be brief or voluminous.

The written description may contain information of a proprietary nature relating to the Manufacturer's or shop assembler's processes. Therefore, the Code does not require any distribution of this information, except to the ASME Designee, as covered by HC-502.11.3. It is intended that information learned about the quality control system in connection with evaluation will be treated as confidential.

HC-502 OUTLINE OF FEATURES TO BE INCLUDED IN THE WRITTEN DESCRIPTION OF THE QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM

The following is a guide to some of the features that should be covered in the written description of the quality control system.

[1] In Article 5, the Manufacturer referred to is the foundry who casts the boiler part or section and who may shop assemble it.

HC-502.1 Product or Work Description. The quality control system shall contain a brief description of the products the Manufacturer wishes to fabricate under the Code or the work the shop assembler wishes to accomplish under the Code.

HC-502.2 Authority and Responsibility. The authority and responsibility of those in charge of the quality control system shall be clearly established. Persons performing quality control functions shall have sufficient and well-defined responsibility, the authority, and the organizational freedom to identify quality control problems and to initiate, recommend, and provide solutions.

HC-502.3 Organization. An organization chart showing the relationship between management and engineering, purchasing, manufacturing, inspection, and quality control is required to reflect the actual organization. The purpose of this chart is to identify and associate the various organizational groups with the particular function for which they are responsible. The Code does not intend to encroach on the Manufacturer's or shop assembler's right to establish and, from time to time, alter whatever form of organization the Manufacturer or shop assembler considers appropriate for his Code work.

HC-502.4 Drawings, Design Calculations, Test Results, and Specification Control. The Manufacturer's or shop assembler's quality control system shall provide procedures that will insure that the latest applicable drawings, design calculations, test results, specifications, and instructions required by the Code, as well as authorized changes, are used for manufacture, assembly, examination, inspection, and testing.

HC-502.5 Material Control. The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall include a system that requires verification that the material meets the requirements of Article 2 of Part HC. The system shall assure that only the intended material is used in Code construction.

HC-502.6 Examination Program. The Manufacturer's or shop assembler's quality control system shall describe the bursting test procedure and the fabrication operations, sufficiently to determine at which stages specific examinations are to be performed.

HC-502.7 Correction of Nonconformities. There shall be a system for correction of nonconformities. A nonconformity is any condition that does not comply with the applicable rules of this Section. Nonconformities must be corrected or eliminated before the completed component can be considered to comply with this Section.

HC-502.8 Calibration of Measurement and Test Equipment. The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall have a system for calibration of all equipment used for examination, measuring, and testing to fulfill the requirements of this Section.

HC-502.9 Sample Forms. The forms used in the quality control system and any detailed procedures for their use shall be available for review. The written description shall make necessary references to these forms. The forms exhibited shall be marked "Sample" and completed in a manner typical of actual production and test procedures.

HC-502.10 Retention of Records. The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall have a system for retaining the Manufacturer's Data Forms for a minimum of 15 years.

HC-502.11 ASME Designee

HC-502.11.1 The written description of the quality control system shall include reference to the ASME Designee.

HC-502.11.2 The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall make available to the ASME Designee a controlled copy of the written description of the quality control system.

HC-502.11.3 The Manufacturer's or shop assembler's quality control system shall provide for the ASME Designee to have access to all drawings, calculations, specifications, procedures, process sheets, repair procedures, records, test results, and any other documents as necessary for the ASME Designee to perform his review in accordance with this Section. The Manufacturer or shop assembler may provide such access either to his own files of such documents or by providing copies to the ASME Designee.

HC-502.12 Certified Individual (CI). A Certified Individual shall provide oversight of the activities that affect the proper utilization of the "H" symbol on cast iron sections as outlined in Part HC.

HC-502.12.1 Requirements for a Certified Individual (CI). A Certified Individual (CI) shall

(a) be an employee of the Manufacturer.

(b) be qualified by the Manufacturer. Qualifications shall include as a minimum:

(1) knowledge of the requirements of Parts HG and HC

(2) knowledge of the Manufacturer's quality program

(3) training commensurate with the scope, complexity, or special nature of the activities to which oversight is to be provided

(c) have a record, maintained and certified by the Manufacturer, containing objective evidence of the qualifications and training of the CI.

(d) not be directly involved in the production of cast iron sections for which he is performing the duties listed in HC-502.12.2.

HC-502.12.2 Duties of a Certified Individual (CI). A Certified Individual (CI) shall

(a) witness tests to determine the design pressure of a boiler or boiler part as outlined in HC-403

(b) verify that cast iron sections marked with the "H" symbol have a current H-5 Manufacturers Master Data Report for Boilers Constructed of Cast Iron

(c) review the tensile and chemical composition tests records, verifying that they meet the requirements of Article 2 of Part HC

(d) review documentation to verify that cast iron sections marked with the "H" symbol have been hydrostatically tested as required by HC-410

(e) sign the Certificates of Conformance as outlined in HC-520

HC-510 EXAMINATION

Examination of each boiler or boiler part shall be in compliance with Article 2 of Part HC. Hydrostatic tests shall be conducted as required in HC-410 by the Manufacturer or shop assembler, and there shall be a means of identifying acceptable boiler sections or parts.

HC-520 CERTIFICATES OF CONFORMANCE

Cast iron boiler sections marked with the "H" symbol shall be recorded on Certificates of Conformance as follows:

(a) A Certificate of Conformance Form HC-1 listing the pattern number, cast date, and quantity of castings marked with the "H" symbol shall be filled out and signed by a representative of the Manufacturer, and signed by a Certified Individual.

(1) Multiple cast iron boiler sections may be recorded on the same HC-1 form.

(2) Castings with the same cast date may be recorded on the same line.

(b) A Certificate of Conformance Form HC-2 listing the pattern number, MAWP, hydrostatic test pressure and quantity of cast iron sections that have satisfactorily passed the hydrostatic test required in HC-410 shall be filled out and signed by a respresentative of the Manufacturer, and signed by a Certified Individual.

(1) Multiple cast iron boiler sections may be recorded on the same HC-2 form.

(c) The Manufacturer's written quality control program shall include requirements for completion of the Certificates of Conformance and retention by the Manufacturer for a minimum of 5 years.

(d) The representative of the Manufacturer and Certified Individual above shall not be the same person.

07

PART HA
REQUIREMENTS FOR BOILERS CONSTRUCTED OF CAST ALUMINUM

ARTICLE 1
GENERAL

HA-100 SCOPE

The rules in Part HA are applicable to hot water heating boilers that are constructed primarily of cast aluminum sections and shall be used in conjunction with general requirements of Part HG of this section.

ARTICLE 2
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

HA-200 GENERAL MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

(a) All materials used for cast sections of heating boilers that are constructed primarily of cast aluminum shall meet the requirements of this Article and material specifications listed in HF-300.2 for aluminum castings.

(b) External appurtenances such as cast or welded headers and other miscellaneous pressure parts shall be manufactured from materials permitted under Part HF-203. The design pressure for these pressure parts for which the strength cannot be computed shall be established in accordance with HG-500.

(c) Maximum allowable water temperature is 250°F (120°C).

HA-201 WORKMANSHIP, FINISH, AND REPAIR

(a) The surface of the casting shall conform substantially to the dimensions on drawings or to the dimensions predicated by the pattern, and be free from injurious defects. The surface of the casting shall be free from burnt-on sand and shall be reasonably smooth. Risers, fins, and projections used to facilitate the making of the casting shall be removed. In other respects, they shall conform to whatever requirements may be specially agreed upon between the Manufacturer and shop assembler when the shop assembler is separate from the Manufacturer.

(b) Seepage about chaplets, and minor leakage defects, may be repaired by plugging, impregnation, or welding as directed in the following:

(1) Provided the surrounding metal is sound, a minor leak may be plugged with a solid aluminum, brass, or stainless steel tapered thread pipe plug. The maximum size of the pipe plug shall be NPS 1 (DN 25) and there shall be no less than four full standard pipe threads in the section metal. (See Table HC-213.)

(2) Impregnation may be used to correct seepage leaks in aluminum alloy castings under the following conditions:

(a) Limitations of the extent and frequency of impregnation shall be as approved in the Manufacturer's written quality control system.

(b) Impregnated castings shall be marked in a way that is approved in the Manufacturer's written quality control system. The method of marking shall be documented in the shop assembler's QC manual when the shop assembler is separate from the Manufacturer.

(c) Control of the impregnation process shall be addressed in the Manufacturer's QC manual.

(d) The impregnation material shall meet the requirements of Class 1 material as defined in MIL-I-17563C.[1]

(e) Impregnation shall be accomplished in accordance with MIL-STD-276.[1]

(f) Welding shall not be performed on castings after impregnation.

(g) The Manufacturer shall hydrostatically test each casting per HA-410 after impregnation.

(3) Castings may be repaired by welding only as approved in the Manufacturer's and shop assemblers written quality control system.

(a) Limitations on the extent and frequency of such repairs, and methods of inspection of repaired areas shall also be covered in the written quality control system.

(b) The welding procedure and welders shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

(c) Control of the welding process shall be addressed in the quality control manual.

(d) Welding shall not be performed after impregnation.

HA-202 EXAMINATIONS AND TESTS

The Manufacturer shall be responsible for all examinations and tests. When requested by a shop assembler, the Manufacturer shall agree to permit a representative of the shop assembler to have entry, at the time while work under the contract of the shop assembler is being performed, to all parts of the Manufacturer's works that concern the castings manufactured to the requirements of this Article. All examinations and tests shall be made at the place of manufacture prior to shipment, unless otherwise specified

[1] Military specification is available from Standardization Documents Order Desk, Building 4D, 700 Robbins Avenue, Philadelphia, PA 19111-5094.

and shall be so conducted as not to interfere unnecessarily with the operation of the works.

HA-203 TEST RECORDS

The Manufacturer shall record and retain all test results required by this Article for a period of at least 1 year. The test results shall be readily identifiable with the casting represented by the test results.

ARTICLE 3
DESIGN

HA-300 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

(a) Table HF-300.2 gives the maximum allowable stress values in tension for aluminum castings.

(b) Stress values in Table HF-300.2 shall be used in calculations employing the available formulas in Part HG when applicable to the geometry of the boiler or boiler parts. Where the design pressure cannot be calculated under the available formulas, then the design pressure of the part in question shall be established in accordance with the provisions of HA-400.

HA-301 HEADS AND SPHERICALLY SHAPED COVERS

Circular spherically dished heads with bolting flanges, concave to the pressure and conforming to the several types illustrated in Fig. HC-311 shall be designed in accordance with HC-311 and HC-311.1.

HA-302 OPENINGS AND REINFORCEMENTS

(a) The dimensional requirements in HG-320 through HG-328 are applicable to aluminum and shall be used in the design of openings and reinforcements in boilers and boiler parts.

(b) Cast flanges, nozzles, and opening reinforcements that enter into design calculations of the completed boiler or boiler part shall be cast integrally with the boiler or boiler part.

(c) Core holes in aluminum alloy castings may be plugged with electrochemically compatible push-in sealing caps under the following conditions:

(1) The sealing caps shall only be used to plug holes required for the manufacturing process, such as core sand removal. They shall not be used for repair.

(2) The dimensions of the plug and mating hole shall conform to manufacturers' standards or such published standards as DIN 443.[1]

(3) Proof testing to establish design pressure is required and shall comply with HA-402.

(4) The shop assembler shall hydrostatically test each casting per HA-406.

HA-303 CORNERS AND FILLETS

(a) A liberal radius shall be provided at projecting edges and reentrant corners, and the juncture of non–load-bearing heat transmitting fins and pins where they connect to the body of the casting, in accordance with good foundry practice. Abrupt changes in surface contour and in wall thickness at junctures shall be avoided.

(b) Fillets and transition sections between adjacent main pressure containment walls or integral attachments thereto, such as nozzles, lugs, supports, flanges, and bosses, shall have radii or the equivalent not less than one times the thickness of the thinner of the sections being joined.

HA-304 WASHOUT OPENINGS

All cast aluminum hot water boilers shall be provided with washout openings to permit the removal of any sediment that may accumulate therein. Washout plugs shall not be smaller than NPS 1½ (DN 40) for boilers having a gross internal volume more than 5 ft^3 (142 l). Washout plugs shall not be smaller than NPS 1 (DN 25) for boilers having gross internal volumes from 2.0 ft^3 (57 l) through 5.0 ft^3 (142 l). Washout plugs shall not be smaller than NPS ¾ (DN 20) for boilers having gross internal volumes less than 2.0 ft^3 (57 l). Washout openings may be used for return pipe connections and the washout plug placed in a tee so that the plug is directly opposite and as close as possible to the opening in the boiler.

HA-305 ASSEMBLY METHOD

Cast aluminum boilers may be assembled using internal connections, such as electrochemically compatible metallic push nipples, grommet seals, or external connections such as cast headers or threaded pipe headers. The complete boiler shall satisfactorily pass the hydrostatic test prescribed in HA-406.

[1] English translations of DIN 443 and its references can be obtained from DIN Deutsches Institute fur Normung e. V., Burggrafenstrasse, 10787 Berlin, Germany, Tel: +49 30 2601-0, Fax: +49 30 2601-1231.

ARTICLE 4
TESTS

HA-400 TESTS TO ESTABLISH DESIGN PRESSURE

HA-401 GENERAL

(a) The design pressure for a boiler or boiler parts for which the strength cannot be computed shall be established in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph using the following test procedure.

(b) Safety of testing personnel should be given serious consideration when conducting the bursting tests in HA-402.

HA-401.1 Purpose for Which Tests May Be Used. The tests in these paragraphs may be used for the purpose of establishing the design pressure of those parts or component parts for which the thickness cannot be determined by means of design rules given in this Section. Design changes shall also require a retest. The maximum allowable working pressure of all other elements or component parts shall not be greater than that determined by means of the applicable design rules.

HA-401.2 Frequency of Tests. The tests performed in HA-401.1 shall be repeated within every 5-year period. This testing period may be extended when parts are intermittently produced, in which case the tests shall be performed at the time of or before the first production run after the 5-year period. All requirements of HA-403 shall be met.

HA-402 BURSTING TEST PROCEDURE

(a) The design pressure of any component part tested by this method shall be established by a hydrostatic test to failure by rupture of a full-size sample of such pressure part. As an alternative, the hydrostatic test may be stopped when the test pressure reaches a value that will, by the formula in HA-402(b), justify the design pressure.

(b) The design pressure of any component part determined by this method shall be based on hydrostatically testing three representative boilers or boiler parts. The lowest value of P_B obtained shall be used in determining the value of P_R in the following formula:

$$P_R = \frac{P_B}{5} \times \frac{S}{S_a \text{ or } S_m} \times \frac{S_2}{S_1}$$

where

P_B = test pressure per HA-402(a), psi (kPa)
P_R = design pressure, psi (kPa)
S = specified minimum tensile strength, psi (kPa)
S_a = average actual tensile strength of test specimens, psi (kPa)
S_m = maximum tensile strength of range of specimens, psi (kPa)
S_1 = maximum allowable stress at room temperature, psi (kPa)
S_2 = maximum allowable strength at design temperature, psi (kPa)

HA-403 TEST GAGES

(a) An indicating gage shall be connected directly to the vessel. Intermediate pipe and fittings may be used provided there are no intervening valves. If the indicating gage is not readily visible to the operator controlling the pressure applied, an additional indicating gage shall be provided where it will be visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. For large vessels, it is recommended that a recording gage be used in addition to indicating gages.

(b) Dial indicating pressure gages used in testing shall be graduated over a range of about double the intended maximum test pressure, but in no case shall the range be less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ or more than 4 times that pressure. Digital reading pressure gages having a wider range of pressure may be used provided the readings give the same or greater degree of accuracy as obtained with dial pressure gages.

(c) All gages shall be calibrated against a standard deadweight tester or a calibrated master gage. Gages shall be recalibrated at any time that there is reason to believe that they are in error.

HA-404 WITNESSING, RECORDING, AND CERTIFYING TESTS

Test to establish the design pressure of a boiler or boiler parts shall be witnessed by a Certified Individual. See HA-502.12. These bursting tests shall be recorded on the

Manufacturer's Master Data Report for Boilers Constructed From Cast Aluminum as shown in Form H-5A. The completed form shall be certified by the designated responsible engineering head of the Manufacturer and his signature on the form shall be notarized. These forms shall be kept on file by the Manufacturer as a matter of record.

HA-405 RATING OF PRODUCTION BOILERS BASED ON TESTS

All boilers or boiler parts of the same material, design, and construction, whose design pressures are based on a test to destruction of a sample boiler or boiler part in accordance with HA-402, shall be considered to have design pressures equal to the maximum allowable working pressure thus determined and shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure in conformity with rules of HA-406.

HA-406 HYDROSTATIC TEST

All completed boilers or boiler parts shall satisfactorily pass the hydrostatic test prescribed in this paragraph.

HA-406.1 Hot Water Boilers. All hot water heating boilers marked for maximum allowable working pressures not over 30 psi (207 kPa) shall have each individual section or boiler part subjected to a hydrostatic test of not less than 60 psi (414 kPa) at the shop where made. Hot water heating boilers marked for maximum allowable working pressures over 30 psi (207 kPa) shall have each individual section or boiler part subjected to a hydrostatic test of $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the maximum allowable working pressure at the shop where made. The assembled boiler shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the maximum allowable working pressure.

HA-406.2 Required Test Pressure. In making hydrostatic pressure tests, the pressure shall be under such control that in no case shall the required test pressure be exceeded by more than 10 psi (69 kPa).

ARTICLE 5
QUALITY CONTROL AND INSPECTION

HA-501 GENERAL

HA-501.1 Quality Control System. Each Manufacturer[1] or shop assembler shall have and maintain a quality control system that will establish that all Code requirements, including material, design, testing, fabrication, examination, and inspection (by the Manufacturer and shop assembler) shall be met.

Providing that Code requirements are suitably identified, the system may include provisions for satisfying any requirements by the Manufacturer or shop assembler or user that exceed minimum Code requirements and may also include provision for quality control of non-Code work. In such systems, the Manufacturer or shop assembler may make changes in parts of the system, which do not affect the Code requirements.

The system that the Manufacturer or shop assembler uses to meet the requirements of this Section must be one suitable for his own circumstances. The necessary scope and detail of the system shall depend upon the complexity of the work performed and the size and complexity of the organization. A written description of the system the Manufacturer or shop assembler will use to produce a Code item shall be available for review. Depending upon the circumstances, the description may be brief or voluminous.

The written description may contain information of a proprietary nature relating to the Manufacturer's or shop assembler's processes. Therefore, the Code does not require any distribution of this information, except to the ASME Designee, as covered by HA-502.11.3. It is intended that information learned about the quality control system in connection with evaluation will be treated as confidential.

HA-502 OUTLINE OF FEATURES TO BE INCLUDED IN THE WRITTEN DESCRIPTION OF THE QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM

The following is a guide to some of the features that should be covered in the written description of the quality control system.

[1] In Article 5, the Manufacturer referred to is the foundry who casts the boiler part or section and who may shop assemble it.

HA-502.1 Product or Work Description. The quality control system shall contain a brief description of the products the Manufacturer wishes to fabricate under the Code or the work the shop assembler wishes to accomplish under the Code.

HA-502.2 Authority and Responsibility. The authority and responsibility of those in charge of the quality control shall be clearly established. Persons performing quality control functions shall have sufficient and well-defined responsibility, the authority, and the organizational freedom to identify quality control problems and to initiate, recommend, and provide solutions.

HA-502.3 Organization. An organization chart showing the relationship between management and engineering, purchasing, manufacturing, inspection and quality control is required to reflect the actual organization. The purpose of this chart is to identify and associate the various organizational groups with the particular function for which they are responsible. The Code does not intend to encroach on the Manufacturer's or shop assembler's right to establish and, from time to time, alter whatever form of organization the Manufacturer or shop assembler considers appropriate for his Code work.

HA-502.4 Drawings, Design Calculations, Test Results, and Specification Control. The Manufacturer's or shop assembler's quality control system shall provide procedures that will insure that the latest applicable drawings, design calculations, test results, specifications, and instructions required by the Code, as well as authorized changes, are used for manufacture, assembly, examination, inspection, and testing.

HA-502.5 Material Control. The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall include a system that requires verification that the material meets the requirements of Article 2 of Part HA. The system shall assure that only the intended material is used in Code construction.

HA-502.6 Examination Program. The Manufacturer's or shop assembler's quality control system shall describe the bursting test procedure and the fabrication operations, sufficiently to determine at which stages specific examinations are to be performed.

HA-502.7 Correction of Nonconformities. There shall be a system for correction of nonconformities. A nonconformity is any condition that does not comply with the applicable rules of this Section. Nonconformities must be corrected or eliminated before the completed component can be considered to comply with this Section.

HA-502.8 Calibration of Measurement and Test Equipment. The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall have a system for calibration of all equipment used for examination, measuring, and testing to fulfill the requirements of this Section.

HA-502.9 Sample Forms. The forms used in the quality control system and any detailed procedures for their use shall be available for review. The written description shall make necessary references to these forms. The forms exhibited shall be marked "Sample" and completed in a manner typical of actual production and test procedures.

HA-502.10 Retention of Records. The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall have a system for retaining the Manufacturer's Data Forms for a minimum of 15 years.

HA-502.11 ASME Designee

HA-502.11.1. The written description of the quality control system shall include reference to the ASME Designee.

HA-502.11.2. The Manufacturer or shop assembler shall make available to the ASME Designee a controlled copy of the written description of the quality control system.

HA-502.11.3. The Manufacturer's or shop assembler's quality control system shall provide for the ASME Designee to have access to all drawings, calculations, specifications, procedures, process sheets, repair procedures, records, test results, and any other documents as necessary for the ASME Designee to perform his review in accordance with this Section. The Manufacturer or shop assembler may provide such access either to his own files of such documents or by providing copies to the ASME designee.

HA-502.12 Certified Individual (CI). A Certified Individual shall provide oversight of the activities that affect the proper utilization of the "H" symbol on cast aluminum sections as outlined in Part HA.

HA-502.12.1 Requirements for a Certified Individual (CI). A Certified Individual shall

(a) be an employee of the Manufacturer

(b) be qualified by the Manufacturer. Qualifications shall include the following as a minimum:

(1) knowledge of the requirements of Parts HG, HC, and HA

(2) knowledge of the Manufacturer's quality control system

(3) training commensurate with the scope, complexity, or special nature of the activities to which oversight is provided

(c) have a record, maintained and certified by the Manufacturer, containing objective evidence of the qualifications and training of the CI

(d) not be directly involved in the production of cast aluminum sections for which he is performing the duties listed in HA-502.12.2

HA-502.12.2 Duties of a Certified Individual (CI). A Certified Individual (CI) shall

(a) witness tests to determine the design pressure of boiler or boiler part as outlined in HA-403

(b) verify that cast aluminum sections marked with the "H" symbol shall have a current H-5A Manufacturer's Master Data Report for Boilers Constructed Primarily of Cast Aluminum

(c) review the tensile and chemical composition tests records, verifying that they meet the requirements of Table HF-300.2

(c) review documentation to verify that cast aluminum sections marked with the "H" symbol have been hydrostatically tested as required by HA-410

(d) sign the Certificates of Conformance as outlined in HA-520

HA-503 EXAMINATION

Examination of each boiler or part shall be in compliance with Article 2 of Part HA. Hydrostatic tests shall be conducted as required in HA-410 by the Manufacturer or shop assembler, and there shall be a means of identifying acceptable boiler sections or parts.

HA-504 CERTIFICATES OF CONFORMANCE

Cast aluminum boiler sections marked with the "H" symbol shall be recorded on Certificates of Conformance as follows:

(a) A Certificate of Conformance Form HA-1 listing the pattern number, cast date, and quantity of castings marked with the "H" symbol shall be filled out and signed by a representative of the Manufacturer and signed by a Certified Individual.

(1) Multiple cast aluminum boiler sections may be recorded on the same HA-1 form.

(2) Castings with the same casting date may be recorded on the same line.

(b) A Certificate of Conformance Form HA-2 listing the pattern number, MAWP, hydrostatic test pressure, and quantity of cast aluminum sections that have satisfactorily passed the hydrostatic test required in HA-410 shall be filled out and signed by a representative of the Manufacturer, and signed by a Certified Individual. Multiple cast aluminum boiler sections may be recorded on the same HA-2 form.

(c) The Manufacturer's written quality control system shall include requirements for completion of the Certificates of Conformance and retention by the Manufacturer for a minimum of 5 years.

(d) The representative of the Manufacturer and Certified Individual above shall not be the same person.

PART HLW REQUIREMENTS FOR POTABLE-WATER HEATERS

INTRODUCTION

The following is a brief introduction to Part HLW. It is general in nature, and should not be considered as a substitute for actual review of appropriate articles of the document. However, this will give the user a better understanding of the purpose, requirements, and intent of Part HLW.

Part HLW applies to water heaters in commercial or industrial sizes providing corrosion resistance for supplying potable hot water for commercial purposes at pressures not exceeding 160 psig (1 100 kPa) and temperatures not exceeding 210°F (99°C).

Part HLW does not apply to residential size water heaters, which are excluded by provisions of HLW-101.

Differences in applicable criteria for water heaters versus hot water heating boilers are as follows:

(a) In a water heater, the temperature of the water is limited to a maximum of 210°F (99°C).

(b) A water heater is provided with a corrosion resistant lining or constructed with corrosion resistant materials.

(c) A water heater is intended to supply potable hot water with all makeup from a potable water supply system. Vessels built under the rules of Part HLW may be used for storage of potable water.

The following is a brief outline of the contents of each Article of Part HLW.

Article 1 — General

The scope of Part HLW is given, and the service restriction and exemption are stated.

Article 2 — Materials

The material requirements for the linings permitted are specified as well as the lining thickness requirements. The material requirements specified for the lining materials were, in general, taken from existing standards by abstracting those requirements that were considered to be those essential for the applications covered by these rules.

Article 3 — Design

The design criteria for water heaters is given in Article 3. The pressure is specified as a maximum allowable working pressure of 160 psi (1 100 kPa) with a minimum of 100 psi (700 kPa). The maximum water temperature permitted is 210°F (99°C).

The maximum allowable working pressure of the water heater shall be established in accordance with the proof test provision of HLW-500. As an alternative, stress values in Table HLW-300 may be used in calculations employing the available formulas when applicable to the geometry of the lined water heater or parts.

Article 4 — Weldments

The provisions for weldment joint design are similar to those given elsewhere in this Section and in Section VIII, Division 1. In addition, some acceptable joint designs are provided that have been commonly used in the construction of water heaters and have provided satisfactory service performance.

Article 5 — Tests

Proof test procedure is delineated for establishing the maximum allowable working pressure of a water heater or parts, and this test is required to be witnessed and accepted by the Authorized Inspector. The Manufacturer's

Master Data Proof Test Report for Lined Water Heaters shall be certified by the designated responsible engineering head of the Manufacturer and the forms shall be kept on file by the Manufacturer as a matter of record.

Article 6 — Inspection and Stamping

Inspection and stamping requirements for water heaters are given. An "HLW" Code Symbol Stamp is provided for water heaters made in accordance with Part HLW of Section IV.

Article 7 — Controls

Each water heater is required to have an operating control and a separate high-limit temperature-actuated control that shuts off the fuel supply in case of operating control failure. Water heaters should be equipped with suitable primary safety controls, safety limit switches, burners, or electric elements as appropriate and as required by a nationally recognized standard. Examples of these nationally recognized standards are listed.

Article 8 — Installation

Some acceptable piping installations are shown. Provisions for the installation of safety relief valves and other valves are given.

ARTICLE 1
GENERAL

HLW-100 SCOPE

(a) The rules in Part HLW apply to water heaters and water storage tanks with corrosion resistance for supplying potable hot water. The foreword provides the basis for these rules. Part HLW is not intended to apply to hot water heating boilers.

(b) This Part contains mandatory requirements, specific prohibitions, and nonmandatory guidance for materials, designs, fabrication, examination, inspection, testing, certification, and pressure relief.

(c) Laws or regulations issued by a municipality, state, provincial, federal, or other enforcement or regulatory body having jurisdiction at the location of an installation, establish the mandatory applicability of these rules, in whole or in part.

HLW-101 SERVICE RESTRICTION AND EXCEPTION

HLW-101.1 Service Restriction. The rules of Part HLW are restricted to potable water heaters and water storage tanks for operation at pressures not exceeding 160 psi (1 100 kPa) and water temperatures not in excess of 210°F (99°C).

HLW-101.2 Exception. Based on the Committee's consideration, water heaters are exempted when none of the following limitations is exceeded:

(a) heat input of 200,000 Btu/hr (60 kW)

(b) water temperature of 210°F (99°C)

(c) nominal water-containing capacity of 120 gal (450 l), except that they shall be equipped with safety devices in accordance with the requirements of HLW-800

HLW-102 PERMISSIBLE STAMPING

Any water heater or storage tank that meets all of the requirements of Part HLW, including those for inspection, may be stamped with the Code HLW Symbol even though exempted from such stamping.

HLW-103 UNITS

Either U.S. Customary, SI, or any local customary units may be used to demonstrate compliance with all requirements of this edition (e.g., materials, design, fabrication, examination, inspection, testing, certification, and overpressure protection).

In general, it is expected that a single system of units shall be used for all aspects of design except where unfeasible or impractical. When components are manufactured at different locations where local customary units are different than those used for the general design, the local units may be used for the design and documentation of that component. Similarly, for proprietary components or those uniquely associated with a system of units different than that used for the general design, the alternate units may be used for the design and documentation of that component.

For any single equation, all variables shall be expressed in a single system of units. When separate equations are provided for U.S. Customary and SI units, those equations must be executed using variables in the units associated with the specific equation. Data expressed in other units shall be converted to U.S. Customary or SI units for use in these equations. The result obtained from execution of these equations may be converted to other units.

Production, measurement and test equipment, drawings, welding procedure specifications, welding procedure and performance qualifications, and other fabrication documents may be in U.S. Customary, SI, or local customary units in accordance with the fabricator's practice. When values shown in calculations and analysis, fabrication documents, or measurement and test equipment are in different units, any conversions necessary for verification of Code compliance and to ensure that dimensional consistency is maintained shall be in accordance with the following:

(a) Conversion factors shall be accurate to at least four significant figures.

(b) The results of conversions of units shall be expressed to a minimum of three significant figures.

Conversion of units, using the precision specified above shall be performed to assure that dimensional consistency is maintained. Conversion factors between U.S. Customary and SI units may be found in the Nonmandatory Appendix M, Guidance for the Use of U.S. Customary and SI Units in the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Whenever local customary units are used the Manufacturer shall provide the source of the conversion factors, which shall be subject to verification and acceptance by the Authorized Inspector or Certified Individual.

Material that has been manufactured and certified to either the U.S. Customary or SI material specification (e.g., SA-516M) may be used regardless of the unit system used in design. Standard fittings (e.g., flanges, elbows, etc.) that have been certified to either U.S. Customary units or SI units may be used regardless of the unit system used in design.

All entries on a Manufacturer's Data Report and data for Code required nameplate marking shall be in units consistent with the fabrication drawings for the component using U.S. Customary, SI, or local customary units. It is acceptable to show alternate units parenthetically. Users of this Code are cautioned that the receiving Jurisdiction should be contacted to ensure the units are acceptable.

ARTICLE 2
MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

HLW-200 LINING

(a) Glass Lined. Glass lining shall be of an analysis intended for use in hot water service and the minimum average thickness shall be 0.005 in. (0.13 mm). The walls, ends, and other parts that are of steel and are glass lined shall be of a quality that is suitable for glass lining by the manufacturer's glass lining process. Glass lining may be applied to parts before assembly. The surfaces of the water heater vessel that are exposed to hot water shall have a coating with a minimum number of discontinuities, and the discontinuities shall average not more than $\frac{1}{8}$ in.^{2}/ft^2 (8 cm^2/m^2) of internal surface excluding edges and fittings. Thinning at corners may not extend over $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) from the edge.

(b) Galvanized. The galvanized coating shall be based upon at least 1 oz of zinc/ft^2 (3 gal/m^2) of surface based upon mathematical calculations corresponding to a coating thickness of 0.0017 in. (0.043 mm). The weight of the zinc coating shall be determined by weighing the water heater before galvanizing and again after the coating is applied.

The zinc used for coating shall conform to ASTM B 6, Specification for Zinc (Slab Zinc) and shall be at least equal to the grade designated as "Prime Western." The aluminum content of the bath during actual galvanizing operations shall not exceed 0.01%. The galvanizer shall not damage the material by overpickling or by the use of excessively high temperature in pickling or galvanizing.

(c) Cement Lined. For cement-lined water heaters, the cement shall be applied to provide a minimum thickness of $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5 mm). The lining shall be properly cured, adhere firmly to, and completely cover the interior of the vessel. The joints at the top of the water heater shall be sealed to prevent corrosion in back of the lining. The water absorption of the lining material shall not be more than 17% of the dry weight of the test specimen. The calcium oxide content shall not exceed 35%. The silicon content shall not be less than 25%.

(d) Copper-Lined. The material used for lining may be any copper of weldable or brazeable quality with a minimum thickness of 0.005 in. (0.13 mm). Lining attachments to steel backing by welding or brazing shall be in accordance with Section IX.

(e) Fluorocarbon Polymer-Lined. Fluorocarbon polymer linings shall be of an analysis intended for use in potable hot water service, and the minimum thickness shall be 0.003 in. (0.075 mm). The lining shall be cured at a temperature and for a length of time suitable to assure continuity of lining and elimination of solvents. The water absorption rate of the cured lining shall be less than 2% by the method specified in ASTM D 570 shown in Appendix I. Surfaces to be fluorocarbon polymer-lined must be cleaned to remove all scale, oxidation, oil, etc., prior to application of the lining. Interior surfaces may be coated with electroless nickel prior to lining. Flue tubes may be covered with a minimum thickness of 0.006 in. (0.15 mm) of sheet copper prior to the application of the fluorocarbon polymer lining.

(f) Amine or Polyamine Epoxy-Lined

(1) Amine or polyamine epoxy linings shall be of an analysis intended for use in potable hot water service, and the minimum thickness shall be 0.003 in. (0.075 mm). The lining shall be cured at a temperature and for a length of time suitable to assure continuity of lining and elimination of solvents. The water absorption rate of the cured lining shall be less than 2% by the method specified in ASTM D 570 shown in Appendix I. Surfaces to be epoxy lined must be cleaned to remove all scale, oxidation, oil, etc., prior to application of the lining.

(2) The use of amine or polyamine epoxy linings shall be limited to electric water heaters with immersion type elements, storage tanks, and those surfaces of fired water heaters that are not directly heated by the products of combustion.

(g) Thermally Sprayed Metallic Linings. The material used for linings shall be any copper or copper alloy of sprayable quality. Prior to coating, the interior surfaces of the vessel or vessel parts shall be cleaned by grit blasting. The minimum lining thickness shall be 0.005 in. (0.13 mm). The process shall be controlled to ensure that the temperature of the surface being coated does not exceed 650°F (340°C).

(h) Polymeric, Flexible Linings. Materials used shall be listed by National Sanitation Foundation International (NSFI) as meeting the requirements of the Standard ANSI/NSF 14-1900 for potable water service at a minimum

temperature of 210°F (99°C). The water absorption rate of the material shall be less than 10% by the 2 hr boiling water immersion test specified in SD-570 shown in Appendix I. No reground material shall be used.

The minimum thickness of the lining shall be 0.020 in. (0.50 mm). The interior surfaces of the vessel shall be free of projections or discontinuities that exceed one-half the thickness of the fabricated liner. The installed liner shall be in contact with all interior surfaces of the vessel and free of folds or cracks after the hydrostatic test of HLW-505. The design shall be such that:

(1) all transition parts, such as needed at vessel openings, shall be of compatible materials

(2) transition parts shall be designed so that any required brazing or welding of subsequent connections, if required, shall not damage the lining

(i) Autocatalytic (Electroless) Nickel-Phosphorus Lined. The composition shall be of an analysis suitable for use in potable, hot water service. It shall conform to ASTM B 733-90 SC3, Type 1, Class 1. The application shall be after all welding. The minimum thickness shall be 0.0003 in. (0.0075 mm). All surfaces to be lined shall be free of oxides, oil or other contaminants. The phosphorus content of the bath shall be at least 9%, but not over 13%. Following application, the vessel shall be drained and thoroughly rinsed with water.

HLW-201 PRIMARY PRESSURE PARTS MATERIAL

(a) Materials other than those described herein may not be used unless approved by the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee in accordance with Appendix 5 in Section II, Part D. The materials used for shells, heads, flues, headers, or tubes shall conform to one of the specifications listed in Section II and shall be limited to those listed in Tables HLW-300, HLW-301, and HF-300.2. For plate material, a certificate of compliance or a material test report is required to verify that the chemical and mechanical properties are within the permissible range listed in Section II. Material in all other product forms shall be accepted as complying with its Section II specification when marked as required by (c) below. Material test reports shall be furnished by the mill of origin, except that any material that has lost its identification with a Section II specification, or that is ordered in small quantities, may be accepted, provided that it satisfies the provisions of HLW-202.

(b) If a welded assembly is furnished as a part to the Manufacturer of the completed water heater vessel, a Manufacturer's Partial Data Report Form HLW-7 shall be provided by the parts Manufacturer. The parts Manufacturer shall comply with all applicable requirements of Part HLW, including inspection by an Authorized Inspector.

(c) The material in (a) above shall have the identification marking required by the appropriate Section II specification. During subsequent steps in fabrication, a painted color identification or some other method acceptable to the Authorized Inspector shall be used for identification. The method used shall remain distinguishable, or be reapplied until the part(s) are affixed in their proper location on the water heater vessel, and until the material is part of a uniquely identifiable subassembly.

HLW-202 ACCEPTANCE OF UNIDENTIFIED OR SMALL QUANTITIES OF MATERIAL

If the identification of materials required by HLW-201(a) is unavailable, each piece of plate material, or each length of other material, shall be shown to meet the chemical requirements and mechanical properties of the Section II specification designated for the part for which the material is to be used. The material shall be subjected to all required tests of the Section II specification. The manufacturer of the completed vessel shall verify that the material complies with the designated specification.

Testing shall be as in HLW-202.1 and HLW-202.2.

HLW-202.1 Plate. The chemical check analysis and physical tests shall be made as required in the designated specification, with the following modification: when the direction of rolling is not definitely known, two tension specimens shall be taken at right angles to each other from a corner of each plate, and two bend specimens shall be taken from the middle of adjacent sides of each plate. One tension specimen and both bend specimens shall meet the specification requirements.

HLW-202.2 Tubes, Pipe, Rods, Bars, and Shapes. Each length of tube, pipe, rod, bar, or shape shall be subjected to a chemical check analysis and physical tests to show that all the material is identified with a given heat or heat treatment lot, and that the material complies with the chemical and physical requirements of the designated specification.

HLW-202.3 Marking and Test Report. When the identity of material with a designated specification has been established in accordance with HLW-202.1 or HLW-202.2, each piece of material (except as alternatively provided in the material specification for tubes, pipes, rods, bars, or shapes) shall be marked or identified by the manufacturer or the testing agency by any method acceptable to the Authorized Inspector, giving the designated specification number and grade or type, and a serial S-number identifying the particular lot of material. A suitable test report shall be furnished, properly filled out, and certified by the manufacturer or testing agency. This report when accepted by the Authorized Inspector shall constitute authority to use the material.

HLW-203 MISCELLANEOUS PRESSURE PARTS MATERIAL

(a) Parts such as flanges, welding caps, welding necks, manhole frames, or manhole covers that are formed by casting, forging, rolling, or die forming, shall be constructed from materials permitted under Part HLW, or by an appropriate ANSI or manufacturer's standard to which the parts are made. Such parts shall be marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer. Such markings shall be considered as the manufacturer's certification that the product complies with the material specification and is suitable for service at the rating indicated. A certificate of compliance or a material test report is not required.

(b) Carbon steel or cast iron pressure parts of small size, such as nozzles, internally threaded fittings, handhole frames, or handhole covers, for which it is difficult or impossible to obtain identified material, or that may be stocked and for which material test reports or certificates cannot be readily obtained, may be constructed from Section II materials other than those listed in Tables HLW-300, HLW-301, and HF-300.2, provided they are suitable for the application. These parts may be identified in any permanent or temporary manner acceptable to the Authorized Inspector that will serve to identify the parts with the manufacturer's written listing. Marking of each individual part is not required. The manufacturer who certifies the completed vessel shall satisfy himself that such parts are suitable for the welding, fabrication, service, and test conditions of its design. The use of such parts shall be subject to the acceptance of the Authorized Inspector.

HLW-204 FLANGES AND PIPE FITTINGS

The following standards covering flanges and pipe fittings are acceptable for use under Part HLW in accordance with the requirements of HLW-203. Pressure–temperature ratings shall be per the appropriate standard:

(a) ANSI B16.5, Flanges and Flanged Fittings

(b) ANSI B16.9, Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings

(c) ANSI B16.11, Forged Steel Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded

(d) ANSI B16.15, Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings

(e) ANSI B16.24, Bronze Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings

(f) ANSI B16.28, Wrought Steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns

(g) ANSI B16.42, Ductile Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings

HLW-205 NONPRESSURE PART MATERIAL

Material for nonpressure parts, such as baffles, fins, external or internal hangers, supports, or insulating rings, need not conform to the specifications for the material to which they are attached or to a material specification permitted in HLW-300 or HLW-301; but, if welded, they shall be of weldable quality. The allowable stress value shall not exceed 80% of the maximum allowable stress permitted for similar material in Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2. Satisfactory performance of a specimen in such service shall not make the material acceptable for use in pressure parts of a vessel.

ARTICLE 3
DESIGN

HLW-300 DESIGN

(a) Water heaters are limited to a maximum allowable working pressure of 160 psi (1 100 kPa) and the maximum water temperature shall be 210°F (99°C). The maximum allowable working pressure for water heaters shall be not less than 100 psi (700 kPa).

(b) The maximum allowable working pressure of the water heater shall be established in accordance with the proof test provision of HLW-500. As an alternative, stress values in Tables HF-300.2, HLW-300, or HLW-301 may be used in calculations employing the available formulas when applicable to the geometry of the water heater or parts.

(c) The maximum allowable stress value in bending shall be 1½ times that permitted in tension and the maximum allowable stress value in compression shall be two times that permitted in tension.

(d) The temperature used in design shall not be less than the mean metal temperature (through the thickness) expected under operating conditions for the part considered. If necessary, the metal temperature shall be determined by computation using accepted heat transfer procedures or by measurements from equipment in service under equivalent operating conditions. Pressure parts subject to direct radiation and/or the products of combustion shall be designed to prevent flame impingement.

(e) Water heaters may be fired with oil, gas, or electricity.

(f) Water heaters and tanks built under the rules of Part HLW may be provided with cathodic protection.

(g) Water heaters used for deionized water fabricated of stainless steel listed in Table HLW-301 may be built to Part HLW provided the maximum thickness does not exceed ½ in. (13 mm).

HLW-301 BASIS FOR ESTABLISHING STRESS VALUES IN TABLES HLW-300 AND HLW-301

In the determination of allowable stress values for pressure parts, the Committee is guided by successful experience in service, insofar as evidence of satisfactory performance is available. Such evidence is considered equivalent to test data where operating conditions are known with reasonable certainty. In the evaluation of new materials, it is necessary to be guided to a certain extent by the comparison of test information with similar data on successful applications of similar materials.

At any temperature below the creep range, the allowable stresses are established at no higher than the lowest of the following:

(1) ¼ of the specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature

(2) ¼ of the tensile strength at temperature

(3) ⅔ of the specified minimum yield strength at room temperature

(4) ⅔ of the yield strength at temperature

In Table HLW-301 for austenitic stainless steel materials, two sets of allowable stress values are provided. The higher values should be used only where slightly greater deformation is not in itself objectionable. The higher alternative allowable stresses are identified by a note. These stresses exceed two-thirds for austenitic stainless steel materials but do not exceed 90% of the minimum yield at temperature. These higher stresses are not recommended for the design of flanges and other strain sensitive applications.

HLW-302 MINIMUM THICKNESSES

The minimum thickness of sheet or plate material used for heads or shells in any lined or unlined water heater vessel shall not be less than ⅛ in. (3 mm).

HLW-303 SHELLS UNDER INTERNAL PRESSURE

When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, the thickness and the maximum allowable working pressure of cylindrical shells, pipe, and headers shall be determined in accordance with the following formulas:

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$P = \frac{SEt}{R + 0.6t}$$

TABLE HLW-300 07
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR LINED MATERIALS, ksi (MPa)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi (MPa)	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi (MPa)
Plate									
SA-36	...	Carbon steel	1	1	...	58.0 (400)	...	(1)	14.5 (100.0)
SA-285	A	Carbon steel	1	1	...	45.0 (310)	...	...	11.3 (77.6)
	B	Carbon steel	1	1	...	50.0 (345)	...	...	12.5 (86.2)
	C	Carbon steel	1	1	...	55.0 (380)	...	...	13.8 (94.8)
SA-455	...	Carbon steel	1	2	...	75.0 (515)	...	(2)	18.8 (129.0)
SA-455	...	Carbon steel	1	2	...	73.0 (505)	...	(3)	18.3 (126.0)
SA-455	...	Carbon steel	1	2	...	70.0 (485)	...	(4)	17.5 (121.0)
SA-285 Modified to Chem.			...	...	...	...	...	(5)	...
AISI C-1012	...	0.10C to 0.15C	1	1	...	45.0 (310)	...	...	11.3 (77.6)
AISI C-1015d	...	0.13C to 0.18C	1	1	...	50.0 (345)	...	...	12.5 (86.2)
AISI C-1023	...	0.20C to 0.25C	1	1	...	55.0 (380)	...	...	13.8 (94.8)
SA-515	60	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	32.0 (220)	...	15.0 (103.0)
	65	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	65.0 (450)	35.0 (240)	...	16.3 (112.0)
	70	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	70.0 (485)	38.0 (260)	...	17.5 (121.0)
SA-516	55	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	55.0 (380)	30.0 (205)	...	13.8 (94.8)
	60	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	60.0 (415)	32.0 (220)	...	15.0 (103.0)
	65	Carbon steel	1	1	CS-2	65.0 (450)	35.0 (240)	...	16.3 (112.0)
	70	Carbon steel	1	2	CS-2	70.0 (485)	38.0 (260)	...	17.5 (121.0)
Sheet									
SA-414	A	Carbon steel	1	1	...	45.0 (310)	...	...	11.3 (77.6)
	B	Carbon steel	1	1	...	50.0 (345)	...	...	12.5 (86.2)
	C	Carbon steel	1	1	...	55.0 (380)	...	...	13.8 (94.8)
	D	Carbon steel	1	1	...	60.0 (415)	...	...	15.0 (103.0)
	E	Carbon steel	1	1	...	65.0 (450)	...	...	16.3 (112.0)
	F	Carbon steel	1	2	...	70.0 (485)	...	...	17.5 (121.0)
	G	Carbon steel	1	2	...	75.0 (515)	...	(5)	18.8 (129.0)
SA-414 Modified to Chem.									
AISI C-1012	...	0.10C to 0.15C	1	1	...	45.0 (310)	...	...	11.3 (77.6)
AISI C-1015	...	0.13C to 0.18C	1	1	...	50.0 (345)	...	...	12.5 (86.2)
AISI C-1023	...	0.20C to 0.25C	1	1	...	55.0 (380)	...	...	13.8 (94.8)
Forging(s)									
SA-105	...	Forging carbon steel	1	2	...	70.0 (485)	...	...	17.5 (121.0)
SA-181	Class 60	Forging carbon steel	1	1	...	60.0 (415)	...	...	15.0 (103.0)
SA-181	Class 70	Forging carbon steel	1	2	...	70.0 (485)	...	...	17.5 (120.7)
Pipe									
SA-53	A	Smls. carbon steel	1	1	...	48.0 (330)	...	...	12.0 (82.7)
SA-53	B	Smls. carbon steel	1	1	...	60.0 (415)	...	...	15.0 (103.0)
SA-106	A	Smls. carbon steel	1	1	...	48.0 (330)	...	...	12.0 (82.7)

TABLE HLW-300
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR LINED MATERIALS, ksi (MPa) (CONT'D)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi (MPa)	Note(s)	Max. Allow. Stress Value, ksi (MPa)
SA-106	B	Smls. carbon steel	1	1	...	60.0 (415)	...	...	15.0 (103.0)
SA-106	C	Smls. carbon steel	1	2	...	70.0 (485)	...	...	17.5 (121.0)
SA-53	A	ERW carbon steel	1	1	...	48.0 (330)	...	(6)	10.2 (70.3)
SA-53	B	ERW carbon steel	1	1	...	60.0 (415)	...	(6)	12.8 (87.9)
SA-135	A	ERW carbon steel	1	1	...	48.0 (330)	...	(6)	10.2 (70.3)
SA-135	B	ERW carbon steel	1	1	...	60.0 (415)	...	(6)	12.8 (87.9)
Tube									
SA-178	A	ERW carbon steel	1	1	...	47.0 (325)	...	(6)(7)	10.0 (68.9)
SA-178	C	ERW carbon steel	1	1	...	60.0 (415)	...	(6)	12.8 (87.9)
SA-513	1008	ERW carbon steel	1	1	...	42.0 (290)	...	(6)(7)(8)	8.9 (61.5)
SA-513	1010	ERW carbon steel	1	1	...	45.0 (310)	...	(6)(7)(8)	9.6 (65.9)
SA-513	1015	ERW carbon steel	1	1	...	48.0 (330)	...	(6)(7)(8)	10.2 (70.3)
Bars									
SA-36	...	Carbon steel	1	1	...	58.0 (400)	...	(9)(1)	14.5 (100.0)
SA-675	45	Carbon steel	1	1	...	45.0 (310)	...	...	11.3 (77.6)
	50	Carbon steel	1	1	...	50.0 (345)	...	...	12.5 (86.2)
	55	Carbon steel	1	1	...	55.0 (380)	...	...	13.8 (94.8)
	60	Carbon steel	1	1	...	60.0 (415)	...	...	15.0 (103.0)
	65	Carbon steel	1	1	...	65.0 (450)	...	...	16.3 (112.0)
	70	Carbon steel	1	2	...	70.0 (485)	...	...	17.5 (121.0)

GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Nonferrous material, if utilized for connections, etc., shall be in accordance with Table HF-300.2.

(b) To convert from ksi to MPa, multiply by 6.895.

NOTES:

(1) SA/CSA-G40.21, as specified in Section II, Part A, grade 38W or 44W may be used in lieu of SA-36 for plates and bars not exceeding $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) for use at the same maximum allowable stress values as SA-36.

(2) For thickness up to $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm), incl.

(3) For thickness over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. to 0.580 in. (10 mm to 15 mm), incl.

(4) For thickness over 0.580 in. to 0.750 in. (15 mm to 19 mm), incl.

(5) For use only as shell plates, heads, tubesheets, or other surfaces to be glass lined.

(6) The stress value includes a joint factor of 0.85.

(7) Tensile value is expected minimum.

(8) This tube is restricted to use in glass lined water heaters.

(9) These allowable stress values apply also to structural shapes.

TABLE HLW-301
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR MATERIALS IN TENSION FOR UNLINED WATER HEATERS, ksi (MPa)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi (MPa)	Note(s)	Max. Allowable Design Stress, ksi (MPa) (See HLW-303) Standard	Alternative [See Note (8)]
Plate										
Alloy Steel										
SA-240	304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)	16.7 (114.0)	17.8 (122.0)
	304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)	14.3 (98.4)	16.5 (114.0)
	316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)	17.7 (119.0)	18.8 (129.0)
	316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)	14.1 (97.8)	16.7 (115.0)
	439	18Cr–Ti	7	2	. . .	60.0 (415)	30.0 (205)	(4)(2)(5)	16.3 (103.0)	. . .
	S44400	18Cr–2Mo	7	2	CS-2	60.0 (415)	40.0 (275)	(4)(1)(5)	15.0 (103.0)	. . .
Tube										
Alloy Steel										
SA-213	TP304	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)	16.7 (114.0)	17.8 (122.0)
	TP304L	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)	14.3 (98.4)	16.5 (114.0)
	TP316	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)	17.7 (119.0)	18.8 (129.0)
	TP316L	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)	14.1 (97.8)	16.7 (115.0)
SA-249	TP304	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)(6)	14.2 (97.1)	15.1 (104.0)
	TP304L	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)(6)	11.9 (83.6)	14.0 (96.8)
	TP316	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)(6)	15.0 (101.0)	16.0 (110.0)
	TP316L	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)(6)	12.0 (83.1)	14.2 (97.7)
SA-268	TP439	Smls. 18Cr–Ti	7	2	CS-2	60.0 (415)	30.0 (205)	(4)(2)(5)	15.0 (103.0)	. . .
	S44400	Smls. 18Cr–2Mo	7	2	CS-2	60.0 (415)	40.0 (275)	(4)(1)(5)	15.0 (103.0)	. . .
	S44400	Wld. 18Cr–2Mo	7	2	CS-2	60.0 (415)	40.0 (275)	(4)(1)(5)(3)(6)	12.8 (88.3)	. . .
	S44735	Smls. 29Cr–4Mo	10J	1	CS-2	75.0 (515)	60.0 (415)	(7)	18.4 (127.0)	. . .
	S44735	Wld. 29Cr–4Mo	10J	1	CS-2	75.0 (515)	60.0 (415)	(6)(7)	15.5 (107.0)	. . .
Bar										
Alloy Steel										
SA-479	304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	. . .	75.0 (515)	. . .	(1)(2)(3)	16.7 (114.0)	17.8 (122.0)
	304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	. . .	70.0 (485)	. . .	(1)(2)(3)	14.3 (98.4)	16.5 (114.0)
	316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	. . .	75.0 (515)	. . .	(1)(2)(3)	17.7 (119.0)	18.8 (129.0)
	316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	. . .	70.0 (485)	. . .	(1)(2)(3)	14.1 (97.8)	16.7 (115.0)
	439	18Cr–Ti	7	2	. . .	70.0 (485)	. . .	(4)(2)(5)	16.6 (114.0)	. . .
	S44400	18Cr–2Mo	7	2	. . .	60.0 (415)	. . .	(4)(1)(5)	15.0 (103.0)	. . .
Pipe										
Alloy Steel										
SA-312	TP304	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)	16.7 (114.0)	17.8 (122.0)
	TP304	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)(6)	14.2	15.1 (98.0)
	TP304L	Smls. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)	14.3 (98.4)	16.5 (114.0)
	TP304L	Wld. 18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)(6)	12.2	14.0 (0.0)

TABLE HLW-301
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES FOR MATERIALS IN TENSION FOR UNLINED WATER HEATERS, ksi (MPa)(CONT'D)

Spec. No.	Grade	Nominal Composition	P-No.	Group No.	External Pressure Chart	Spec. Min. Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Spec. Min. Yield Strength, ksi (MPa)	Note(s)	Max. Allowable Design Stress, ksi (MPa) (See HLW-303) Standard	Alternative [See Note (8)]
Pipe										
Alloy Steel										
SA-312	TP316	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)	17.7 (119.0)	18.8 (129.0)
	TP316	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)(6)	15.0 (84.0)	16.0 (83.0)
	TP316L	Smls. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)	14.1 (97.8)	16.7 (115.0)
	TP316L	Wld. 16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)(6)	12.0 (83.1)	14.2 (0.0)
Forgings										
Alloy Steel										
SA-182	F304	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-1	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)	16.7 (114.0)	17.8 (122.0)
	F304L	18Cr–8Ni	8	1	HA-3	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)	14.3 (98.4)	16.5 (114.0)
	F316	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-2	75.0 (515)	30.0 (205)	(1)(2)(3)	17.7 (119.0)	18.8 (129.0)
	F316L	16Cr–12Ni–2Mo	8	1	HA-4	70.0 (485)	25.0 (170)	(1)(2)(3)	14.1 (97.8)	16.7 (115.0)

GENERAL NOTE: To convert from ksi to MPa, multiply by 6.895.

NOTES:

(1) The maximum thickness is $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (12.7 mm).

(2) The service temperature shall not exceed 210°F (99°C).

(3) Water heaters using this material are to be operated only on deionized water having a minimum specific resistivity of 1.0 MΩ/cm.

(4) The maximum is $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm).

(5) Filler metal shall be Type 430 with a nominal molybdenum content of approximately 2%. The 300 series of chromium–nickel–iron filler metals shall not be used in welding vessels conforming to the requirements of Section IV.

(6) The stress value includes a joint factor of 0.85.

(7) Heat treatment after forming or fabrication is neither required nor prohibited.

(8) Due to the relatively low yield strength of the austenitic stainless steel materials, these higher stress values were established at temperatures at which the short time tensile properties govern to permit the use of these alloys where slightly greater deformation is acceptable. These higher stress values exceed two-thirds but do not exceed 90% of the yield strength at temperature. Use of these stress values may result in dimensional changes due to permanent strain. These stress values are not recommended for flanges of gasketed joints or other applications where slight amounts of distortion can cause leakage or malfunction.

where

E = efficiency of longitudinal joint or ligament between tube holes, whichever is less. For welded joints, use the efficiency specified in HLW-402. For seamless shells, use $E = 1$.

P = maximum allowable working pressure, psi (kPa) (but not less than 100 psi)

R = inside radius of cylinder, in. (mm)

S = maximum allowable stress value from Tables HLW-300, HLW-301, HF-300.1, and HF-300.2, psi (MPa)

t = required wall thickness, exclusive of liner, in.

HLW-305 BLANK UNSTAYED DISHED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONCAVE SIDE

HLW-305.1 General. When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, the required thickness at the thinnest point after forming of ellipsoidal and torispherical heads under pressure on the concave side (plus heads) shall be computed by the appropriate formulas in this paragraph.

(a) Notations. The notations used in this paragraph are defined as follows:

D = inside diameter of the head skirt; or inside length of the major axis of an ellipsoidal head; or inside diameter of a cone head at the point under consideration, measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis, in. (mm)

E = lowest efficiency of any joint in the head; use the efficiency specified in HLW-402. For seamless heads, use $E = 1$.

L = inside spherical or crown radius, in. (mm)

P = maximum allowable working pressure, psi (kPa) [but not less than 100 psi (700 kPa)]

S = maximum allowable stress value from Tables HLW-300, HF-300.1, and HF-300.2, psi (MPa)
t = required wall thickness, exclusive of liner, in. (mm)

HLW-305.2 Ellipsoidal Heads. When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, the required thickness and the maximum allowable working pressure of a dished head of semiellipsoidal form, in which half the minor axis (inside depth of the head minus the skirt) equals one-fourth of the inside diameter of the head skirt, shall be calculated by the following formulas:

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P}$$

$$P = \frac{2SEt}{D + 0.2t}$$

HLW-305.3 Torispherical Heads. When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, the required thickness and the maximum allowable working pressure of a torispherical head shall be calculated by the following formulas:

$$t = \frac{0.885PL}{SE - 0.1P}$$

$$P = \frac{SEt}{0.885L + 0.1t}$$

HLW-305.4 Inside Crown Radius of Unstayed Heads. The inside crown radius to which an unstayed formed head is dished shall be not greater than the outside diameter of the skirt of the head. The inside knuckle radius of a torispherical head shall be not less than 6% of the outside diameter of the skirt of the head but in no case less than three times the head thickness.

HLW-305.5 Hemispherical Heads. Because of the complexity of joint design, hemispherical heads are not permitted.

HLW-306 BLANK UNSTAYED DISHED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

HLW-306.1 When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, unstayed dished heads with the pressure on the convex side shall have a maximum allowable working pressure equal to 60% of that for heads of the same dimension with the pressure on the concave side.

HLW-306.2 Hemispherical Heads. Because of the complexity of joint design, hemispherical heads are not permitted.

HLW-307 TUBES

When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, the thickness of seamless or welded tubes shall be in accordance with HG-301.2 when subjected to internal pressure or HG-312.2 when subjected to external pressure.

HLW-308 OPENINGS

HLW-308.1 Single openings in water heaters do not require reinforcement under the following conditions. Welded connections attached in accordance with the applicable rules and not larger than

(a) NPS 3 (DN 80) in shells or heads 3/8 in. (10 mm) or less; NPS 2 (DN 50) in shells or heads over 3/8 in. (10 mm)

(b) threaded, studded, or expanded connections in which the hole cut in the shell or head is not greater than NPS 2 (DN 50)

HLW-308.2 When the provisions of HLW-501 to HLW-504 are not used, all other openings shall be reinforced in accordance with HG-321 of this Section.

HLW-309 TUBES ATTACHED BY ROLLING

(a) The tube hole in the head or tubesheet shall be formed either:

(1) to the full size diameter by a method that will not produce irregularities that would interfere with proper rolling and sealing, or

(2) to a lesser diameter, then enlarged to full diameter by a secondary drilling, cutting, or reaming operation to remove such irregularities.

The sharp edges of tube holes shall be taken off both sides with a file or other tool.

(b) The minimum thickness of any tubesheet with tubes installed by rolling shall be 3/16 in. (5 mm).

ARTICLE 4
DESIGN OF WELDMENTS

HLW-400 DESIGN OF WELDED JOINTS

HLW-401 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

All welds, fillet or full penetration, shall be made to a qualified welding procedure by qualified welders for each welding process employed (manual, semiautomatic, automatic), in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section IX to insure satisfactory penetration and fusion into the base metal to the root of the weld. It should be noted that the use of standard welding procedures is acceptable. All requirements for the use of these procedures shall be in accordance with Section IX. The use of these procedures shall be addressed in the manufacturer's or contractor's Quality Control Manual and shall be available for review by the Authorized Inspector. All members, prior to being welded, shall be properly fitted, aligned, and retained in position in accordance with the Procedure Specification for the welding procedure to be used.

HLW-401.1 Butt Joints. Longitudinal or circumferential joints uniting plates of a drum, shell, or other pressure parts shall be butt joints. A butt joint shall be double welded butt or may have filler metal added from one side only, provided the weld penetration is complete.

(a) If there are two or more courses, the welded longitudinal joints of adjacent courses shall be not less than 6 in. (150 mm) apart.

(b) If the plates are of unequal thickness, at no point shall the plate on one side of the joint be offset with the plate on the other side of the joint in excess of one-fourth of the thickness of the thickest plate. The weld may be partly or entirely in the tapered section or adjacent to it as indicated in Fig. HLW-401.1.

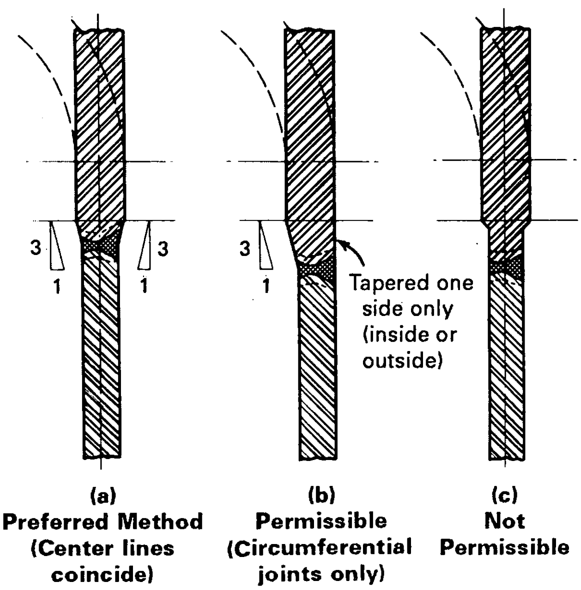
HLW-401.2 Corner or Tee Joints. Unflanged heads or tubesheets of water heaters may be constructed by attaching unflanged heads or tubesheets to the shell by welding, provided

(a) corner or tee joints shall be as shown in Fig. HLW-401.2, sketches (a), (b), (c), (d), or (e).

(b) the head or tubesheet is supported by tubes.

(c) the welded joint for Fig. HLW-401.2, sketches (a), (b), and (c) is wholly within the shell and forms no part thereof. The throat of the fillet weld shall be not less than 0.7 times the thickness of the thinner plate.

FIG. HLW-401.1 BUTT WELDING OF PLATES OF UNEQUAL THICKNESS



(d) for Fig. HLW-401.2, sketches (b) and (d), the weld shall have full penetration, and for sketch (e), double full-fillet welds shall be provided.

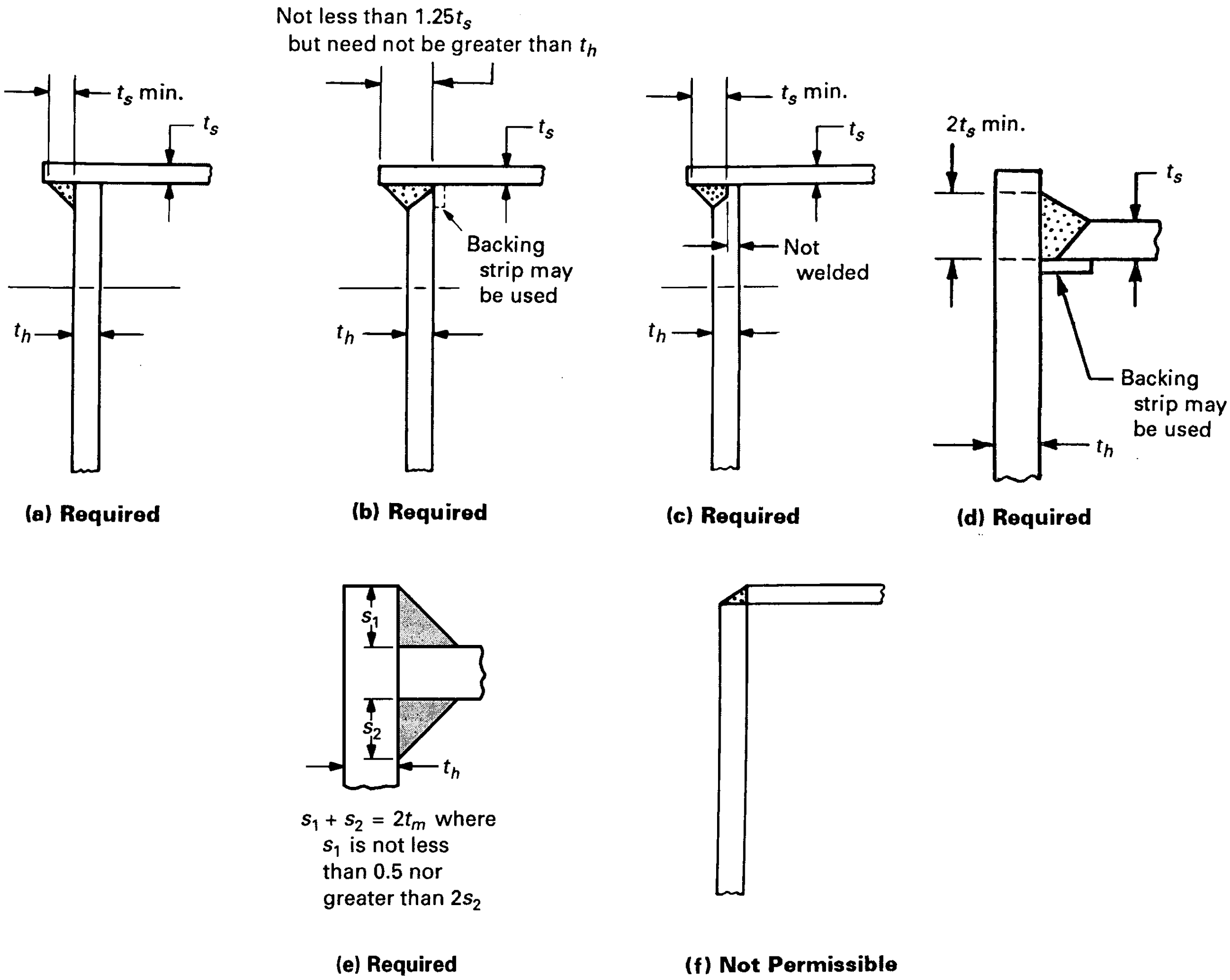
HLW-402 JOINT EFFICIENCIES 07

The following joint efficiencies E are to be used in the formulas of this Section (i.e., HLW-303 and HLW-305) for joints completed by an arc or gas welding process.

(a) $E = 85\%$ for full penetration butt joints as attained by double welding or by other means, which will obtain the same quality of deposited weld metal on the inside and outside weld surfaces, to provide complete joint penetration and assurance that the weld grooves are completely filled (HLW-401.1). Welds that use metal backing strips that remain in place are excluded.

(b) $E = 80\%$ for full penetration single-welded butt joints with backing strips other than those included in (a) above.

FIG. HLW-401.2 TYPICAL CORNER JOINTS



t_s = nominal shell thickness
t_h = nominal head thickness

HLW-402.1 Joint Efficiencies for External Pressure Design. Joint efficiency E factors are not required to be used when the part is designed for external pressure only.

HLW-411 HEADS OR TUBESHEETS ATTACHED BY WELDING

Typical water heater welded joints are shown in Fig. HLW-411.

HLW-411.1 Flanged heads or tubesheets of water heaters attached by butt welding shall be in accordance with Fig. HLW-415, sketch (d) or (e).

HLW-411.2 Flanged heads or tubesheets of water heaters may be constructed by attaching an outwardly or inwardly flanged head or tubesheet to the shell by fillet welding, provided

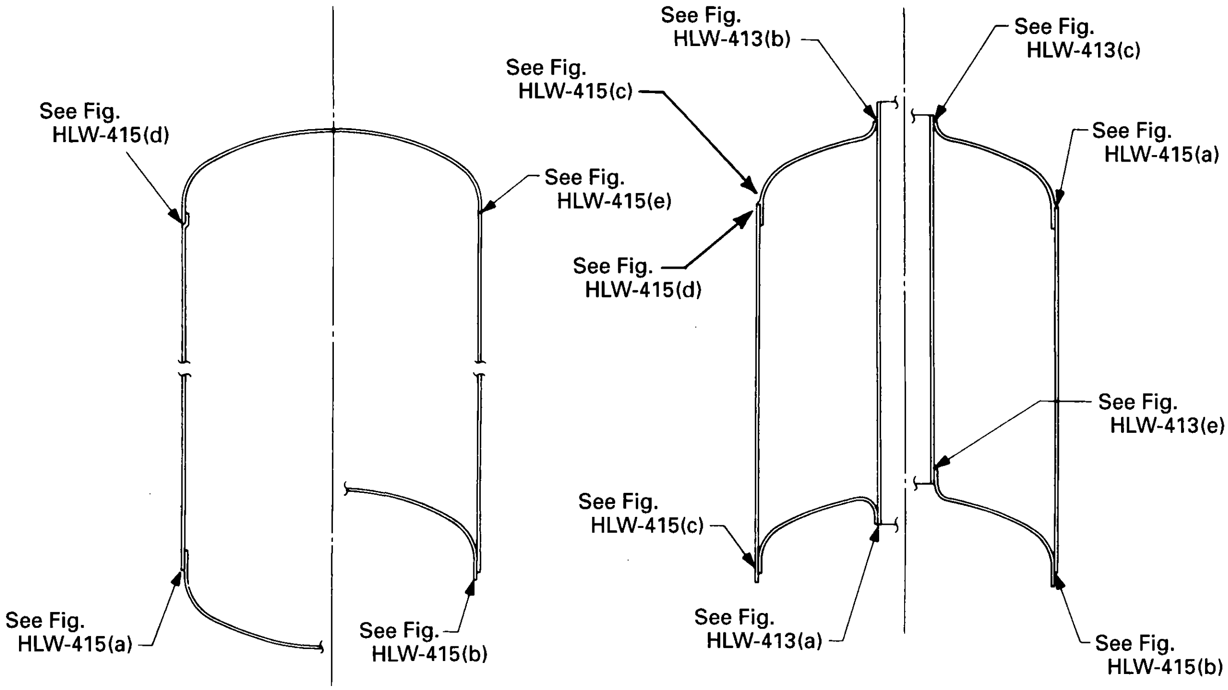
(a) inwardly flanged head or tubesheets are full fillet welded [see Fig. HLW-415, sketch (a)]

(b) the joint attaching an outwardly flanged head or tubesheet shall be in accordance with Fig. HLW-415, sketch (b) or (c)

HLW-413 TUBES ATTACHED BY WELDING

(a) The edge of the plate at the tubesheet hole may be beveled or recessed to a depth at least equal to the thickness of the tubes. Where the plate is beveled or recessed, the projection of the tubes beyond the tube sheet shall not exceed a distance equal to the tube thickness. The depth of any bevel or recess shall not be less than the tube thickness or $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm), whichever is greater, nor more than one-third of the tubesheet thickness.

FIG. HLW-411 TYPICAL WATER HEATER WELDED JOINTS



(a) Unstayed, Flanged, and Dished Heads

(b) Flanged and Dished Heads With Flue Tube

(b) Where no bevel or recess is employed, tubes shall extend beyond the tubesheet not less than 1.5 times the tube thickness, nor more than 3 times the sum of the thickness of the head plus the thickness of the tube [see Fig. HLW-413, sketch (d)].

(c) When openings are flanged for tubes as shown in Fig. HLW-413, sketch (a), (b), or (e), flanges shall extend parallel to the tube for a minimum distance equal to the tube thickness.

(d) Where exposed to gases of greater than 850°F (450°C), head flanges shall conform to the limitations of Fig. HLW-413.

(e) When the temperature of the gases is normally 850°F (450°C) or less, the length of flange or tube may extend beyond the limits of Fig. HLW-413.

HLW-415 HEAD-TO-SHELL ATTACHMENTS

Ellipsoidal, torispherical, and other types of formed heads, concave or convex to the pressure shall have the following requirements as to skirt length.

(a) An ellipsoidal or torispherical head that is attached to a shell by a butt joint as shown in Fig. HLW-415, sketch (e), need not be provided with a skirt when the nominal head thickness does not exceed $1\frac{1}{4}$ times the nominal shell thickness. When the nominal head thickness exceeds $1\frac{1}{4}$ times the nominal shell thickness, a skirt shall be provided having a length not less than 3 times the nominal head thickness or $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm), whichever is smaller. When a skirt is used, it shall meet the requirements for shell thickness in HLW-301.

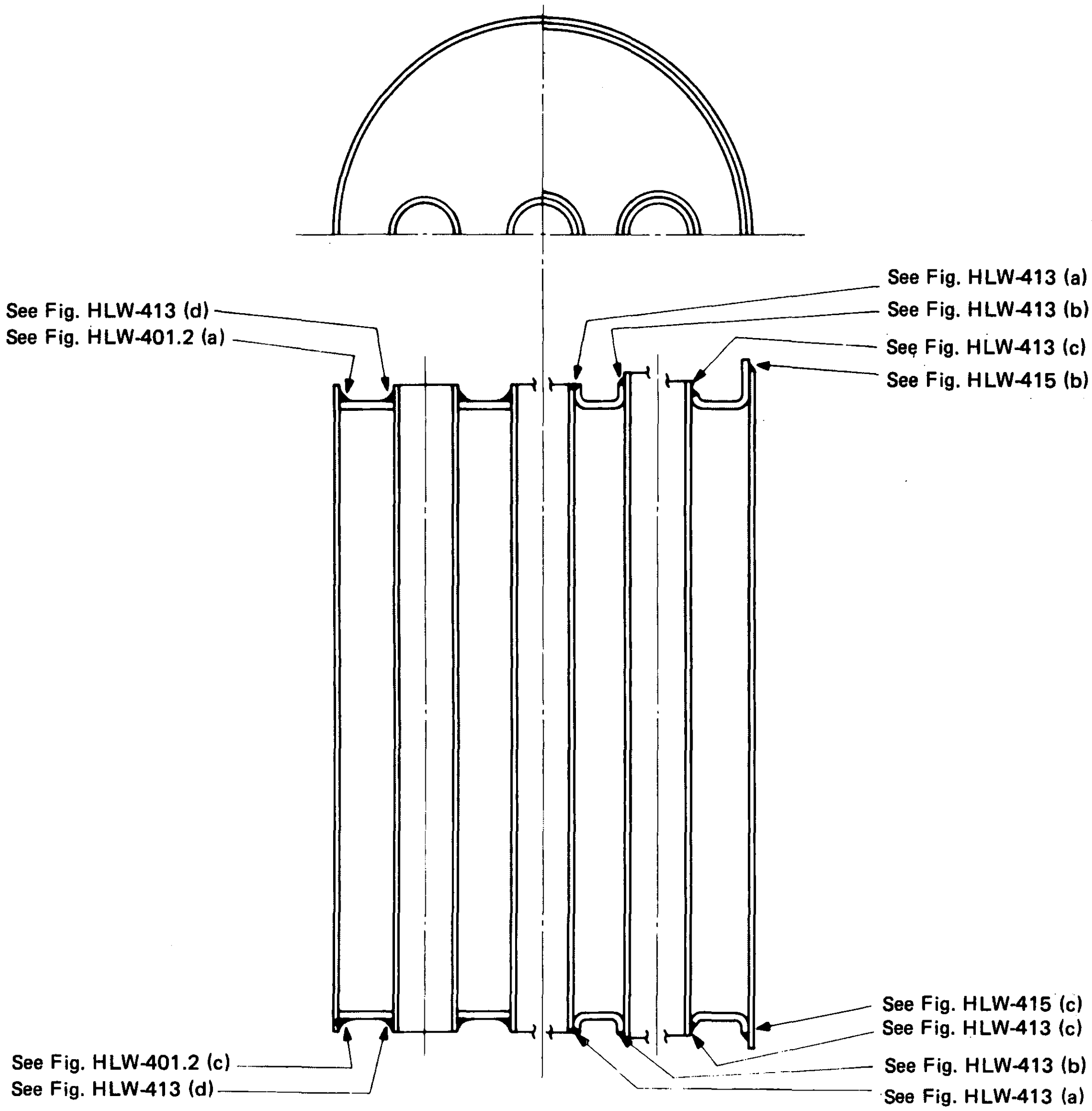
(b) Ellipsoidal or torispherical heads, concave or convex to pressure, that are to be fitted inside or over a shell (lap joint) shall have a skirt of at least 3 times the nominal head thickness, but in no case less than 1 in. (25 mm).

(c) Shells and heads may be attached to shells or heads using a butt weld with one plate edge offset as shown in Fig. HLW-415, sketch (d). The weld may be deposited on the inside of the vessel only when the weld is accessible for inspection after the vessel is completed.

HLW-420 OPENINGS IN WELDS

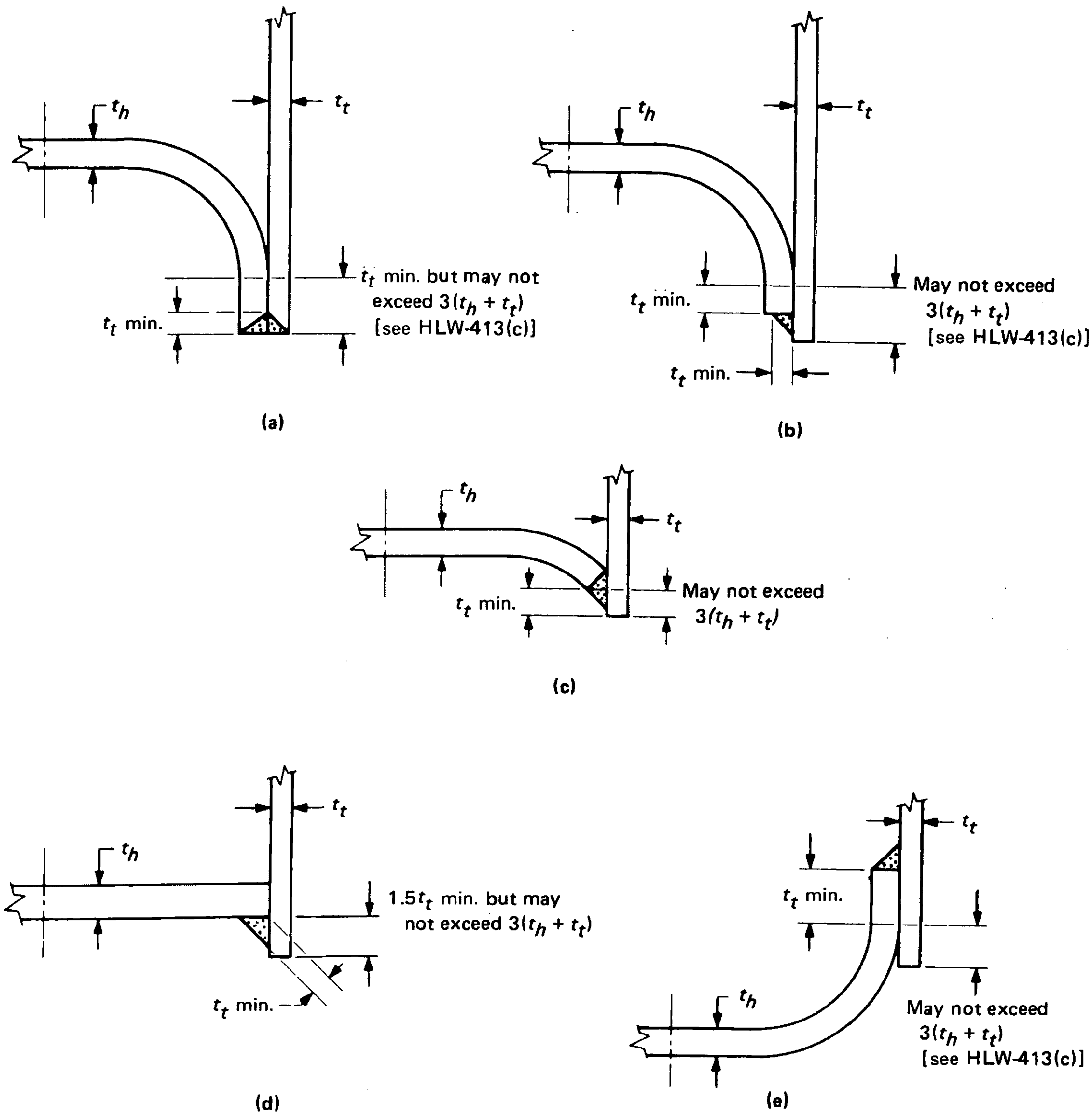
Any type of opening that meets the requirements for reinforcement given in HG-321 may be located in a butt welded joint.

FIG. HLW-411 TYPICAL WATER HEATER WELDED JOINTS (CONT'D)



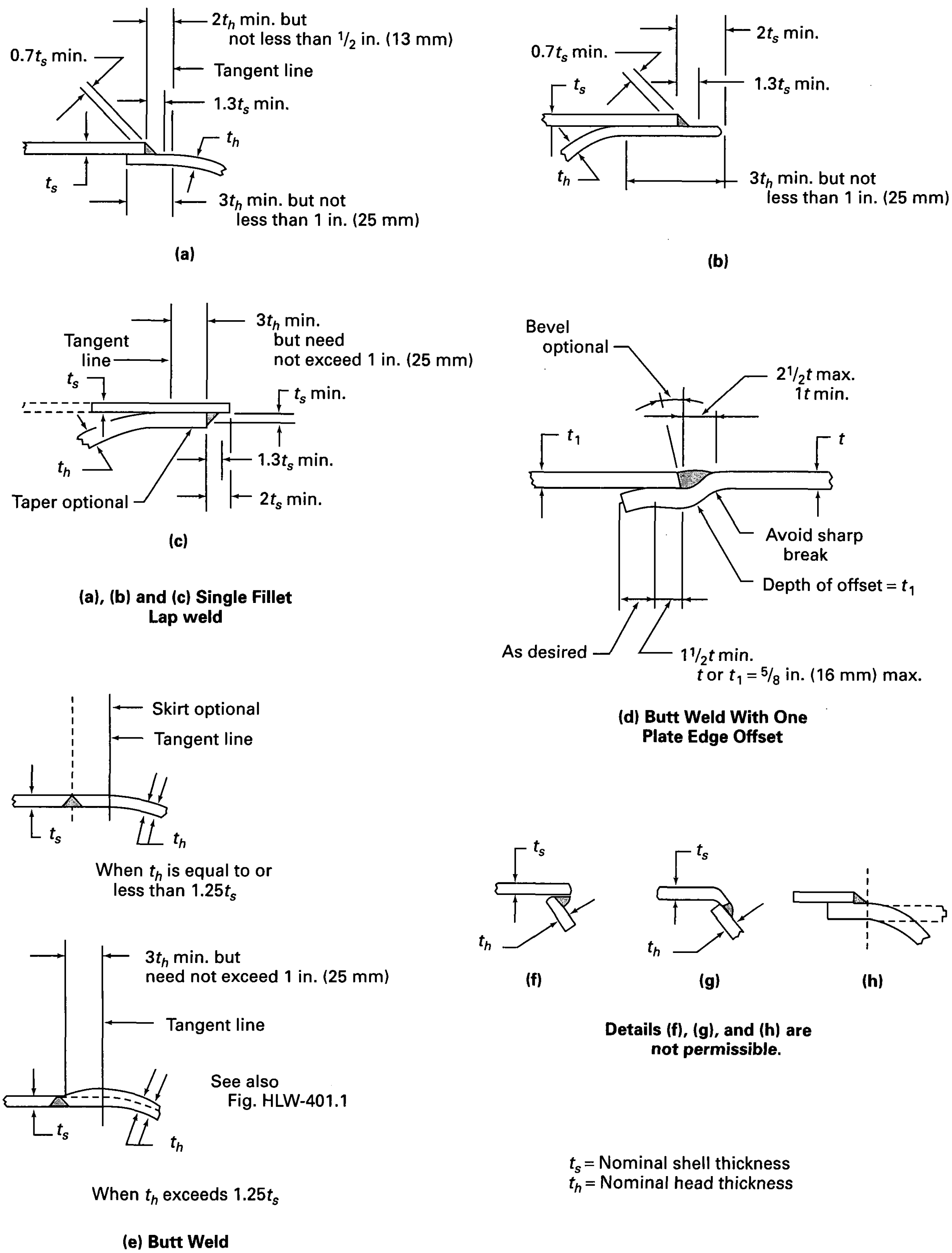
(c) Unflanged and flanged flat heads with multiple heads

FIG. HLW-413 TUBES ATTACHED BY WELDING



t_t = nominal tube thickness t_h = nominal head thickness

FIG. HLW-415 HEADS ATTACHED TO SHELLS



t_s = Nominal shell thickness
t_h = Nominal head thickness

HLW-430 WELDED CONNECTIONS

HLW-430.1 Strength of Attachment Welds. Nozzles, other connections, and their reinforcement may be attached to a water heater by arc or gas welding. Sufficient welding shall be provided on either side of the line through the center of the opening parallel to the longitudinal axis of the shell to develop the strength of the shell as prescribed in HG-327 through shear or tension in the weld, whichever is applicable. The strength of groove welds shall be based on the area subjected to shear or to tension. The strength of fillet welds shall be based on the area subjected to shear, computed on the minimum leg dimension. The inside periphery of a fillet weld shall be used in computing its length.

HLW-430.2 Stress Values for Weld Metal. The allowable stress values for groove and fillet welds and for shear in nozzle necks in percentages of stress values for the vessel material are as follows:

Factor	Percentage of Stress Values, %
Nozzle wall	70
Grooveweld tension	74
Groove weld shear	60
Fillet weld shear	49

NOTE: These values are obtained by combining the following factors: 87½% for combined end and side loading, 80% for shear strength, and the applicable joint efficiency factors.

HLW-431 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR ATTACHMENT WELDS

HLW-431.1 General. The location and minimum size of attachment welds for nozzles and other connections shall conform to the requirements in this paragraph.

(a) Notations. The notations used in this paragraph and in Fig. HLW-431.1 are defined as follows:

t = nominal thickness of shell or head

t_c = the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) or $0.7t_n$ (inside corner welds may be further limited by a lesser length of projection of the nozzle wall beyond the inside face of the water heater wall)

t_e = thickness of reinforcement element

t_{min} = the smaller of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) or the thickness of either of the parts joined by a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld, in. (mm)

t_n = nominal thickness of nozzle wall

t_w = dimension of partial-penetration attachment welds (fillet, single-bevel, or single-J), measured as shown in Fig. HLW-431.1

t_1, t_2 = not less than $\frac{1}{3}\,t_{min}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) and $t_1 + t_2$ not less than $1\frac{1}{4}t_{min}$

HLW-431.2 Inserted Nozzles Without Added Reinforcement Elements

(a) Nozzles inserted into or through a hole cut in the shell and without additional reinforcement elements shall be attached by a full-penetration groove weld or by two partial penetration welds, one on each face of the shell. Permissible types of welds are shown in Fig. HLW-431.1, sketches (a) through (h).

(b) Backing strips shall be used with full penetration welds deposited from one side only when the shell thickness is over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) or when complete joint penetration cannot be verified by visual inspection. The two partial penetration welds may be any desired combination of fillet, single-bevel, and single-J welds. The dimension t_w of each weld shall be not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) or $0.7t$ and their sum shall be not less than $1\frac{1}{4}t_{min}$ (see Fig. HLW-431.1).

HLW-431.3 Inserted Nozzles With Added Reinforcement. Inserted-type nozzles having added reinforcement in the form of one or more separate reinforcement plates shall be attached by welds at the nozzle neck periphery and at the outer edge of each reinforcement plate. The weld at the outer edge of each reinforcement plate shall be a fillet weld with a minimum throat dimension of $\frac{1}{2}t_{min}$.

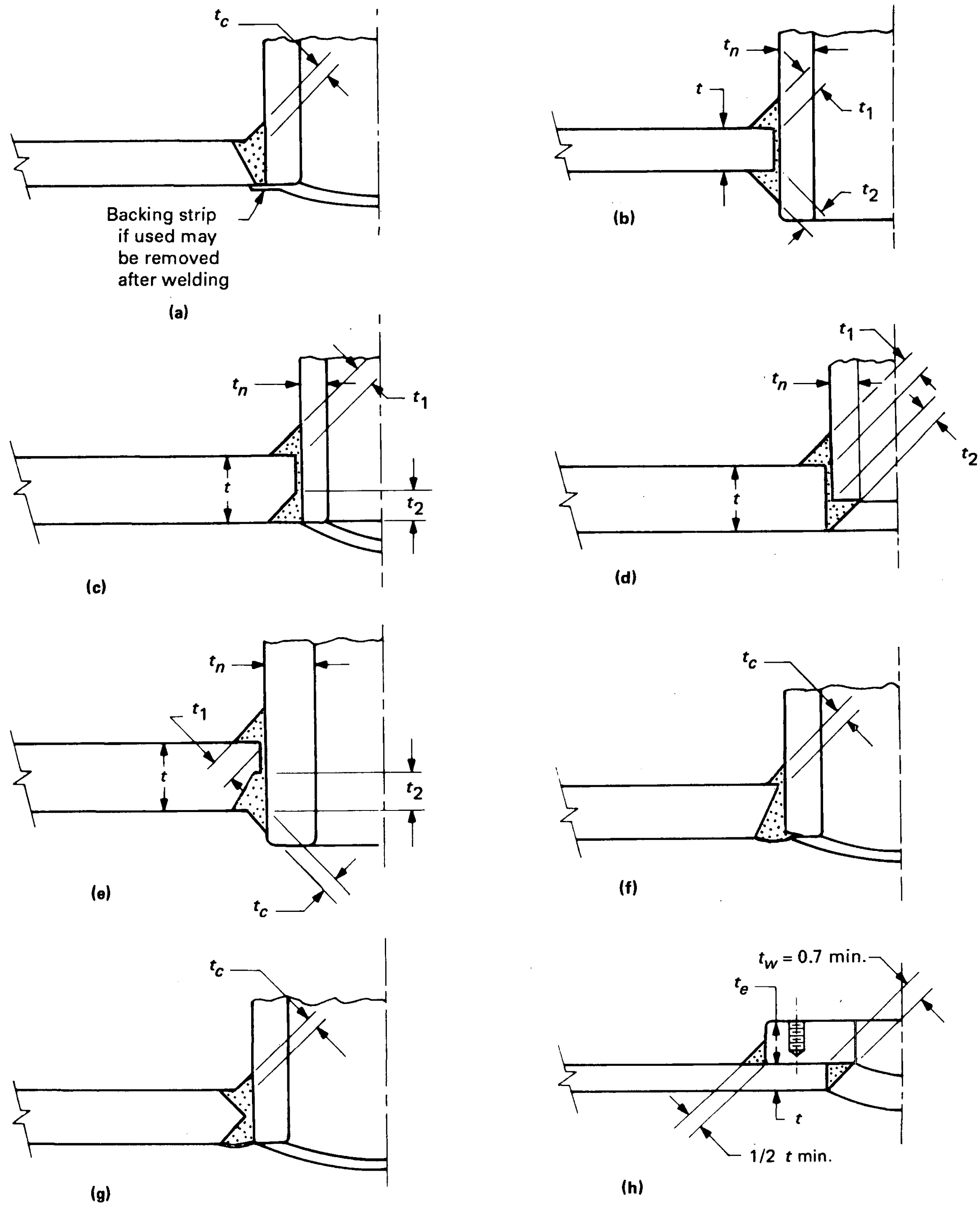
HLW-431.4 Nozzles With Integral Reinforcement. Nozzles and other connections having integral reinforcement in the form of extended necks or saddle-type pads shall be attached by a full-penetration weld or by means of a fillet weld along the outer edge and a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld along the inner edge. The throat dimension of the outer weld shall be not less than $\frac{1}{2}t_{min}$. The dimension t_w of the inner weld shall be not less than $0.7t_{min}$ [see Fig. HLW-431.1, sketch (h)].

HLW-431.5 Fittings With Internal Threads and Studded Pads. The attachment of internally threaded fittings and studded pads shall meet the following requirements:

(a) Except as provided for in (b) below, internally threaded fittings shall be attached by a full-penetration groove weld or by two fillet or partial penetration welds, one on each face of the water heater wall. The minimum weld dimensions shall be as shown in Fig. HLW-431.5, sketches (u), (v), (w), and (x).

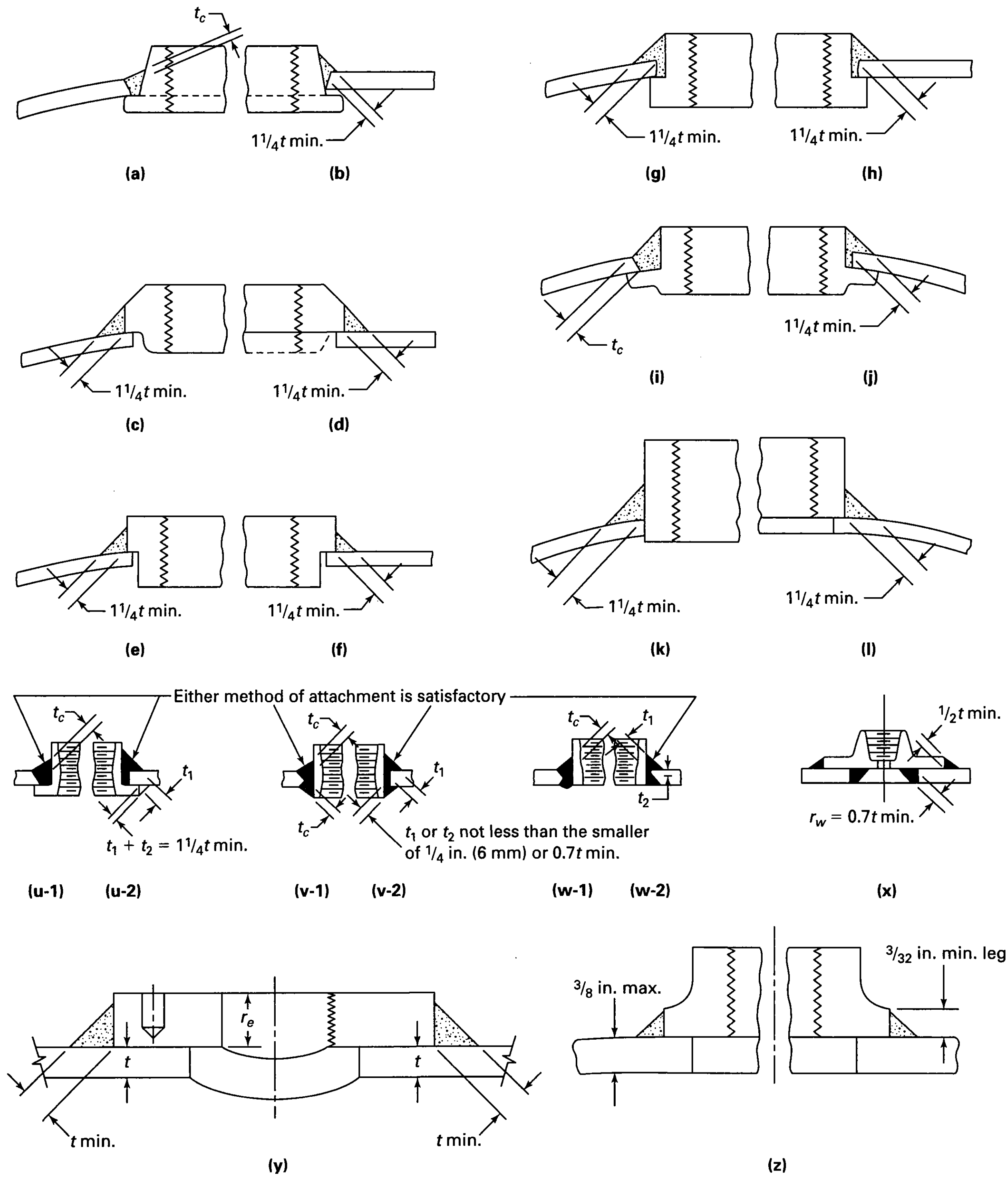
(b) Internally threaded fittings or equivalent bolting pads not exceeding NPS 4 (DN 100) may be attached by a fillet weld deposited from the outside only, having the minimum dimensions shown in Fig. HLW-431.5, sketches (a) through (l). Fittings or studded pads that are not subject to a bending load and that will be plugged, such as those for thermostats, anode rods, drain valves, cleanouts, and heating elements, may be attached to water heater vessels having a thickness not greater than $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) by a fillet weld deposited from the outside only having the minimum dimensions shown in Fig. HLW-431.5, sketch

FIG. HLW-431.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS AND HEAD



$t_1 + t_2$ = 1-1/4 t min.
t_1 or t_2 not less than the smaller of 1/4 in. or 0.7 t min.

FIG. HLW-431.5 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDS FOR FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS AND HEAD



(y). The maximum size opening in the water heater vessel shall be $5\frac{3}{8}$ in. (136 mm) in any direction but not greater than one-half the vessel diameter.

(c) Flange-type fittings not exceeding NPS 2 (DN 50) as shown in Fig. HLW-431.5, sketch (z) may be attached without additional reinforcement other than that in the fitting and its attachments, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) the water heater wall thickness shall not exceed $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm)

(2) the minimum fillet leg shall be $\frac{3}{32}$ in. (2.5 mm)

(3) the opening in the water heater wall shall not exceed the outside diameter of the nominal pipe plus $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm)

HLW-431.6 Internally Threaded Fittings Attached by Resistance Welding. Resistance welding may be used for the attachment of fittings under the following limitations and requirements:

(a) The welding process utilized shall be limited to projection welding.

(b) Materials used in resistance welded parts shall be limited to a maximum carbon content of 0.15%.

(c) The thickness t shall not exceed $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm), and the fitting shall not exceed NPS 2 (DN 50).

(d) The maximum allowable working pressure for a vessel with fittings attached by resistance welding shall be established by a proof test in accordance with HLW-500.

(e) In lieu of the Procedure and Performance Qualification requirements of Section IX, the following requirements shall be met:

(1) Workmanship Samples

(a) Three welded specimens of each combination of fitting size and base metal thickness employed shall be made immediately before and after the welding of the fittings for the proof test vessel. These test specimens shall be representative of the manufacturing practice employed in the attachment of the fittings to the proof test vessel. Sufficient base metal shall overlap the fitting to allow securement for the tensile test.

(b) These welded specimens shall be subjected to tensile loading. Each specimen shall pass the tensile test by shearing the fitting or the base metal. Separation at the weld interface shall constitute failure. Any failure shall require a repeat of the workmanship sample test as herein required.

(c) All pertinent information obtained from the foregoing tests shall be recorded. These samples and data constitute workmanship samples that shall be available for comparison with quality control specimens that are made during production.

(2) Machine Settings and Controls

(a) The resistance welding machine settings and process control parameters used in the attachment of the fittings to the proof test vessel and the workmanship samples shall be recorded. Except for minor variations and adjustments as permitted in the above parameters, the applicable settings shall be used in the fabrication of all vessels in a given production run.

(b) The machine settings and control shall be verified by a test sample prior to the start of daily operations, after any service or adjustment is done on the welding equipment, and with every change in material or nominal thickness.

(3) Records. Records shall be kept of all data obtained from tests of the proof test vessel, the workmanship samples, the welding machine settings, the welding procedure, and process control parameters.

(4) If resistance welding machines other than those used for the initial proof test vessel and workmanship samples are to be used in production, each additional machine and welding procedure shall be qualified in full accordance with (e)(1), (e)(2), and (e)(3) above.

HLW-431.7 Stud Welds for Covers. Arc stud welding and resistance stud welding, as defined in E-101, where the pressure exerts a tensile load on the studs, may be used for the attachment of bolted unstayed flat heads, cover plates and blind flanges, handholes and manholes, with the following limitations:

(a) Studs attached by stud welding shall not be in direct contact with products of combustion or flue gases.

(b) Where the pressure exerts a tensile load on the studs, a full face gasket must be used on flat heads, cover plates, and blind flanges attached by stud welding.

(c) The minimum size stud used shall be not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) nominal diameter and the maximum size shall not exceed $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm) nominal diameter.

(d) The type of stud shall be limited to round externally threaded studs.

(e) Base metal shall be of ferrous material specification as permitted by this Section, and the base metal must be thick enough to prevent burn through.

(f) Stud material for arc stud welding and resistance stud welding of carbon steel shall be low carbon steel of an acceptable material in this Section and with a carbon maximum of 0.27% and with a minimum tensile strength of 60,000 psi (400 MPa).

(g) The maximum spacing of studs shall not exceed 12 times the nominal diameter of the stud.

(h) The maximum allowable stress for the stud shall be 7,800 psi (54 MPa) based on the smallest cross-sectional area (i.e., the root of the thread).

HLW-431.8 Stud Welds for Internally Threaded Fittings. Arc stud welding and resistance stud welding, as defined in E-101, may be used for the mechanical attachment of fittings used to secure piping to vessel shells and heads with the following limitations.

(a) Mechanically attached internally threaded fittings shall be limited to a maximum NPS 3 (DN 80) and shall be secured by a minimum of four studs.

(b) Daily production weld tests shall be per HLW-460.5.

(c) Stud welds used for the mechanical attachment of internally threaded fittings shall meet the provisions of HLW-431.7.

(d) Gaskets for internally threaded fittings mechanically attached using arc- or resistance-welded studs may be of the flat or ring type, made of a material suitable for service at a minimum of 210°F (99°C). When ring-type gaskets are employed, a suitable recess shall be provided in the fitting to accommodate the gasket.

(e) The maximum allowable working pressure for a vessel with internally threaded fittings mechanically attached using arc- or resistance-welded studs shall be established by proof test in accordance with HLW-500. Each size of the proposed connection shall be tested including the gasket method, studs, and internally threaded fittings.

HLW-431.9 Friction Welding. Materials joined by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes shall be limited to material assigned P-Numbers in Section IX and shall not include rimmed or semikilled steel.

HLW-432 BRAZED CONNECTIONS FOR COPPER LINED VESSELS

Brazing shall meet the applicable requirements of Subpart HB, Articles 10 through 15, inclusive. Some acceptable brazed connections are as shown in Fig. HLW-432.1.

HLW-440 WELDING PROCESSES

The welding processes that may be used under this Part are restricted to the following:

(a) Arc or gas welding processes are restricted to shielded metal arc, submerged arc, gas metal arc, gas tungsten arc, plasma arc, atomic hydrogen metal arc, laser beam, electron beam, oxyhydrogen, and oxyacetylene.

(b) Pressure welding processes are restricted to flash, induction, resistance, pressure thermit, pressure gas, and inertia and continuous drive friction welding.

(c) Definitions are given in Section IX, which includes variations of these processes.

HLW-450 WELDING QUALIFICATIONS

Unless otherwise specified in this Part the procedures, the welders, and the welding operators used in welding pressure parts and in joining nonpressure parts (attachments) to pressure parts shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

Some linings require an elevated temperature for proper application. These elevated temperatures are not to be considered a form of heat treatment for welding procedure qualification.

HLW-451 PRODUCTION WORK QUALIFICATIONS

(a) No production work shall be undertaken until the procedures, the welders, and the welding operators have been qualified, except that performance qualification by radiography, in conformance with Section IX, QW-304 for welders or QW-305 for welding operators, may be performed within the first 3 ft (1 m) of the first production weld.

(b) Welders, including brazers, and welding and brazing operators not in the employ of the manufacturer (Certificate of Authorization Holders) may be used to fabricate water heaters or parts thereof constructed in accordance with the Section, provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) All Code construction shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer.

(2) All welding shall be performed in accordance with the Manufacturer's welding procedure specifications that have been qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and this Section.

(3) All welders shall be qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and this Section.

(4) The Manufacturer's quality control system shall include as a minimum:

(a) a requirement for complete and exclusive administrative and technical supervision of all welders by the Manufacturer

(b) evidence of the Manufacturer's authority to assign and remove welders at his discretion without involvement of any other organization

(c) a requirement for Assignment of Welder Identification symbols

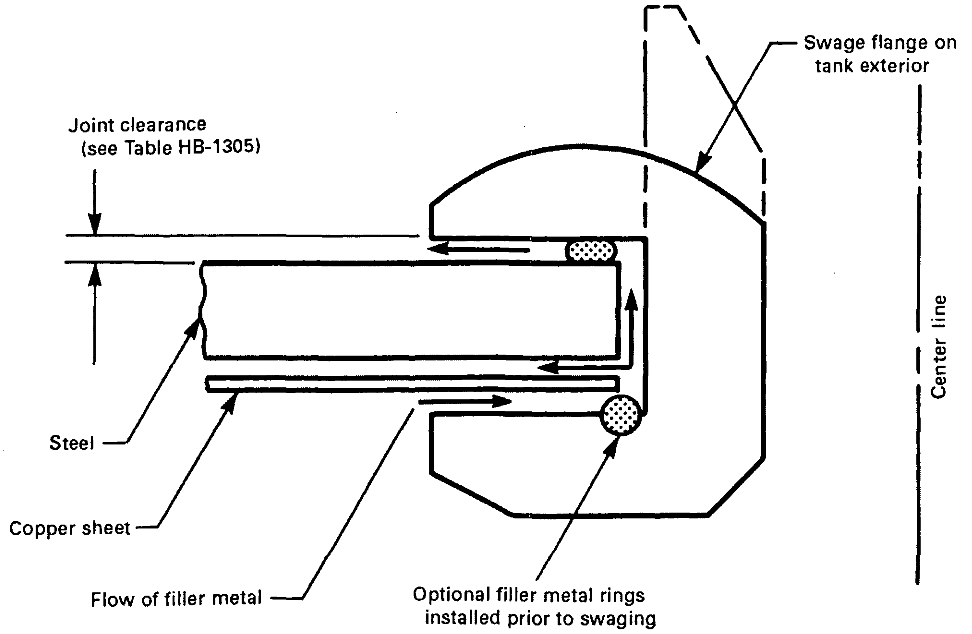
(d) evidence that this program has been accepted by the Manufacturer's Authorized Inspection Agency that provides the inspection service

(5) The Manufacturer shall be responsible for Code compliance of the completed vessel or part, including Code symbol stamping and providing Data Report Forms properly executed and countersigned by the Inspector.

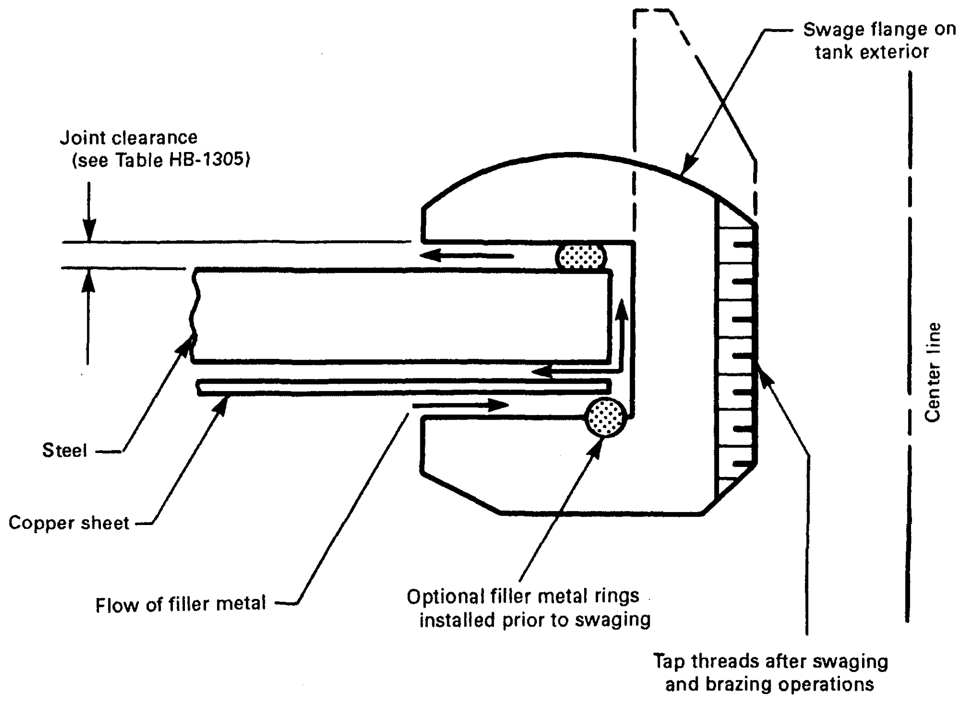
HLW-452 INTERCHANGE OF QUALIFYING TESTS AMONG MANUFACTURERS PROHIBITED

The performance qualification tests for welders and welding operators conducted by one manufacturer or contractor shall not qualify a welder or welding operator to do work for any other manufacturer or contractor.

FIG. HLW-432.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF BRAZED FITTINGS, NOZZLES, AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO COPPER-LINED SHELLS AND HEADS



(a)



(b)

HLW-453 MAINTENANCE OF RECORDS OF QUALIFICATIONS AND IDENTIFYING MARKS

The Manufacturer or contractor shall maintain qualification records of the welding procedures and welders and welding operators employed by him showing the date and results of test and the identification mark assigned to each welder. These records shall be certified to by the Manufacturer or contractor by signature or some other method of control in accordance with the Manufacturer's quality control system, and be accessible to the Inspector. The welder or welding operator shall stamp his identification mark on or adjacent to all welded joints made by him at intervals of not greater than 3 ft (0.9 m), or the Manufacturer shall keep a record of the welded joints on a water heater vessel and the welders and welding operators used in making the joints.

HLW-454 POSTHYDROTEST WELDING OF NONPRESSURE PARTS TO PRESSURE PARTS

Nonpressure parts may be welded to pressure parts after the hydrostatic test has been performed as set forth in HLW-505, provided the following criteria are met:

(a) The material requirements shall comply as follows:

(1) The pressure part material is limited to P-No. 1, Group 1 or 2 materials.

(2) The nonpressure attachment material is limited to carbon steel with a carbon content not exceeding 0.20% or any P-No. 1 material.

(3) When the nonpressure attachment material is other than P-No. 1, a minimum 200°F (93°C) preheat shall be applied when the pressure part thickness exceeds $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm).

(b) The attachment is done by stud welding, or by fillet welding where the throat of the weld does not exceed the lesser of 1.5 times the thickness of the pressure part or $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(c) The completed weld is inspected by the Authorized Inspector.

(d) The Manufacturer's Data Report Form shall be signed only after the completion of the welding.

HLW-460 SPECIFIC WELDING REQUIREMENTS

HLW-460.1 Finished Longitudinal and Circumferential Joints

(a) Butt welded joints shall have complete penetration and full fusion. The surface of the weld may be left as-welded provided the weld is free of coarse ripples, grooves, overlaps, abrupt ridges, or valleys. A reduction in thickness due to the welding process is acceptable provided all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The reduction in thickness shall not reduce the material of the adjoining surfaces below the minimum required thickness at any point.

(2) The reduction in thickness shall not exceed $\frac{1}{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) or 10% of the nominal thickness of the adjoining surface, whichever is less.[1]

HLW-460.2 Fillet Welds. In making fillet welds, the weld metal shall be deposited in such a way that adequate penetration into the base metal at the root of the weld is secured. The reduction of the thickness of the base metal due to the welding process at the edges of the fillet weld shall meet the same requirements as for butt welds [see HLW-460.1].

HLW-460.3 Double-Welded Butt Joints. Before applying weld metal on the second side to be welded, the root of double-welded butt joints shall be prepared by suitable methods such as chipping, grinding, or thermal gouging, so as to secure sound metal at the base of weld metal deposited on the face side, except for those processes of welding by which proper fusion and penetration are otherwise obtained and by which the root of the weld remains free from impurities.

HLW-460.4 Repair of Weld Defects. Visible defects, such as cracks, pinholes, and incomplete fusion, and defects detected by leakage tests shall be removed by mechanical means or by thermal grooving processes, after which the joint shall be rewelded and reexamined.

HLW-460.5 Stud Welding. In the case where arc stud welding and resistance stud welding is used to attach load carrying studs, a production stud weld test of the procedure and welding operator shall be performed on five studs, welded and tested in accordance with either the bend or torque stud weld testing described in Section IX as follows:

(a) prior to start of daily operation if used continuously on units of similar construction

(b) prior to the start of application to a given unit when not used continuously

(c) after adjustment or servicing is done on welding equipment

HLW-460.6 Procedure and Performance Qualification Tests and Material Requirements for Stud Welding. Procedure and performance qualification tests for stud welds shall be made in accordance with Section IX. Further requirements for stud welding are as follows:

(a) Metallic coatings (such as cadmium plating) if used shall not be within $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) from the weld end of the stud.

---

[1] It is not the intent of this paragraph to require measurement of reductions in thickness due to the welding process. If a disagreement between the Manufacturer and the Inspector exists as to the acceptability of any reduction in thickness, the depth shall be verified by actual measurement.

(*b*) The base metal must be above 50°F (10°C) during the welding process.

HLW-460.7 Stud Welding. In the case where stud welding and resistance stud welding are used for joining nonpressure bearing attachments, which have essentially no load carrying function (such as extended heat transfer surfaces, insulation attachment pins, etc), to pressure parts by any automatic welding process performed in accordance with a Welding Procedure Specification (in compliance with Section IX as far as applicable), procedure and performance qualification testing is not required.

In the case where stud welding is used to attach nonload-carrying studs, a production stud weld test, appropriate to the end use application requirements, shall be specified by the Manufacturer or assembler and carried out on a separate test plate or tube as follows:

(*a*) prior to start of daily operation if used continuously on units of similar construction

(*b*) prior to the start of application to a given unit when not used continuously

(*c*) after adjustment or servicing is done on welding equipment

HLW-460.8 Tack Welds. Tack welds used to secure alignment shall either be removed completely when they have served their purpose, or their stopping and starting ends shall be properly prepared by grinding or other suitable means so that they may be satisfactorily incorporated into the final weld. Tack welds, whether removed or left in place, shall be made using a fillet weld or butt weld procedure qualified in accordance with Section IX. Tack welds to be left in place shall be made by welders qualified in accordance with Section IX and shall be examined visually for defects, and if found defective, shall be removed.

It is not necessary that a subcontractor performing such tack welds for the vessel manufacturer be a holder of an ASME Certificate of Authorization. If the tack welds are permanently left in place, the final vessel manufacturer shall maintain the controls to assure that the necessary welding procedure and performance qualifications are met in order to satisfy Code requirements.

HLW-460.9 Friction Welding

(*a*) When joining two parts by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes, one of the two parts must be held in a fixed position and the other part rotated. The two faces to be joined must be essentially symmetrical with respect to the axis of rotation. Some of the basic types of applicable joints are solid round to solid round, tube to tube, solid round to tube, solid round to plate, and tube to plate.

(*b*) The welded joint between two members joined by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes shall be a full penetration weld. Visual examination of the as-welded flash roll of each weld shall be made as an in-process check. The weld upset shall meet the specified amount within ±10%. The flash shall be removed to sound metal.

ARTICLE 5
TESTS

HLW-500 TESTS TO ESTABLISH MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE WORKING PRESSURE AND PRODUCTION LINE TESTS

HLW-501 GENERAL

The required thickness for pressure parts and the maximum allowable working pressure for vessels that are not based upon the formulas of Article 3 shall be established by a proof test. The proof test shall consist of the application of hydrostatic pressure to a full size sample of a vessel. Material in excess of the material thicknesses or of higher strengths than specified for parts of proof test vessel(s) shall be acceptable for production of such parts. The maximum allowable working pressure for a series of vessels may be established by a proof test on one vessel from the series, or two vessels from the series if the ligament spacing differs. Vessels with the smallest and largest ligament spacing on the heads shall be tested.

Vessels in the series shall have

(a) heads of the same geometry and thickness

(b) cylindrical shell and tube(s), if used, that differ only by length, and

(c) openings of the same size and type as those present on the vessel proof tested

Optional openings in the shell may be added in accordance with the provisions of HLW-308.

Optional openings in the heads may be added in accordance with the provisions of HLW-308 if such head openings are located entirely within a circle, the center of which coincides with the center of the head and the diameter of which is equal to 80% of the head diameter.

HLW-502 PROOF TEST

HLW-502.1 Test Procedure

(a) Hydrostatic pressure previously applied to the vessel to be proof tested shall not have exceeded $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the anticipated maximum allowable working pressure.

(b) The outer surface of the vessel shall be suitably cleaned. A brittle coating shall be applied. The technique shall be suited to the coating material.

(c) The hydrostatic pressure shall be increased gradually until approximately one-half the anticipated maximum allowable working pressure is reached. Thereafter, the test pressure shall be increased in steps of approximately $\frac{1}{10}$ or less of the anticipated maximum allowable working pressure. The pressure shall be held stationary at the end of each increment for a sufficient time to allow the observations required by the test procedure to be made, and shall be released to zero to permit determination of any permanent strain or displacement after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in strain or displacement over the previous equal pressure increment as evidenced by flaking of the brittle coating, or by the appearance of strain lines. The application of pressure shall be stopped when the intended test pressure has been reached, or at the first sign of yielding.

(d) The yield strength shall be the average of three specimens cut from the part tested after the test is completed. The specimens shall be cut from a location where the stress during the test has not exceeded the yield strength. When excess stock from the same piece of wrought material is available the test specimens may be cut from this excess stock. The specimens shall not be removed by flame cutting or any other method involving sufficient heat to affect the properties of the specimen.

(e) The maximum allowable working pressure P in psi for the water heater tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas:

(1) if the average yield strength is determined in accordance with HLW-502.1(d) above,

$$P = 0.5H\frac{Y_s}{Y_a}$$

(2) to eliminate the necessity of cutting tensile specimens and determining the actual yield strength of the material under test, or when the test has been stopped before any yielding, one of the following formulas may be used to determine the maximum allowable working pressure:

(a) for carbon steel meeting an acceptable Code Specification, with a specified minimum tensile strength of not over 70,000 psi (480 MPa),

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$P = 0.5H\left(\frac{S}{S + 5{,}000}\right)$$

(SI Units)

$$P = 0.5H\left(\frac{S}{S + 34\ 500}\right)$$

(b) for any acceptable material listed in Section IV,

$$P = 0.4H$$

where

H = hydrostatic test pressure at which the test was stopped, psi (kPa)
S = specified minimum tensile strength, psi (kPa)
Y_a = actual average yield strength from test specimens, psi (kPa), as outlined in HLW-502.1(d)
Y_s = specified minimum yield strength, psi (kPa)

When either of the formulas in (a) and (b) above is used, the material in the pressure part shall have no appreciable cold working or other treatment that would tend to raise the yield strength above the normal.

NOTE: Due to the geometry of parts commonly used in lined water heaters, yielding due to bending often occurs at pressures that are unusually low compared to burst strength. When an analysis of the test indicates yielding occurred in bending, P may be multiplied by 1.5.

HLW-502.2 Test Gages

(a) An indicating gage shall be connected directly to the water heater vessel. Intermediate pipe and fittings may be used provided there are no intervening valves. If the indicating gage is not readily visible to the operator controlling the pressure applied, an additional indicating gage shall be provided where it will be visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. For large water heater vessels, it is recommended that a recording gage be used in addition to indicating gages.

(b) Dial indicating pressure gages used in testing shall be graduated over a range of about double the intended maximum test pressure, but in no case shall the range be less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ nor more than 4 times that pressure. Digital reading pressure gages having a wider range of pressure may be used provided the readings give the same, or greater, degree of accuracy as obtained with dial pressure gages.

(c) All gages shall be calibrated against a standard deadweight tester or a calibrated master gage. Gages shall be recalibrated at any time that there is reason to believe that they are in error.

HLW-503 TESTING OF PARTS

HLW-503.1 Parts of vessels subject to collapse that have not been proof tested in accordance with HLW-502 and for which specified rules are not provided in this Part shall withstand, without excessive deformation, a hydrostatic test of not less than three times the desired maximum allowable working pressure.

HLW-503.2 Cast parts for vessels may have a maximum allowable working pressure established by the bursting test procedure of HG-502.3.

HLW-504 WITNESSING, RECORDING, AND CERTIFYING TESTS

Tests to establish the maximum allowable working pressure of complete vessels or parts shall be witnessed by the manufacturer's personnel designated to be responsible for the examination. These tests shall also be witnessed and accepted by the Authorized Inspector. These proof tests shall be recorded on Form HLW-8, Manufacturer's Master Data Proof Test Report for Water Heaters or Storage Tanks. The completed form shall be certified by the designated responsible engineering head of the manufacturer. These forms shall be kept on file by the manufacturer as a matter of record.

HLW-505 HYDROSTATIC TEST

HLW-505.1 All water heater vessels shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test of $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the maximum allowable working pressure with the exception that the test pressure for glass-lined, and fluorocarbon polymer-lined, or amine or polyamine epoxy-lined water heater vessels shall be at least equal to, but not exceed within the tolerances of test pressure in HLW-505.2, the maximum allowable working pressure to be marked on the water heater vessel. Water heater vessels that are to be galvanized or cement-lined may be pressure tested either before or after galvanizing or cement lining.

HLW-505.2 While under the hydrostatic test pressure an inspection for leakage shall be made of all joints and connections. In making hydrostatic pressure tests the pressure shall be under such control that in no case shall the required test pressure be exceeded by more than 10 psi (70 kPa).

ARTICLE 6
INSPECTION AND STAMPING

HLW-600 INSPECTION AND CERTIFICATION

HLW-600.1 Inspection by Authorized Inspector. The inspection required by this Part shall be by an Inspector employed by an ASME accredited Authorized Inspection Agency,[1] that is, the inspection organization of a State or Municipality of the United States, a Canadian Province, or an Inspector of an insurance company authorized to write boiler and pressure vessel insurance. These Inspectors shall have been qualified by written examination under the rules of any State of the United States or Province of Canada that has adopted the Code.

HLW-600.2 Manufacturer's Responsibility

(a) The manufacturer who completes any vessel to be marked with the Code HLW Symbol has the responsibility of complying with all requirements of this Part, and through proper certification of assuring that any work done by others also complies with the requirements of this Part.

(b) The manufacturer has the responsibility of providing the Authorized Inspector with all specified information and assurance that the quality control system is in compliance with that outlined in Appendix F. These responsibilities shall include, but are not limited to, providing or making available for review the following:

(1) a valid Certificate of Authorization for use of the HLW Symbol from the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee (see HLW-602)

(2) the design calculations per Article 3 or the certified proof test results per Article 5 and associated drawings (see HLW-300 and HLW-500)

(3) identification of materials to show compliance with Articles 2 and 3 and compliance with the provisions of Section IX (see HLW-200 and HLW-300)

(4) evidence of qualification of welding and/or brazing procedures (see HLW-432 and HLW-450)

(5) records of qualifications of each welder, welding operator, or brazer as evidence of compliance with the provisions of Section IX (see HLW-432 and HLW-450)

(6) any Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports when required by HLW-601.2

(7) evidence of examination of materials before fabrication to make certain it has the required thickness, has no unacceptable indications, and is one of the acceptable materials permitted by this Part and that traceability to the material identification has been maintained [see HLW-201(c) and F-202.4]

(8) the manufacturer shall submit the vessel or other pressure part for inspection at such stages of the work as may be designated by the Inspector

HLW-600.3 Authorized Inspector's Duty

(a) The Authorized Inspector shall make such inspections as he believes are needed to enable him to certify that the vessels have been constructed in accordance with the rules of this Part. He shall assure himself that the manufacturer is complying with all of the requirements of this Part.

(b) It is the duty of the Inspector to assure himself that the welding procedures employed in construction are qualified under the provisions of Section IX. The manufacturer shall submit evidence to the Inspector that those requirements have been met.

(c) It is the duty of the Inspector to assure himself that all welding is done by welders or welding operators qualified under the provisions of Section IX. The manufacturer shall make available to the Inspector a certified copy of the record of performance qualification tests of each welder and welding operator as evidence that these requirements have been met.

The Inspector has the right at any time to call for and witness the test welding and testing although it is not mandatory that he witness the test welding and the testing unless he so desires.

(d) The provisions of HG-515.4(b) apply to the fabrication of multiple duplicate water heaters and storage tanks.

HLW-601 MANUFACTURER'S DATA AND PARTIAL DATA REPORTS

HLW-601.1 Manufacturer's Data Report

(a) Each manufacturer shall complete a Manufacturer's Data Report for each vessel he produces. Form HLW-6 may be used. Individual manufacturer's data reports, if used, will satisfy the requirements for the Manufacturers'

[1] Whenever Authorized Inspection Agency or AIA is used in this Code, it shall mean an ASME Accredited Authorized Inspection Agency accredited by ASME in accordance with the latest edition of QAI-1.

Data Report. The report may cover a single vessel or may include the serial numbers in uninterrupted sequence of identical vessels completed, inspected, and stamped in a continuous 8 hr period.

(*b*) The manufacturer shall have the responsibility of furnishing a copy of the completed Manufacturer's Data Report at the place of installation to the inspection agency, the purchaser, and the state, municipal, or provincial authority. The manufacturer shall either keep a copy of the Manufacturers' Data Report on file for at least 5 years, or the vessel may be registered and the original Data Report filed with the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors, 1055 Crupper Avenue, Columbus, Ohio 43229.

HLW-601.2 Partial Data Reports

(*a*) Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports for those parts of a vessel requiring inspection under this Code, which are furnished by other than the shop of the manufacturer responsible for the completed heater, shall be executed by the parts manufacturer and shall be forwarded in duplicate, to the manufacturer of the finished vessel.

(*b*) Partial Data Reports (Form HLW-7) shall be completed for all parts that require inspection under this Code that are fabricated by a manufacturer other than the manufacturer of the completed vessel, regardless of whether individual Manufacturer's Data Reports are compiled for the completed units. These Partial Data Reports, together with his own inspection, shall be the final Inspector's authority to witness the application of a Code Symbol to the completed vessel.

HLW-601.3 Supplementary Sheet. Form H-6, Manufacturer's Data Report Supplementary Sheet, shall be used to record additional data where space was insufficient on a Data Report Form. This Manufacturer's Data Report Supplementary Sheet will be attached to the Manufacturer's Data Report Form where used.

HLW-602 STAMPING OF WATER HEATERS AND STORAGE TANKS

HLW-602.1 Stamping Requirements for Vessels. All vessels to which the Code Symbol is to be applied shall be built according to the rules of this Part by a manufacturer who is in possession of a Code Symbol Stamp and a valid Certificate of Authorization per procedure of HG-540. Each vessel shall be marked or stamped with the Code Symbol shown in Fig. HLW-602.1 and the form of stamping shown in Fig. HLW-602.2 with the following data:

(*a*) the manufacturer's name, preceded by the words "Certified by."

(*b*) maximum allowable working pressure.

(*c*) maximum allowable input in Btu/hr; electric heaters may use kW or Btu/hr (expressed at the rate of 3,500 Btu/hr per kW) or both. In lieu of the input markings storage tanks shall be marked "Storage Only."

(*d*) manufacturer's serial number (this may be a serial number or a combination model and serial number).

(*e*) year built (the year built may be incorporated into the serial number).

FIG. HLW-602.1 OFFICIAL SYMBOL TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD

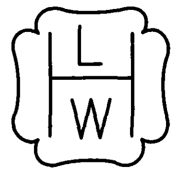
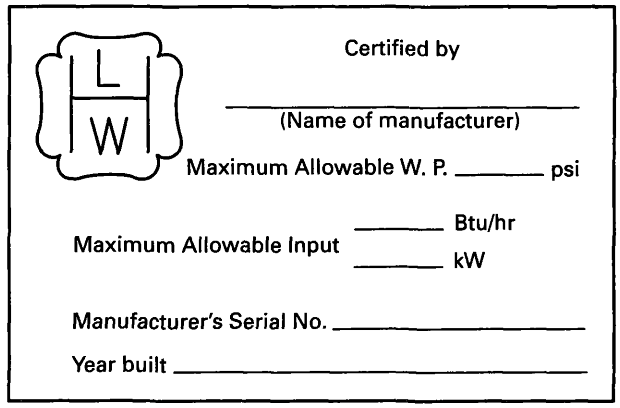


FIG. HLW-602.2 FORM OF STAMPING ON COMPLETED WATER HEATERS



HLW-602.2 Stamping a Proof Tested Vessel. A completed vessel or one tested prior to lining may have the required Code Symbol and marking applied, provided

(*a*) the proof test was stopped before any visible yielding

(*b*) all welding was qualified as required by HLW-451

(*c*) the MAWP is calculated by the method of HLW-502.1(d)(2)

(*d*) the interior of a lined vessel must be inspected to verify that it was not damaged, and

(*e*) the completed vessel is subjected to the hydrostatic test provisions of HLW-505

HLW-602.3 When the Code Symbol and marking required by HLW-602.1, items (*1*) through (*5*), is applied directly to the water heater vessel, it shall be stamped with letters and figures at least $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) high or on a stamping plate at least $\frac{3}{64}$ in. (1.2 mm) thick permanently fastened to the water heater vessel. Stamping plates bearing the stamping and marking required in HLW-602.1 may be used in lieu of stamping these data directly on the water heater vessel if the stamping plates are permanently attached to the water heater vessel. In this case the required data on the stamping plate shall be in characters not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) high.

If the required marking or stamping is to be covered by insulation, jacket, or other form of casing, one of the following shall be provided:

(a) an opening with a removal cover for viewing the marking or stamping.

(b) a nameplate, located in a conspicuous place on the jacket, duplicating the required Code Symbol and data. This plate shall be at least 3 in. × 4 in. (75 mm × 100 mm) in size marked with letters and numerals at least $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) high and of either metallic material attached by mechanical means or of any material attached by an adhesive system meeting the requirements of Appendix 3.

HLW-602.4 Parts for which a Partial Data Report, Form HLW-7, is required by HLW-601.2, shall be marked with the following:

(a) the official symbol shown in Fig. HLW-602.1 above the word "Part"

(b) the part manufacturer's name

(c) the part manufacturer's serial number

In lieu of stamping these data directly on the vessel, a stamping plate, as described in HLW-602.3, may be used.

HLW-602.5 Water heaters fabricated of austenitic stainless steel material listed in Table HLW-301 shall have a precautionary statement warning that the water heaters are to be operated only on deionized water having a minimum specific resistivity of 1.0 MΩ/cm clearly marked and located on the water heater so that it will be readily visible.

ARTICLE 7
CONTROLS

HLW-700 CONTROLS

HLW-701 TEMPERATURE CONTROL

HLW-701.1 Each individual automatically fired water heater, in addition to the operating control used for normal water heater operation shall have a separate high temperature limit control that will automatically cut off the fuel supply. The temperature range of the high temperature limit control shall not allow a setting over 210°F (99°C).

(a) On gas-fired water heaters, the high temperature limit control when actuated shall shut off the fuel supply with a shutoff means other than the operating control valve. Separate valves may have a common body.

(b) On electrically heated water heaters, the high temperature limit control when actuated shall cut off all power to the operating controls.

(c) On oil-fired water heaters, the high temperature limit control when actuated shall cut off all current flow to the burner mechanism.

(d) On indirect water heating systems, the high temperature limit control when activated shall cut off the source of heat.

HLW-702 LIMIT CONTROLS

Limit controls used with electric circuits should break the hot or line sides of the control circuit.

HLW-703 CONTROLS AND HEAT GENERATING APPARATUS

(a) All water heaters should be equipped with suitable primary (flame safeguard) safety controls, safety limit switches, and burners, or electric elements as required by a nationally recognized standard.[1]

(b) The symbol of the certifying organization[2] that has investigated such equipment as having complied with a nationally recognized standard shall be affixed to the equipment and shall be considered as evidence that the controls and heat generating apparatus were manufactured in accordance with that standard.

HLW-704 ELECTRICAL WIRING

HLW-704.1 Electrical Code Compliance. All field wiring for controls, heat generating apparatus, and other appurtenances necessary for the operation of the water heater should be installed in accordance with the provisions of the National Electrical Code and/or should comply with the applicable local electrical codes. All water heaters supplied with factory mounted and wired controls, heat generating apparatus, and other appurtenances necessary for the operation of the water heaters should be installed in accordance with the provisions of the nationally recognized standards such as listed in footnote 1 of HLW-703.

---

[1] Examples of these nationally recognized standards that are currently effective:
- ANSI/UL 732, Standard for Oil-Fired Storage Tank Water Heaters.
- American National Standard/CSA Standard ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3 for Gas Water Heaters, Volume III, Storage Water Heaters With Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu Per Hour, Circulating and Instantaneous.
- Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 795, Standards for Safety, Commercial–Industrial Gas-Heating Equipment.
- Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., UL 1453, Standards for Safety, Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters.

[2] A certifying organization is one that provides uniform testing, examination, and listing procedures under established, nationally recognized standards and that is acceptable to the authorities having jurisdiction.

ARTICLE 8
INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

HLW-800 SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

HLW-800.1 Safety Relief Valve Requirements for Water Heaters

(a) Each water heater shall have at least one officially rated temperature and pressure safety relief valve or at least one officially rated safety relief valve. The valve(s) shall be marked with the ASME Code Symbol V or HV to evidence compliance with the construction and rating requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. No safety relief valve shall be smaller than NPS $\frac{3}{4}$ (DN 20).

(b) The pressure setting shall be less than or equal to the maximum allowable working pressure of the water heater. However, if any of the other components in the hot water supply system (such as valves, pumps, expansion or storage tanks, or piping) have a lesser working pressure rating than the water heater, the pressure setting for the relief valve(s) shall be based upon the component with the lowest maximum allowable working pressure rating. If more than one safety relief valve is used, the additional valve(s) may be set within a range not to exceed 10% over the set pressure of the first valve.

(c) The required relieving capacity in Btu/hr of the safety relief valve shall not be less than the maximum allowable input unless the water heater is marked with the rated burner input capacity of the water heater on the casing in a readily visible location, in which case the rated burner input capacity may be used as a basis for sizing the safety relief valves. The relieving capacity for electric water heaters shall be 3,500 Btu/hr (1.0 kW) per kW of input. In every case, the following requirements shall be met. Safety relief valve capacity for each water heater shall be such that with the fuel burning equipment installed and operated at maximum capacity the pressure cannot rise more than 10% of maximum allowable working pressures.

(d) If operating conditions are changed or additional heater heating surface is installed, the safety relief valve capacity shall be increased, if necessary, to meet the new conditions and shall be in accordance with the above provisions. In no case shall the increased input capacity exceed the maximum allowable input capacity. The additional valves required, on account of changed conditions, may be installed on the outlet piping provided there is no intervening valve.

HLW-801 MOUNTING SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

HLW-801.1 Installation. Safety relief valves shall be installed by either the installer or the manufacturer before a water heater is placed in operation.

HLW-801.2 Permissible Mountings. Safety relief valves shall be connected to the top of water heaters or directly to a tapped or flanged opening in the water heater, to a fitting connected to the water heater by a short nipple, to a Y-base, or to a valveless header connecting water outlets on the same heater. Safety relief valves shall be installed with their spindles upright and vertical with no horizontal connecting pipe, except that, when the safety relief valve is mounted directly on the water heater vessel with no more than 4 in. (100 mm) maximum interconnecting piping, the valve may be installed in the horizontal position with the outlet pointed down. The center line of the safety relief valve connection shall be no lower than 4 in. (100 mm) from the top of the shell. No piping or fitting used to mount the safety relief valve shall be of a nominal pipe size less than that of the valve inlet.

HLW-801.3 Requirements for Common Connection for Two or More Valves

(a) When a water heater is fitted with two or more safety relief valves on one connection, this connection shall have a cross-sectional area not less than the combined areas of inlet connections of all the safety relief valves with which it connects.

(b) When a Y-base is used, the inlet area shall be not less than the combined outlet areas. When the size of the water heater requires a safety relief valve larger than $4\frac{1}{2}$ in. (114 mm) diameter, two or more valves having the required combined capacity shall be used. When two or more valves are used on a water heater, they may be single, directly attached, or mounted on a Y-base.

HLW-801.4 Threaded Connections. A threaded connection may be used for attaching a valve.

HLW-801.5 Prohibited Mountings. Safety relief valves shall not be connected to an internal pipe in the water heater or a cold water feed line connected to the water heater.

HLW-801.6 Use of Shutoff Valves Prohibited. No shutoff of any description shall be placed between the safety relief valve and the water heater, or on discharge pipes between such valves and the atmosphere.

HLW-801.7 Safety Relief Valve Discharge Piping

(a) When a discharge pipe is used, its internal cross-sectional area shall be not less than the full area of the valve outlet or of the total of the valve outlets discharging thereinto, and shall be as short and straight as possible and so arranged as to avoid undue stress on the valve or valves. When an elbow is placed on a safety relief discharge pipe, it shall be located close to the valve outlet.

(b) The discharge from safety relief valves shall be so arranged that there will be no danger of scalding attendants. When the safety relief valve discharge is piped away from the water heater to the point of discharge, there shall be provisions for properly draining the piping and valve body. The size and arrangement of discharge piping shall be such that any pressure that may exist or develop will not reduce the relieving capacity of the relieving devices below that required to protect the water heater.

HLW-805 WATER SUPPLY

HLW-805.1 Connections. Water supply shall be introduced into a water heater through an independent water supply connection. Feedwater shall not be introduced through openings or connections provided for cleaning, safety relief valves, drain, pressure gage, or temperature gage.

HLW-805.2 Pressure. If the water supply pressure to a water heater exceeds 75% of the set pressure of the safety relief valve, a pressure reducing valve is required.

HLW-805.3 Stop Valves. Stop valves should be placed in the supply and discharge pipe connections of a water heater installation to permit draining the water heater without emptying the system.

HLW-808 STORAGE TANKS

If a system is to utilize a storage tank that exceeds the capacity exception of HLW-101.2(c), the tank shall be constructed in accordance with the rules of this Part; Section VIII, Division 1; or Section X. For vessels constructed to Section X, the maximum allowable temperature marked on the tank shall equal or exceed 210°F (99°C).

HLW-809 PROVISIONS FOR THERMAL EXPANSION IN HOT WATER SYSTEMS

HLW-809.1 Expansion Tank. If a system is equipped with a check valve or pressure reducing valve in the cold water inlet line, consideration should be given to the installation of an airtight expansion tank or other suitable air cushion. Otherwise, due to the thermal expansion of the water, the safety relief valve may lift periodically. If an expansion tank is provided, it shall be constructed in accordance with Section VIII, Division 1 or Section X. See Fig. HLW-809.1 for a typical acceptable installation. Except for prepressurized diaphragm type tanks, which should be installed on the cold water side, provisions shall be made for draining the tank without emptying the system.

TABLE HLW-809.1
EXPANSION TANK CAPACITIES
FOR A WATER HEATER

System Volume, gal (m^3)	Tank Capacities, gal (m^3) Prepressurized Diaphragm Type	Nonprepressurized Type
50 (0.19)	1 (0.004)	3 (0.011)
100 (0.38)	2 (0.006)	6 (0.023)
200 (0.76)	3 (0.011)	12 (0.045)
300 (1.14)	4 (0.015)	18 (0.068)
400 (1.51)	5 (0.019)	24 (0.091)
500 (1.89)	6 (0.023)	30 (0.114)
1,000 (3.79)	12 (0.045)	60 (0.227)
2,000 (7.57)	24 (0.091)	120 (0.454)

GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Capacities in this Table are given as a guide to reduce or eliminate relief valve weeping under conditions of partial water system demands or occasional water draw during recovery.

(b) System volume includes water heater capacity plus all piping capacity for a recirculation system or water heater capacity only for a nonrecirculation system.

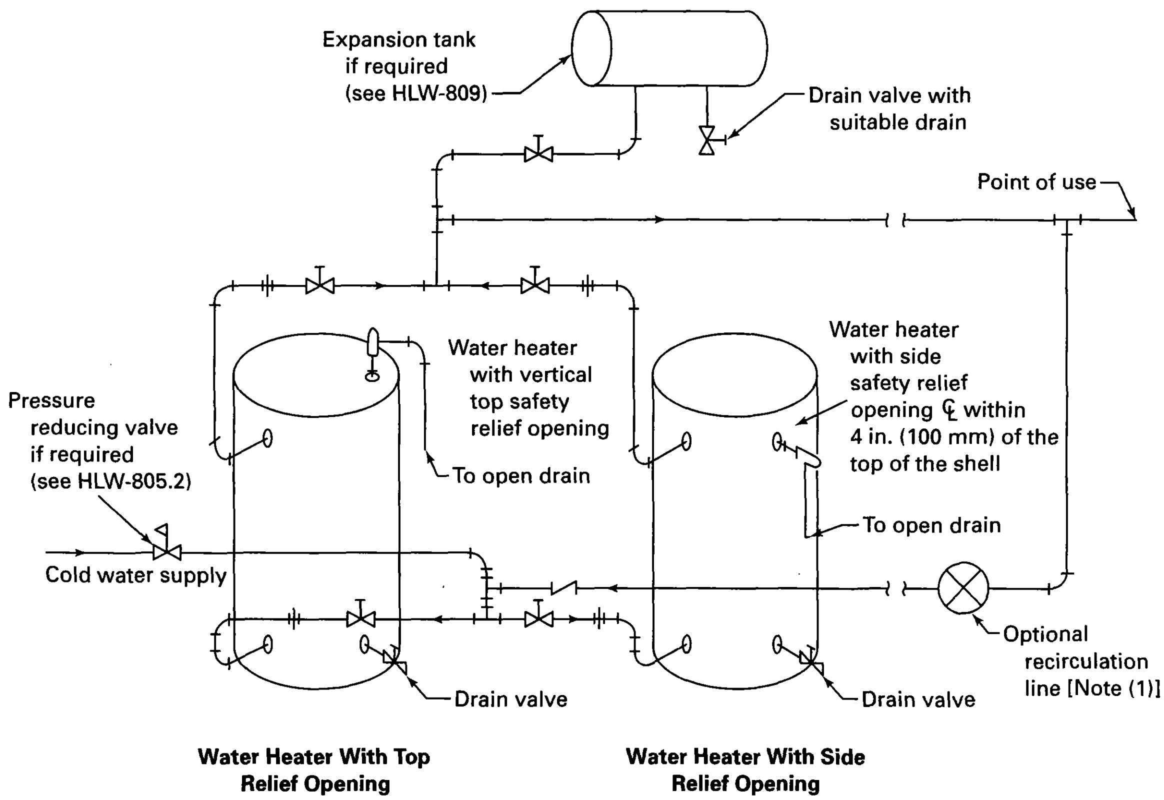
(c) The capacities are based upon a water temperature rise from 40°F to 180°F (4°C to 82°C), 60 psi (400 kPa) fill pressure, maximum operating pressure of 125 psi (850 kPa), 20% water recovery, and an acceptance factor of 0.465 for prepressurized types and 0.09156 for nonprepressurized types. A procedure for estimating system volume and for determining expansion tank sizes for other design conditions may be found in Chapter 12 of the 1996 HVAC Systems and Equipment Volume of the ASHRAE Handbook.

HLW-809.2 Piping. Provisions shall be made for the expansion and contraction of hot water mains connected to water heaters by providing substantial anchorage at suitable points and by providing swing joints when water heaters are installed in batteries, so that there will be no undue strain transmitted to the water heaters. See Figs. HLW-809.1 and HLW-809.2 for typical schematic arrangements of piping incorporating strain absorbing joints.

HLW-810 BOTTOM DRAIN VALVE

(a) Each water heater shall have a bottom drain pipe connection fitted with a valve or cock. These shall be connected at the lowest practicable point on the water 07

FIG. HLW-809.1 A TYPICAL ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION FOR STORAGE WATER HEATERS IN BATTERY



GENERAL NOTE: Thermometer requirements are in HLW-820.

NOTE:

(1) Recirculation system may be gravity or pump actuated.

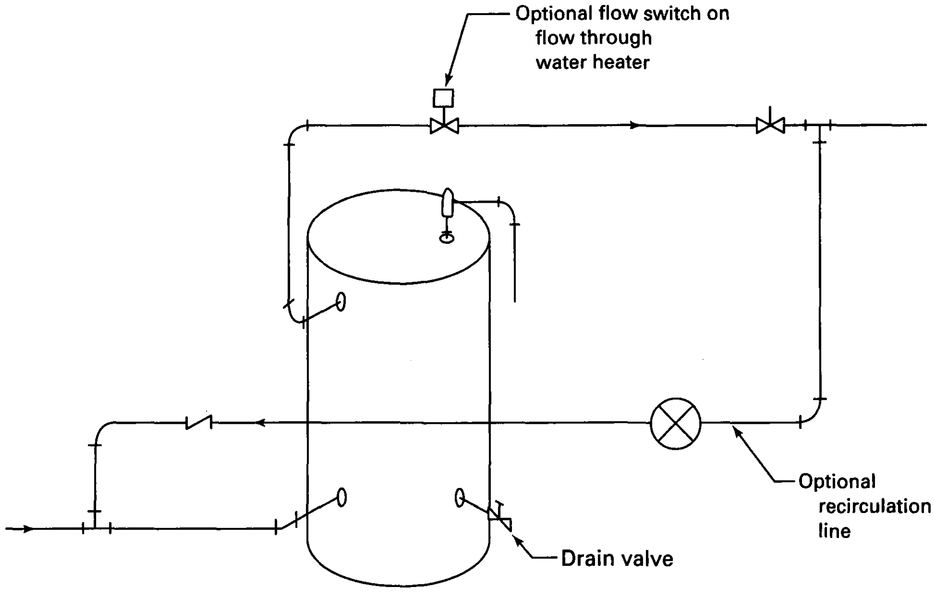
heater, or to the lowest point on piping connected to the water heater, at the lowest practicable point on the water heater. The minimum size bottom drain valve shall be $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (DN 20).

(b) Any discharge piping connected to the bottom drain connection shall be full size to the point of discharge.

HLW-820 THERMOMETER

Each installed water heater shall have a thermometer so located and connected that it shall be easily readable. The thermometer shall be so located that it shall at all times indicate the temperature of the water in the water heater at or near the outlet.

FIG. HLW-809.2 A TYPICAL ACCEPTABLE PIPING INSTALLATION FOR FLOW THROUGH WATER HEATER WITH PROVISIONS FOR PIPING EXPANSION



GENERAL NOTE: Thermometer requirements are in HLW-820.

APPENDICES

MANDATORY APPENDIX 1
SUBMITTAL OF TECHNICAL INQUIRIES TO THE BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL COMMITTEE

1-100 INTRODUCTION

(a) This Appendix provides guidance to Code users for submitting technical inquiries to the Committee. See Guideline on the Approval of New Materials Under the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code in Section II, Parts C and D for additional requirements for requests involving adding new materials to the Code. Technical inquiries include requests for revisions or additions to the Code rules, requests for Code Cases, and requests for Code interpretations, as described below.

(1) Code Revisions. Code revisions are considered to accommodate technological developments, address administrative requirements, incorporate Code Cases, or to clarify Code intent.

(2) Code Cases. Code Cases represent alternatives or additions to existing Code rules. Code Cases are written as a question and reply, and are usually intended to be incorporated into the Code at a later date. When used, Code Cases prescribe mandatory requirements in the same sense as the text of the Code. However, users are cautioned that not all jurisdictions or owners automatically accept Code Cases. The most common applications for Code Cases are

(a) to permit early implementation of an approved Code revision based on an urgent need

(b) to permit the use of a new material for Code construction

(c) to gain experience with new materials or alternative rules prior to incorporation directly into the Code

(3) Code Interpretations. Code Interpretations provide clarification of the meaning of existing rules in the Code, and are also presented in question and reply format. Interpretations do not introduce new requirements. In cases where existing Code text does not fully convey the meaning that was intended, and revision of the rules is required to support an interpretation, an Intent Interpretation will be issued and the Code will be revised.

(b) The Code rules, Code Cases, and Code Interpretations established by the Committee are not to be considered as approving, recommending, certifying, or endorsing any proprietary or specific design, or as limiting in any way the freedom of manufacturers, constructors, or owners to choose any method of design or any form of construction that conforms to the Code rules.

(c) Inquiries that do not comply with the provisions of this Appendix or that do not provide sufficient information for the Committee's full understanding may result in the request being returned to the inquirer with no action.

1-200 INQUIRY FORMAT

Submittals to the Committee shall include

(a) Purpose. Specify one of the following:

(1) revision of present Code rules

(2) new or additional Code rules

(3) Code Case

(4) Code Interpretation

(b) Background. Provide the information needed for the Committee's understanding of the inquiry, being sure to include reference to the applicable Code Section, Division, Edition, Addenda, paragraphs, figures, and tables. Preferably, provide a copy of the specific referenced portions of the Code.

(c) Presentations. The inquirer may desire or be asked to attend a meeting of the Committee to make a formal presentation or to answer questions from the Committee members with regard to the inquiry. Attendance at a Committee meeting shall be at the expense of the inquirer. The inquirer's attendance or lack of attendance at a meeting

shall not be a basis for acceptance or rejection of the inquiry by the Committee.

1-300 CODE REVISIONS OR ADDITIONS

Requests for Code revisions or additions shall provide the following:

(a) Proposed Revisions or Additions. For revisions, identify the rules of the Code that require revision and submit a copy of the appropriate rules as they appear in the Code, marked up with the proposed revision. For additions, provide the recommended wording referenced to the existing Code rules.

(b) Statement of Need. Provide a brief explanation of the need for the revision or addition.

(c) Background Information. Provide background information to support the revision or addition, including any data or changes in technology that form the basis for the request that will allow the Committee to adequately evaluate the proposed revision or addition. Sketches, tables, figures, and graphs should be submitted as appropriate. When applicable, identify any pertinent paragraph in the Code that would be affected by the revision or addition and identify paragraphs in the Code that reference the paragraphs that are to be revised or added.

1-400 CODE CASES

Requests for Code Cases shall provide a Statement of Need and Background Information similar to that defined in 1-300-3(b) and 1-300-3(c), respectively, for Code revisions or additions. The urgency of the Code Case (e.g., project underway or imminent, new procedure, etc.) must be defined and it must be confirmed that the request is in connection with equipment that will be ASME stamped, with the exception of Section XI applications. The proposed Code Case should identify the Code Section and Division, and be written as a *Question* and a *Reply* in the same format as existing Code Cases. Requests for Code Cases should also indicate the applicable Code Editions and Addenda to which the proposed Code Case applies.

1-500 CODE INTERPRETATIONS

(a) Requests for Code Interpretations shall provide the following:

(1) Inquiry. Provide a condensed and precise question, omitting superfluous background information and, when possible, composed in such a way that a "yes" or a "no" *Reply,* with brief provisos if needed, is acceptable. The question should be technically and editorially correct.

(2) Reply. Provide a proposed *Reply* that will clearly and concisely answer the *Inquiry* question. Preferably, the *Reply* should be "yes" or "no," with brief provisos if needed.

(3) Background Information. Provide any background information that will assist the Committee in understanding the proposed *Inquiry* and *Reply.*

(b) Requests for Code Interpretations must be limited to an interpretation of a particular requirement in the Code or a Code Case. The Committee cannot consider consulting type requests such as the following:

(1) a review of calculations, design drawings, welding qualifications, or descriptions of equipment or parts to determine compliance with Code requirements

(2) a request for assistance in performing any Code-prescribed functions relating to, but not limited to, material selection, designs, calculations, fabrication, inspection, pressure testing, or installation

(3) a request seeking the rationale for Code requirements

1-600 SUBMITTALS

Submittals to and responses from the Committee shall meet the following:

(a) Submittal. Inquiries from Code users shall be in English and preferably be submitted in typewritten form; however, legible handwritten inquiries will also be considered. They shall include the name, address, telephone number, fax number, and e-mail address, if available, of the inquirer and be mailed to the following address:

Secretary
ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee
Three Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

As an alternative, inquiries may be submitted via e-mail to: SecretaryBPV@asme.org.

(b) Response. The Secretary of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee or of the appropriate Subcommittee shall acknowledge receipt of each properly prepared inquiry and shall provide a written response to the inquirer upon completion of the requested action by the Code Committee.

MANDATORY APPENDIX 2
CODES, STANDARDS, AND SPECIFICATIONS REFERENCED IN TEXT

2-100 REFERENCE STANDARDS

Specific editions of standards incorporated in this Code are shown in Table 2-100. It is not practical to refer to a specific edition of each standard throughout the Code text, so edition references are centralized here. Table 2-100 will be revised at intervals and reissued as needed.

2-200 ORGANIZATIONS

Listed below are the names, acronyms, and addresses of specific organizations referred to in this Code.

American National Standards Institute (ANSI), 25 West 43rd Street, New York, NY 10036

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), 100 Barr Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, PA 19428

American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), 1791 Tullie Circle, NE, Atlanta, GA 30329

CSA International (CSA), 178 Rexdale Boulevard, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M9W 1R3; 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131

National Fire Protection Association International (NFPA), 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269

National Sanitation Foundation International (NSFI), 789 Dixboro Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48113

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL), 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062

TABLE 2-100
CODES, STANDARDS, AND SPECIFICATIONS REFERENCED IN TEXT

	American National Standards
B16.1-1989	Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
B16.5-1988	Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
B16.9-1986	Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings
B16.11-1991	Forged Fittings, Socket Welding and Threaded
B16.15-1985	Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings
B16.24-1991	Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
B16.28-1986	Wrought Steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns
B16.42-1987	Ductile Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
QAI-1	Qualifications for Authorized Inspection
	ASME Performance Test Code
PTC 25-2001	Pressure Relief Devices
	National Sanitation Foundation International (NSFI) Standard
ANSI/NSFI 14-1990	Plastic Piping Components and Related Materials
	Underwriters Laboratories Standard for Safety
UL 969-1995	Marking and Labeling Systems

GENERAL NOTE: The issue date, shown immediately following the hyphen after the number of the standard, is the effective date of issue (edition) of the standard.

MANDATORY APPENDIX 3 ADHESIVE ATTACHMENT OF NAMEPLATES TO CASING

3-100 SCOPE

The rules in Appendix 3 cover minimum requirements for nameplates and for the use of adhesive systems for the attachment of nameplates to casing, limited to

(a) the use of pressure-sensitive acrylic adhesives preapplied by the nameplate manufacturer and protected with a moisture stable release liner

(b) use of the preapplied adhesive within 2 years of its application

(c) use of an application procedure qualified as outlined in 3-101

3-101 NAMEPLATE APPLICATION PROCEDURE QUALIFICATION

(a) Each nameplate manufacturer's construction shall be qualified in accordance with ANSI/UL 969, Marking and Labeling Systems, for a surface temperature rating greater than that achieved on the surface of the casing in the area where the nameplate is applied during operation. The exposure conditions shall be for high humidity or occasional exposure to water. In addition if the boiler or water heater is designed and marked for outdoor installation, indoor-outdoor qualification shall be obtained with a cold box temperature of –40°F (–40°C).

(b) Each lot or package of nameplates shall be marked with the adhesive application date.

(c) The manufacturer's quality control system shall define that written procedures, acceptable to the Authorized Inspector (or ASME Designee for cast iron boilers), for the application of adhesive backed nameplates shall be prepared and qualified. The application procedure qualification shall include the following essential variables:

(1) each nameplate manufacturer's material and construction, including thickness range, UL File No., and rated substrate temperature(s) and finish

(2) the maximum temperature achieved on the surface of the casing in the area at which the nameplate is applied

(3) cleaning requirements for the casing surface

(4) application temperature range and pressure technique

MANDATORY APPENDIX 5
VACUUM BOILERS

5-100 SCOPE

Section IV Rules permit a boiler to operate with internal pressure or with a vacuum. Rules in this Appendix cover the minimum requirements for the design, fabrication, and inspection of a boiler for vacuum operation only. Exemptions from certain Section IV requirements are provided. All other requirements of Section IV shall be met.

5-200 MAXIMUM PRESSURE AND TEMPERATURE

(a) Maximum Allowable Working Pressure. The boiler shall be designed for 15 psi vacuum (100 kPa vacuum) [0 psi (0 kPa)]. This value shall be used in all calculations, in lieu of the requirements of HG-300(a).

(b) Maximum temperature shall not exceed 210°F (99°C).

5-300 DESIGN PARAMETERS

(a) The thickness of cylindrical shells under external pressure shall be calculated in accordance with HG-312, except that, when boilers are designed for noncorrosive service at a maximum pressure difference between outside and inside of 15 psi (100 kPa), the thickness shall be not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm).

(b) Rectangular boilers under external pressure shall have thicknesses calculated in accordance with Appendix 13-8 and 13-9 of Section VIII, Division 1. For noncorrosive service only, the thickness shall be not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm).

(c) Stays in compression shall meet the requirements of the following:

$$l/r \leq 50$$

where

l = length

r = radius of gyration

(d) The furnace thickness shall be calculated in accordance with HG-301, using 15 psi (100 kPa) design pressure. For noncorrosive service only, the thickness shall be not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm).

(e) Head thickness shall be calculated in accordance with HG-305, HG-306, or HG-307, using 15 psi (100 kPa) design pressure, except that, when boilers are designed for noncorrosive service at a maximum pressure difference between outside and inside of 15 psi (100 kPa), the thickness shall be not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm).

(f) Tube thickness shall be calculated in accordance with HG-315.

(g) As an alternative to the calculations in items (a) through (f), the vessel may be

(1) designed and constructed to Code requirements for an internal pressure of 30 psig (200 kPa) using the proof test requirements of HG-501 or HG-502. However, no external pressure rating may be shown with the Code stamping unless Code requirements for external pressure are met (see HG-503).

(2) designed and constructed as a vacuum vessel for an external pressure of 15 psia (100 kPa) using the proof test requirements of HG-503.

5-400 WELDING

(a) Joint Efficiency. No factor has to be used for parts designed for external pressure ($\Sigma = 1$). For the furnace joint, efficiencies shall be in accordance with HW-702.

(b) Corner or tee joints shall be in accordance with HW-701.3.

(c) Attachment welds shall be in accordance with HW-731.

(d) Welding Qualifications shall be in accordance with ASME Section IX.

5-500 ALTERNATIVE TO HYDROTEST

A helium leak test, conducted at the maximum vacuum to which the boiler will be exposed, may be used in lieu of the hydrostatic test requirements specified in HG-510. This test shall be witnessed by the authorized inspector. The test shall be conducted in accordance with Section V, Article 10, Appendix IV or V. Maximum acceptable leakage rate shall be as follows:

Appendix	Maximum Acceptable Leakage Rate (std cm^3/sec)
IV — Detector Probe	1×10^{-4}
V — Tracer Probe	1×10^{-5}
V — Hood	1×10^{-6}

5-600 INSTRUMENTS, FITTINGS, AND CONTROLS

Vacuum boilers shall be provided with instruments, fittings, and controls in accordance with Articles 6 and 7 of Part HG, but they are exempt from the following requirements if pressure and temperature controls are provided as described in (a), (b), and (c) below:

Paragraph	Title
HG-603	Gauge Glass
HG-604	Water Column
HG-605	Pressure Control (second control only)
HG-606	Low Water Cut-Off
HG-703.2	Return Pipe Connection
HG-705	Feedwater Connection
HG-715	Blowoff and Drain Valves

These exemptions are applicable only when the following devices are installed:

(a) Pressure Control. A pressure control that interrupts the burner operation in response to boiler pressure, and is set at 2.5 psig vacuum (12.2 psia) (17 kPa).

(b) Temperature Control. Two temperature controls responsive to boiler temperature that can interrupt burner operation, one shall operate at a temperature below 210°F (99°C), and the other shall prevent the temperature from exceeding 210°F (99°C) with no automatic recycle. The use of a fusible plug to perform the second of these two functions is permissible.

(c) Safety Valve. A safety valve without a test lever, set at 7.1 psig (22 psia) (49 kPa gage) maximum pressure and sized in accordance with HG-400.

5-700 INSPECTION OPENINGS

Heat exchanger coil openings may be used to satisfy the requirements for inspection and access.

MANDATORY APPENDIX 6
STANDARD UNITS FOR USE IN EQUATIONS

TABLE 6-1
STANDARD UNITS FOR USE IN EQUATIONS

Quantity	U.S. Customary Units	SI Units
Linear dimensions (e.g., length, height, thickness, radius, diameter)	inches (in.)	millimeters (mm)
Area	square inches (in.^{2})	square millimeters (mm^2)
Volume	cubic inches (in.^{3})	cubic millimeters (mm^3)
Section modulus	cubic inches (in.^{3})	cubic millimeters (mm^3)
Moment of inertia of section	inches^4 (in.^{4})	millimeters^4 (mm^4)
Mass (weight)	pounds mass (lbm)	kilograms (kg)
Force (load)	pounds force (lbf)	newtons (N)
Bending moment	inch-pounds (in.-lb)	newton-millimeters (N·mm)
Pressure, stress, stress intensity, and modulus of elasticity	pounds per square inch (psi)	megapascals (MPa)
Energy (e.g., Charpy impact values)	foot-pounds (ft-lb)	joules (J)
Temperature	degrees Fahrenheit (°F)	degrees Celsius (°C)
Absolute temperature	Rankine (R)	kelvin (K)
Fracture toughness	ksi square root inches (ksi$\sqrt{\text{in.}}$)	MPa square root meters (MPa$\sqrt{\text{m}}$)
Angle	degrees or radians	degrees or radians
Boiler capacity	Btu/hr	watts (W)

APPENDICES

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX B
METHOD OF CHECKING SAFETY VALVE AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVE CAPACITY BY MEASURING MAXIMUM AMOUNT OF FUEL THAT CAN BE BURNED

B-100 PROCEDURE

The maximum quantity of fuel C that can be burned per hour at the time of maximum forcing is determined by a test. The maximum number of heat units per hour, or CH, is then determined, using the values of H given in B-102. The weight of steam generated per hour is found by the formula:

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$W = \frac{C \times H \times 0.75}{1{,}000}$$

(SI Units)

$$W = \frac{C \times H \times 0.75}{2\ 326}$$

where

C = total weight or volume of fuel burned/hr at time of maximum forcing, lb or ft^3

H = heat of combustion of fuel, Btu/lb or Btu/ft^3 (see B-102)

W = weight of steam generated/hr, lb

The sum of the safety valve capacities marked on the valves shall be equal to or greater than W.

B-101 EXAMPLES

Example 1. A boiler at the time of maximum forcing uses 2,150 lb of Illinois coal/hr of 12,100 Btu/lb.

$$C \times H = 2{,}150 \times 12{,}100 = 26{,}015{,}000$$

$$W = (C \times H \times 0.75) \div 1{,}000 = 19{,}511$$

Example 2. Wood shavings of heat of combustion of 6,400 Btu/lb are burned under a boiler at the maximum rate of 2,000 lb/hr.

$$C \times H = 2{,}000 \times 6{,}400 = 12{,}800{,}000$$

$$W = (C \times H \times 0.75) \div 1{,}000 = 9{,}600$$

Example 3. An oil-fired boiler at maximum forcing uses 1,000 lb of crude oil (Texas)/hr.

$$C \times H = 1{,}000 \times 18{,}500 = 18{,}500{,}000$$

$$W = (C \times H \times 0.75) \div 1{,}000 = 13{,}875$$

Example 4. A boiler fired with natural gas consumes 3,000 ft^3/hr.

$$C \times H = 3{,}000 \times 960 = 2{,}880{,}000$$

$$W = (C \times H \times 0.75) \div 1{,}000 = 2{,}160$$

B-102 HEATS OF COMBUSTION OF FUELS

For the purpose of checking the safety valve capacity as described in B-100, the following values of heats of combustion of various fuels may be used:

Material	H = Btu/lb
Semibituminous coal	14,500
Anthracite	13,700
Screenings	12,500
Coke	13,500
Wood, hard or soft, kiln dried	7,700
Wood, hard or soft, air dried	6,200
Wood shavings	6,400
Peat, air dried, 25% moisture	7,500
Lignite	10,000
Kerosene	20,000
Petroleum, crude oil, Pennsylvania	20,700
Petroleum, crude oil, Texas	18,500

Material	H = Btu/ft^3
Natural gas	960
Blast-furnace gas	100
Producer gas	150
Water gas, uncarbureted	290

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX C EXAMPLES OF METHOD OF CALCULATING A WELDED RING REINFORCED FURNACE

C-100 FOR A STEAM OR HOT WATER BOILER

(a) Design Data [HG-300(a)]. 30 psi pressure (250°F); 36 in. (D_o) O.D.; 15 in. (L) center-to-center distance of reinforcing rings. Material is SA-285-C.

Use formulas from HG-312 where

D_o = outside diameter of furnace, in.
H_r = height of stiffening ring, in.
L = center-to-center distance between two adjacent stiffening rings, in.
P = design pressure, psi (30 psi min.) (per HG-300)
T_r = thickness of stiffening ring, in.
t = wall thickness of furnace, in.

(b) Selection of t and L (First Trial). Assume
$t = \frac{1}{4}$ in. and $L = 15$ in.
$L/D_o = 15/36 = 0.417$, $D_o/t = 36/0.25 = 144$
Temperature: 500°F [see HG-312.1(b)]
Factor $A = 0.0025$ (from Fig. G, Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D)
Factor $B = 12{,}000$ (from Fig. CS-2, Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D)

$$P_a = \frac{B}{D_o/t} = \frac{12{,}000}{144} = 83 \text{ psi}$$

(c) Selection of T_r and H_r (First Trial) [HG-312.4(b)]. Assume

$$T_r = \tfrac{5}{16} \text{ in. and } H_r = 1.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$I = \frac{0.3125 \times 1.5^3}{12} = 0.0879 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$A_s = 0.3125 \times 1.5 = 0.469 \text{ in.}^2$$

(d) Determination of I_s (First Trial)

$$\text{Factor } B = \frac{PD_o}{t + \frac{A_s}{L}} = \frac{30 \times 36}{0.25 + \frac{0.469}{15}} = 3{,}840$$

From Fig. CS-2,

$$\text{Factor } A = 0.00028$$

$$I_s = \frac{D_o^2 L \left(t + \frac{A_s}{L}\right) A}{14}$$

$$= \frac{36^2 \times 15 \left(0.25 + \frac{0.469}{15}\right) 0.00028}{14}$$

$$= 0.109 \text{ in.}^4$$

Since I_s is greater than I (0.0879 in.^{4}), the assumed reinforcing ring is not acceptable. (A ring with a greater I must be selected or L must be reduced.)

(e) Selection of T_r and H_r (Second Trial). Assume

$$T_r = 0.3125 \text{ in.}, H_r = 2.5 \text{ in., and } L = 15 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{H_r}{T_r} = \frac{2.5}{0.3125} = 8.0$$

$$I = \frac{0.3125 \times 2.5^3}{12} = 0.407 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$A_s = 0.3125 \times 2.5 = 0.781 \text{ in.}^2$$

(f) Determination of I_s (Second Trial)

$$\text{Factor } B = \frac{30 \times 36}{0.25 + \frac{0.781}{15}} = 3{,}575$$

From Fig. CS-2,

$$\text{Factor } A = 0.00026$$

$$I_s = \frac{36^2 \times 15 \left(0.25 + \frac{0.781}{15}\right) 0.00026}{14}$$

$$= 0.109 \text{ in.}^4$$

Since I (0.407 in.^{4}) is greater than I_s, the assumed reinforcing ring is acceptable.

C-101 FOR A HOT WATER BOILER

(a) Design Data. 100 psi working pressure (250°F); 30 in. (D_o) O.D.; 30 in. (L) center-to-center distance of reinforcing rings. Material is SA-285-C.

Use formulas from HG-312 and same notation as in C-100(a).

(b) Selection of t and L (First Trial). Assume

$t = \frac{1}{2}$ in. and $L = 30$ in.

$L/D_o = 30/30 = 1$ and $D_o/t = 30/0.500 = 60$

Temperature: 500°F [see HG-312.1(b)]

Factor $A = 0.003$ (from Fig. G)

Factor $B = 12{,}300$ (from Fig. CS-2)

$$P_a = \frac{B}{D_o/t} = \frac{12{,}300}{60} = 205 \text{ psi}$$

(c) Selection of T_r and H_r (First Trial). Assume

$$T_r = \tfrac{3}{8} \text{ in. and } H_r = 2.25 \text{ in.}$$

$$I = \frac{0.375 \times 2.25^3}{12} = 0.356 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$A_s = 0.375 \times 2.25 = 0.843 \text{ in.}^2$$

(d) Determination of I_s (First Trial)

$$\text{Factor } B = \frac{PD_o}{t + \frac{A_s}{L}}$$

$$= \frac{100 \times 30}{0.500 + \frac{0.843}{30}}$$

$$= 5{,}681$$

From Fig. CS-2,

$$\text{Factor } A = 0.00042$$

$$I_s = \frac{D_o^2 L \left(t + \frac{A_s}{L}\right) A}{14}$$

$$= \frac{30^2 \times 30 \left(0.50 + \frac{0.843}{30}\right)(0.00042)}{14}$$

$$= 0.428 \text{ in.}^4$$

Since I_s is greater than I (0.356 in.^{4}), the assumed reinforcing ring is not acceptable. (A ring with a greater I must be selected or L must be reduced.)

(e) Selection of L (Second Trial). Assume

$$L = 22 \text{ in., } T_r = \tfrac{3}{8} \text{ in., and } H = 2.25 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{H_r}{T_r} = \frac{2.25}{0.375} = 6.0$$

$$L/D_o = \frac{22}{30} = 0.734$$

$$D_o/t = \frac{30}{0.500} = 60$$

(f) Determination of I_s (Second Trial). From Fig. CS-2,

Factor $B = 13{,}250$

$$P_a = 13{,}250/60 = 221 \text{ psi}$$

$$I = 0.356 \text{ in.}^4 \text{ (as above)}$$

$$A_s = 0.843 \text{ in.}^2 \text{ (as above)}$$

$$\text{Factor } B = \frac{100 \times 30}{0.500 + \frac{0.843}{22}} = 5{,}573$$

From Fig. CS-2,

$$\text{Factor } A = 0.00041$$

$$I_s = \frac{30^2 \times 22\ (0.500 + 0.843/22)\ 0.00041}{14}$$

$$= 0.312 \text{ in.}^4$$

Since I_s is less than I (0.356 in.^{4}), the assumed reinforcing ring is acceptable.

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX D EXAMPLES OF METHODS OF COMPUTATION OF OPENINGS IN BOILER SHELLS

D-100 PAD REINFORCED OPENING

(a) Design Data. A boiler shell has a 6 in. connection as shown in Fig. D-100. The shell has an inside diameter of 60 in., a thickness of $\frac{9}{16}$ in. and a working pressure of 160 psi. The shell and pad material are in accordance with SA-285 Grade C.

(b) Wall Thickness Required (See HG-301)

$$t_r = \frac{P \times R}{S \times E - 0.6P}$$

$$= \frac{160 \times 30}{11{,}000 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 160} = 0.440 \text{ in.}$$

(c) Size of Welds Required (See HW-731)

$$\text{Inner fillet weld} = 1.41 \times 0.7 \times t_r = w_1$$

$$w_1 = 1.41 \times 0.7 \times 0.440 = 0.434 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Outer fillet weld} = 1.41 \times 0.5 \times t_r = w_2$$

$$w_2 = 1.41 \times 0.5 \times 0.440 = 0.310 \text{ in.}$$

A $\frac{1}{2}$ in. inner fillet weld and a $\frac{7}{16}$ in. outer fillet weld meet these minimum requirements.

(d) Area of Reinforcement Required (See HG-321)

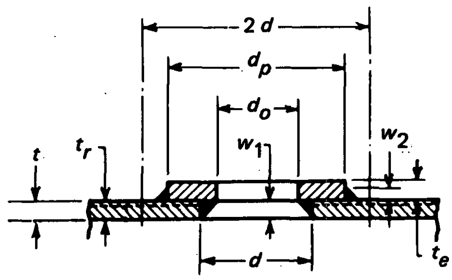
$$A = d \times t_r \times F$$

$$= 7.50 \times 0.440 \times 1.0 = 3.300 \text{ in.}^2$$

(e) Area of Reinforcement Provided (See HG-326)

$$A_1 = (E_1 t - F t_r)d$$
$$= (1.0 \times 0.563 - 1.0 \times 0.440)\ 7.5 \qquad = 0.922 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$A_2 = t_e(d_p - d_o)$$
$$= 0.437(12.50 - 6.00) \qquad = 2.841 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$A_3 = 2 \times \tfrac{1}{2} \times w_1{}^2 + 2 \times \tfrac{1}{2} \times w_2{}^2$$

FIG. D-100 COMPUTATION OF TYPICAL PAD REINFORCEMENT



$$= 2 \times \tfrac{1}{2} \times 0.500^2 + 2 \times \tfrac{1}{2} \times 0.437^2 \qquad = 0.441 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{Total area provided} = 4.204 \text{ in.}^2$$

(f) Load to Be Carried by Welds (See HG-327.2)

$$W = (d \times t_r - A_1) \times S$$

$$= (7.50 \times 0.440 - 0.922) \times 11{,}000 = 26{,}160 \text{ lb}$$

(g) Unit Stresses (See HW-730.2)

$$\text{Shear in fillet weld} = 0.49 \times 11{,}000$$

$$= 5{,}390 \text{ psi} = S_s$$

(h) Strength of Connection Elements

(1) Inner Weld w_1 in Shear

$$\frac{\pi}{2} d \times w_1 \times S_s = 1.57 \times 7.50 \times 0.500 \times 5{,}390$$

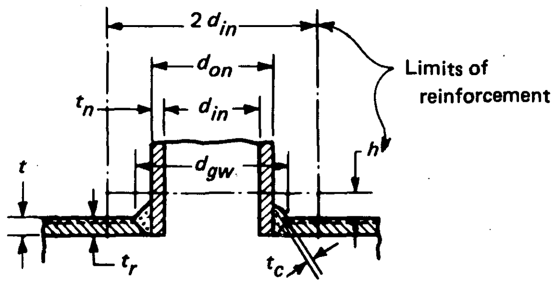
$$= 31{,}750 \text{ lb}$$

(2) Outer Weld w_2 in Shear

$$\frac{\pi}{2} d_p \times w_2 \times S_s = 1.57 \times 12.50 \times 0.437 \times 5{,}390$$

$$= 46{,}200 \text{ lb}$$

FIG. D-101 COMPUTATION OF A TYPICAL NOZZLE FITTING



D-101 NOZZLE REINFORCED OPENING

(a) Design Data. A 4 in. SA-53 schedule 80 pipe is welded into a shell as shown in Fig. D-101. The shell has an inside diameter of 36 in., a thickness of $^7\!/_{16}$ in., and a working pressure of 160 psi. The shell material is in accordance with SA-285 Grade C.

(b) Wall Thickness Required (See HG-301)

$$t_r = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$= \frac{160 \times 18}{11{,}000 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 160} = 0.264 \text{ in.}$$

(c) Nozzle Thickness Required

$$t_{rn} = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$= \frac{160 \times 1.913}{9{,}600 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 160} = 0.032 \text{ in.}$$

(d) Size Weld Required (See HW-731)

$$t_c = t_{\min} \times 0.7$$

$$= 0.337 \times 0.7 = 0.236 \text{ in.}$$

(e) Area of Reinforcement Required (See HG-321)

$$A = dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF\left(1 - \frac{S_n}{S_v}\right)$$

$$= 3.826 \times 0.264 \times 1.0$$

$$+ 2\,(0.337)(0.264)(1.0)\left(1 - \frac{9{,}600}{11{,}000}\right)$$

$$= 1.033 \text{ in.}^2$$

(f) Area of Reinforcement Provided (See HG-326)

$$A_1 = (E_1t - Ft_r)d - 2t_n\,(Et - Ft_r)\left(1 - \frac{S_n}{S_v}\right)$$

$$= (1.0 \times 0.438 - 1.0 \times 0.264)\ 3.826$$

$$- 2.0 \times 0.337\ (1.0 \times 0.438 - 1.0 \times 0.264)(0.127)$$

$$= 0.651 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$A_2 = (t_n - t_{rn})\,(5t_n + 2t_e)\left(\frac{S_n}{S_v}\right)$$

$$= (0.337 - 0.032)\,(5.0 \times 0.337 + 2.0 \times 0)(0.873)$$

$$= 0.449 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$A_3 = \text{leg}^2$$

$$= 0.337 \times 0.337 \qquad = \underline{0.114 \text{ in.}^2}$$

$$A_T = \text{total reinforcement} \qquad = 1.214 \text{ in.}^2$$

$A_T > A$ (opening is reinforced)

(g) Load to Be Carried by the Welds (See HG-327.2)

$$W = [(d_{on} \times t_r) - (2d_{in} - d_{on})(t - t_r)]\ S(\text{shell})$$

$$= [(4.50 \times 0.264) - (2.0 \times 3.826 - 4.50)$$

$$\times (0.437 - 0.264)]\ 11{,}000$$

$$= 7{,}035 \text{ lb}$$

(h) Unit Stresses (See HW-730.2)

Shear in fillet weld $= 0.49 \times 11{,}000$

$= 5{,}390$ psi $= S_s$

Tension in groove weld $= 0.74 \times 11{,}000$

$= 8{,}140$ psi $= S_t$

Shear in nozzle wall $= 0.70 \times 11{,}000$

$= 7{,}700$ psi $= S_n$

(i) Strength of Connection Elements (See HW-730.1)

(1) Fillet Weld in Shear

$$\frac{\pi}{2} \times d_{on} \times \text{weld leg} \times S_s = 1.57 \times 4.5 \times 0.337 \times 5{,}390$$

$$= 12{,}833 \text{ lb}$$

(2) Groove Weld in Tension

$$\frac{\pi}{2} \times d_{on} \times t \times S_t = 1.57 \times 4.5 \times 0.437 \times 8{,}140$$

$$= 25{,}100 \text{ lb}$$

(3) Nozzle Wall Shear

$$\frac{\pi}{2} \times \text{mean nozzle diam.} \times t_n \times S_n$$

$$= 1.571 \times 4.163 \times 0.337 \times 7{,}700$$

$$= 16{,}971 \text{ lb}$$

Possible paths of failure are

(a) through (1) and (2) above with a strength of 37,933 lb

(b) through (1) and (3) above with a strength of 29,804 lb

Both paths are stronger than the required strength of 7,035 lb.

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX E
TERMINOLOGY

E-100 TERMS RELATING TO DESIGN

action, popping, or pop: the action of a safety or safety relief valve when it opens under steam pressure. The disk of the valve is designed so that the force of the steam lifting the disk is increased when the disk is lifted slightly off its seat. The increase in force accelerates the rising action of the disk to the wide open position at or near the opening pressure.

blowdown: the difference between the opening and closing pressures of a safety or safety relief valve.

boiler, automatically fired: a boiler equipped with a means of introducing heat or of causing fuel, whether solid, liquid, gaseous, or electric, to be introduced into the boiler or boiler furnace, the means being so regulated by the rate of flow, the generating pressure, or temperature of the boiler fluid or of a vessel or space being heated as to maintain a determined, desired condition within a designated tolerance.

boiler, electric, resistance heating element type: electric boilers of the resistance heating element type are either:

(a) of a design where the electric resistance element is directly attached to the external surface of the pressure vessel; or

(b) an immersed type where the electric resistance element is inserted through an opening in the pressure vessel so that the element is in direct contact with the water.

boiler, horizontal-return tubular: a firetube boiler consisting of a cylindrical shell, with tubes inside the shell attached to both end closures. The products of combustion pass under the bottom half of the shell and return through the tubes.

boiler, hot water heating: a boiler designed to heat water for circulation through an external space heating system.

boiler, hot water supply: a boiler used to heat water for purposes other than space heating.

boiler, modular: a steam or hot-water heating assembly consisting of a grouping of individual boilers called modules, intended to be installed as a unit, with a single inlet and a single outlet. Modules may be under one jacket or may be individually jacketed.

boiler, steam heating: a boiler designed to convert water into steam that is supplied to an external space heating system.

boiler, vacuum: a factory-sealed steam boiler that is operated below atmospheric pressure.

bottom blowoff valve: a valve or cock located in the bottom blowoff connection of a boiler that, when opened, permits free passage of scale and sediment during the blowoff operation.

column, fluid relief: that piping, connected to the top of a hot water heating boiler, which is provided for the thermal expansion of the water. It will connect to either an open or a closed expansion tank.

drain valve: a valve or cock located in a boiler connection that, when opened, will drain the lowest water space practicable.

electric boiler, submerged electrode type: a submerged electrode type electric boiler incorporates a design wherein two or more metallic electrodes are directly suspended in the boiler water. When a source of electric power is connected to the electrodes, current will flow between the electrodes and through the water, thus raising the temperature of the water to produce steam.

feedwater: water introduced into a boiler during operation. includes makeup and return condensate or return water.

flue: passage through which gases pass from the combustion chamber or furnace to the venting system.

furnace: that part of a boiler in which combustion of fuel takes place or in which primary furnace gases are conveyed.

gases, primary furnace: gases in a zone where the anticipated temperature of the gas exceeds 850°F (450°C).

joints, swing: threaded, flanged, welded, or brazed pipe and fittings so arranged that the piping system that they comprise, when connected to a boiler, can expand and contract without imposing excessive force on it.

makeup water: water introduced into the boiler to replace that lost or removed from the system.

pressure, accumulation test: that steam pressure at which the capacity of a safety, safety relief, or a relief valve is determined. It is $33\frac{1}{3}\%$ over the steam safety valve set pressure and 10% over the safety relief valve set pressure.

pressure, design: the pressure used in the design of a boiler for the purpose of calculating the minimum permissible thickness or physical characteristics of the different parts of the boiler.

pressure, maximum allowable working: the maximum gage pressure permissible in a completed boiler. The MAWP of the completed boiler shall be less than or equal to the lowest design pressure determined for any of its parts. This pressure is based upon either proof tests or calculations for every pressure part of the boiler using nominal thickness exclusive of allowances for corrosion and thickness required for loadings other than pressure.

pressure, operating: the pressure of a boiler at which it normally operates. It shall not exceed the maximum allowable working pressure and it is usually kept at a suitable level below the setting of the pressure relieving devices to prevent their frequent opening.

rated, officially: a safety or safety relief valve for use on a heating boiler that has been capacity rated in accordance with HG-402.

siphon: a bent pipe or tube, between a steam pressure gage and the steam connection on a boiler, so fabricated that it contains a water seal that prevents steam entering the Bourdon tube of the gage.

stress, maximum allowable: the maximum unit stress permitted in a given material used under these rules.

surface, heating, square feet of: that area of the boiler surface exposed to the products of combustion. In computing the heating surface for the purpose of determining the safety or relief valve requirements, only the tubes, fireboxes, shells, tubesheets, and the projected area of the headers need be considered, except that for vertical firetube boilers only that portion of the tube surface up to the middle point of the gage glass is to be computed.

thickness, required: the minimum thickness determined by the formulas in this Code.

tube, fire: a hollow cylinder used for the conveyance of gases, flame, or hot air.

tube, water: a hollow cylinder used for the conveyance of liquids.

valve, safety: an automatic pressure relieving device actuated by the static pressure upstream of the valve and characterized by full-opening pop action. It is used for gas or vapor service.

valve, safety, lift of: the movement of the disk off the seat of a safety, safety relief, or relief valve when the valve is opened. It normally refers to the amount of movement of the disk off the seat when the valve is discharging at rated pressure.

valve, safety relief: an automatic pressure relieving device actuated by the pressure upstream of the valve and characterized by opening pop action with further increase in lift with an increase in pressure over popping pressure.

valve, temperature and pressure safety relief: a safety relief valve that also incorporates a thermal sensing element that is actuated by an upstream water temperature of 210°F (99°C) or less.

water heater: a vessel in which potable water is heated by the combustion of fuel, by electricity, or by any other source, and withdrawn for external use.

water heater, lined: a water heater with a corrosion resistant lining designed to heat potable water.

water heater, unlined: a water heater made from corrosion resistant materials designed to heat potable water.

wet-bottom boiler: any type of boiler that has a stayed or self-supporting, partially or fully water-cooled, shell or furnace bottom.

E-101 TERMS RELATING TO WELDING

arc stud welding: an arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an arc drawn between a metal stud, or similar part, until the surfaces to be joined are properly heated, when they are brought together under pressure. Partial shielding may be obtained by the use of a ceramic ferrule surrounding the stud. Shielding gas or flux may or may not be used.

arc welding: a group of welding processes wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an electric arc or arcs, with or without the application of pressure and with or without the use of filler metal.

atomic hydrogen welding: an arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an electric arc maintained between two metal electrodes in an atmosphere of hydrogen. Shielding is obtained from the hydrogen. Pressure may or may not be used and filler metal may or may not be used.

automatic welding: welding with equipment that performs the entire welding operation without constant observation and adjustment of the controls by an operator. The equipment may or may not perform the loading and unloading of the work.

backing: material (metal, weld metal, asbestos, carbon, granular flux, etc.) backing up the joint during welding to facilitate obtaining a sound weld at the root.

base metal: the metal to be welded or cut.

brazing: a group of metal-joining processes wherein coalescence is produced by heating to suitable temperatures above 800°F (425°C) and by using a nonferrous filler metal, having a melting point below that of the base metals. The filler metal is distributed between the closely fitted surfaces of the joint by capillary attraction.

butt joint: a joint between two members lying approximately in the same plane.

corner joint: a joint between two members located approximately at right angles to each other in the form of an L.

double-welded butt joint: a butt joint welded from both sides.

double-welded lap joint: a lap joint in which the overlapped edges of the members to be joined are welded along the edges of both members.

edge joint: a joint between the edges of two or more parallel or nearly parallel members.

filler metal: metal to be added in making a weld.

fillet weld: a weld of approximately triangular cross section joining two surfaces approximately at right angles to each other in a lap joint, tee joint, or corner joint.

flux cored arc welding (FCAW): a gas metal arc welding process that produces coalescence of metals by heating them with an arc between a continuous filler metal (consumable) electrode and the work. Shielding is provided by a flux contained within the tubular electrode. Additional shielding may or may not be obtained from an externally supplied gas or gas mixture.

flux cored arc welding-electrogas (FCAW-EG): a variation of the flux cored arc welding process in which molding shoes are used to confine the molten weld metal for vertical position welding. Additional shielding may or may not be obtained from an externally supplied gas or gas mixture.

flux cored electrode: a composite filler metal electrode consisting of a metal tube or other hollow configuration containing ingredients to provide such functions as shielding atmosphere, deoxidation, arc stabilization, and slag formation. Alloying materials may be included in the core. External shielding may or may not be used.

full fillet weld: a fillet weld whose size is equal to the thickness of the thinner member joined.

gas metal arc welding-electrogas (GMAW-EG): a variation of the gas metal arc welding process using molding shoes to confine the molten weld metal for vertical position welding.

gas tungsten-arc welding: an arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an electric arc between a single tungsten (nonconsumable) electrode and the work. Shielding is obtained from a gas or gas mixture (which may contain an inert gas). Pressure may or may not be used. Filler metal may or may not be used. (This process has sometimes been called TIG Welding.)

gas welding: a group of welding processes wherein coalescence is produced by heating with a gas flame or flames with or without the application of pressure, and with or without the use of filler metal.

joint efficiency: the efficiency of a welded joint is expressed as a numerical (decimal) quantity and is used in the design of a joint as a multiplier of the appropriate allowable stress taken from Tables HF-300.1 and HF-300.2.

joint penetration: the minimum depth a groove weld extends from its face into a joint, exclusive of reinforcement.

lap joint: a joint between two overlapping members.

machine welding: welding with equipment that performs the welding operation under the observation and control of an operator. The equipment may or may not perform the loading and unloading of the work.

manual welding: welding wherein the entire welding operation is performed and controlled by hand.

oxyacetylene welding: a gas welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with a gas flame or flames obtained from the combustion of acetylene with oxygen, with or without the application of pressure and with or without the use of filler metal.

oxygen cutting: a group of cutting processes wherein the severing of metals is affected by means of the chemical reaction of oxygen with the base metal at elevated temperatures. In the case of oxidation resistant metals, the reaction is facilitated by use of a flux or metal powder.

oxyhydrogen welding: a gas welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with a gas flame or flames obtained from the combustion of hydrogen with oxygen, without the application of pressure and with or without the use of filler metal.

plasma arc welding: a gas tungsten arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with a constricted arc between an electrode and workpiece (transferred arc) or the electrode and the constricting nozzle (nontransferred arc). Shielding is obtained from hot ionized gas issuing from the orifice that may be supplemented by an auxiliary source of shielding gas. Shielding gas may be an inert gas or a mixture of gases, pressure may or may not be used, and filler metal may or may not be used.

pressure gas welding: a gas welding process wherein coalescence is produced simultaneously over the entire area of abutting surfaces, by heating with a gas flame or flames obtained from combustion of hydrogen with oxygen, without the application of pressure, and with or without the use of filler metal.

pressure welding: any welding process or method wherein pressure is used to complete the weld.

projection welding (PW): a resistance welding process that produces coalesence by the heat obtained from the resistance of the flow of welding current. The resulting welds are localized at predetermined points by projections, embossments, or intersections. The metals to be joined lap over each other.

reinforcement of weld: weld metal on the face of a groove weld in excess of the metal necessary for the specified weld size.

resistance seam welding (RSEW): a resistance welding process that produces coalesence of overlapped parts at the faying surfaces progessively along the length of a joint. The weld may be made with overlapping nuggets, a continuous weld nugget, or by forging the joint as it is heated to the welding temperature by resistance to the flow of welding current.

resistance spot welding (RSW): a resistance welding process that produces coalesence at the faying surfaces of overlapped parts by the heat obtained from resistance of the work to the flow of welding current in a circuit of which the work is a part, and by the application of pressure.

resistance stud welding: a resistance welding process wherein coalescence is produced by the heat obtained from resistance to electric current at the interface between the stud and the work piece, until the surfaces to be joined are properly heated, when they are brought together under pressure.

resistance welding (RW): a group of welding processes that produces coalescence of overlapping faying surfaces with the heat obtained from resistance of the work to the flow of current in a circuit of which the work is a part, and by the application of pressure.

seal weld: any weld used primarily to obtain tightness.

semiautomatic arc welding: arc welding with equipment that controls only the filler metal feed. The advance of the welding is manually controlled.

shielded metal-arc welding: an arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an electric arc between a covered metal electrode and the work. Shielding is obtained from decomposition of the electrode covering. Pressure is not used and filler metal is obtained from the electrode.

single-welded butt joints: a butt joint welded from one side only.

single-welded lap joint: a lap joint in which the overlapped edges of the members to be joined are welded along the edge of one member.

size of weld

(a) groove weld: the joint penetration (depth of chamfering plus the root penetration when specified).

(b) fillet weld

(1) for equal-leg fillet welds: the leg length of the largest isosceles right triangle that can be inscribed within the fillet weld cross section.

(2) for unequal-leg fillet welds: the leg lengths of the largest right triangle that can be inscribed within the fillet weld cross section.

submerged arc welding: an arc welding process wherein coalescence is produced by heating with an electric arc or arcs between a bare metal electrode or electrodes and the work. The welding is shielded by a blanket of granular, fusible material on the work. Pressure is not used and filler metal is obtained from the electrode and sometimes from a supplementary welding rod.

tee joint: a joint between two members located approximately at right angles to each other in the form of a T.

thermit welding: a group of welding processes wherein coalescence is produced by heating with superheated liquid metal and slag resulting from a chemical reaction between a metal oxide and aluminum, with or without the application of pressure. Filler metal, when used, is obtained from the liquid metal.

throat of a fillet weld

(a) theoretical: the distance from the beginning of the root of the joint perpendicular to the hypotenuse of the largest right triangle that can be inscribed within the fillet weld cross section.

(b) actual: the shortest distance from the root of a fillet weld to its face.

undercut: a groove melted into the base metal adjacent to the toe of a weld and left unfilled by weld metal.

weld: a localized coalescence of metal wherein coalescence is produced by heating to suitable temperatures, with or without the application of pressure and with or without the use of filler metal. The filler metal has a melting point approximately the same as the base metals.

weld metal: that portion of a weld that has been melted during welding.

welded joint: a union of two or more members produced by the application of a welding process.

welder: one who is capable of performing a manual or semiautomatic welding operation.

welding operator: one who operates machine or automatic welding equipment.

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX F
QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM

F-100 GENERAL

F-100.1 Quality Control System. The manufacturer or assembler shall have and maintain a quality control system that will establish that all Code requirements including material, design, fabrication, examination (by the manufacturer), and inspection (by the Authorized Inspector) for boilers and water heaters constructed primarily of wrought materials will be met. The Quality Control System of the "HV" Stamp holder shall include duties of a Certified Individual, as required by this Section.

Provided that Code requirements are suitably identified, the system may include provisions for satisfying any requirements by the manufacturer or user that exceed minimum Code requirements and may include provisions for quality control of non-Code work. In such systems, the manufacturer may make changes in parts of the system that do not affect the Code requirements without securing acceptance by the Authorized Inspector. Before implementation, revisions to quality control systems of manufacturers and assemblers of safety and safety relief valves shall have been found acceptable to the ASME Designee if such revisions affect Code requirements.

The system that the manufacturer uses to meet the requirements of this Section must be one suitable for his own circumstances. The necessary scope and detail of the system shall depend upon the complexity of the work performed and upon the size and complexity of the manufacturer's organization. A written description of the system the manufacturer will use to produce a Code item shall be available for review. Depending upon the circumstances, the description may be brief or voluminous.

The written description may contain information of a proprietary nature relating to the manufacturer's processes. Therefore, the Code does not require any distribution of this information, except for the Authorized Inspector or ASME Designee, as covered by F-202.10. It is intended that information learned about the quality control system in connection with evaluation will be treated as confidential and that all loaned descriptions will be returned to the manufacturer upon completion of the evaluation.

F-202 OUTLINE OF FEATURES TO BE INCLUDED IN THE WRITTEN DESCRIPTION OF THE QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM

The following is a guide to some of the features that should be covered in the written description of the quality control system and that is equally applicable to both shop and field work.

F-202.1 Authority and Responsibility. The authority and responsibility of those in charge of the quality control system shall be clearly established. Persons performing quality control functions shall have sufficient and well defined responsibility, the authority, and the organizational freedom to identify quality control problems and to initiate, recommend, and provide solutions.

F-202.2 Organization. An organization chart showing the relationship between management and engineering, purchasing, manufacturing, field assembling, inspection, and quality control, is required to reflect the actual organization. The purpose of this chart is to identify and associate the various organizational groups with the particular function for which they are responsible. The Code does not intend to encroach on the manufacturer's right to establish, and from time to time, alter whatever form of organization the manufacturer considers appropriate for its Code work.

F-202.3 Drawings, Design Calculations, and Specification Control. The manufacturer's or assembler's quality control system shall provide procedures that will insure that the latest applicable drawings, design calculations, specifications, and instructions required by the Code, as well as authorized changes, are used for manufacture, assembly, examination, inspection, and testing.

F-202.4 Material Control. The Manufacturer or assembler shall include a system of receiving control that requires verification that the material received conforms to order requirements and that the identification of the materials corresponds to the material certifications or material test reports. The system shall ensure that only the intended material is used in Code construction.

F-202.5 Examination and Inspection Program. The Manufacturer's quality control system shall describe the fabrication operations, including examinations, sufficiently to permit the Authorized Inspector to determine at what stages specific inspections are to be performed.

F-202.6 Correction of Nonconformities. There shall be a system agreed upon with the Authorized Inspector for correction of nonconformities. A nonconformity condition is a condition that does not comply with the applicable rules of this Section. Nonconformities must be corrected or eliminated in some way before the completed component can be considered to comply with this Section.

F-202.7 Welding or Brazing. The quality control system shall include provisions for indicating that welding or brazing conforms to requirements of Section IX as supplemented by this Section.

F-202.8 Calibration of Measurement and Test Equipment. The Manufacturer or assembler shall have a system for the calibration of examination, measuring, and testing of equipment used in fulfillment of requirements of this Section.

F-202.9 Sample Forms. The forms used in the quality control system and any detailed procedures for their use shall be available for review. The written description shall make necessary references to these forms.

F-202.10 Authorized Inspector

F-202.10.1 The Authorized Inspector is the ASME Code Inspector defined in HG-515.3.

F-202.10.2 The written description of the quality control system shall include reference to the Authorized Inspector.

F-202.10.2.1 The Manufacturer shall make available to the Authorized Inspector at the Manufacturer's plant a copy of the written description of the quality control system.

F-202.10.2.2 The Manufacturer's quality control system shall provide for the Authorized Inspector at the Manufacturer's plant to have access to all drawings, calculations, specifications, procedures, process sheets, repair procedures, records, test results, and any other documents as necessary for the Authorized Inspector to perform his duties in accordance with this Section. The Manufacturer may provide such access either to his own files of such documents or by providing copies to the Authorized Inspector.

F-202.11 Inspection During Manufacture of Safety and Safety Relief Valves. See HG-401.3.

F-202.12 Certifications. Methods other than written signature may be used for indicating certifications, authorizations, and approval where allowed and as described elsewhere in this section. Where other methods are employed, controls and safeguards shall be provided and described to ensure the integrity of the certification, authorization, and approval.

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX H
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND ADDRESSES

ANSI	American National Standards Institute 25 West 43rd Street, New York, NY 10036
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers 1791 Tullie Circle, NE, Atlanta, GA 30329
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials 100 Barr Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, PA 19428
CSA	CSA International 178 Rexdale Boulevard, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M9W 1R3; 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131
NEC	National Electric Code NFPA 70 National Fire Protection Association International 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269
NSFI	National Sanitation Foundation International 3475 Plymouth Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48113
UL	Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX I SPECIFICATIONS FOR TEST METHOD FOR WATER ABSORPTION OF PLASTICS

SD-570

[Identical to ASTM Specification D 570-81 (Reapproved 1988 except for the rounding off of the metric values)]

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers the determination of the relative rate of absorption of water by plastics when immersed. The test method is intended to apply to the testing of all types of plastics, including cast, hot-molded, and cold-molded resinous products, and both homogeneous and laminated plastics in rod and tube form and in sheets 0.13 mm (0.005 in.) or greater in thickness.

1.2 The values stated in SI units are to be regarded as the standard. The values stated in parentheses are for information purposes only.

1.3 This standard may involve hazardous materials, operations, and equipment. This standard does not purport to address all of the safety problems associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.

2. Referenced Document

2.1 *ASTM Standard:*

D 647 Design of Molds for Test Specimens of Plastic Molding Materials

3. Significance and Use

3.1 The test method for rate of water absorption has two chief functions: first, as a guide to the proportion of water absorbed by a material and consequently, in those cases where the relationships between moisture and electrical or mechanical properties, dimensions, or appearance have been determined, as a guide to the effects of exposure to water or humid conditions on such properties; and second, as a control test on the uniformity of a product. This second function is particularly applicable to sheet, rod, and tube arms when the test is made on the finished product.

3.2 Comparison of water absorption values of various plastics can be made on the basis of values obtained in accordance with 7.1 and 7.4.

3.3 The moisture content of a plastic is very intimately related to such properties as electrical insulation resistance, dielectric losses, mechanical strength, appearance, and dimensions. The effect upon these properties of change in moisture content due to water absorption depends largely on the type of exposure (by immersion in water or by exposure to high humidity), shape of the part, and inherent properties of the plastic. With nonhomogeneous materials, such as laminated forms, the rate of water absorption may be widely different through each edge and surface. Even for otherwise homogeneous materials, it may be slightly greater through cut edges than through molded surfaces. Consequently, attempts to correlate water absorption with the surface area must generally be limited to closely related materials and to similarly shaped specimens: For materials of widely varying density, relation between water-absorption values on a volume as well as a weight basis may need to be considered.

4. Apparatus

4.1 *Balance*— An analytical balance capable of reading 0.0001 g.

4.2 *Oven,* capable of maintaining uniform temperatures of 50 ± 3°C (122 ± 5.4°F) and of 105 to 110°C (221 to 230°F).

5. Test Specimen

5.1 The test specimen for molded plastics shall be in the form of a disk 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter and 3 mm

($\frac{1}{8}$ in.) in thickness (Note 1). Permissible variations in thickness are ±0.18 mm (±0.007 in.) for hot-molded and ±0.30 mm (±0.012 in.) for cold-molded or cast materials.

NOTE 1: The disk mold prescribed in the Molds for Disk Test Specimens Section of Practice D 647 is suitable for molding disk test specimens of thermosetting materials but not thermoplastic materials.

5.2 The test specimen for sheets shall be in the form of a bar 75 mm (3 in.) long by 25 mm (1 in.) wide by the thickness of the material. When comparison of absorption values with molded plastics is desired, specimens 3 mm ($\frac{1}{8}$ in.) thick should be used. Permissible variations in thickness shall be 0.20 mm (±0.008 in.) except for asbestos-fabric-base phenolic laminated materials or other materials which have greater standard commercial tolerances.

5.3 The test specimen for rods shall be 25 mm (1 in.) long for rods 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter or under, and 13 mm ($\frac{1}{2}$ in.) long for larger-diameter rods. The diameter of the specimen shall be the diameter of the finished rod.

5.4 The test specimen for tubes less than 75 mm (3 in.) in inside diameter shall be the full section of the tube and 25 mm (1 in.) long. For tubes 75 mm (3 in.) or more in inside diameter, a rectangular specimen shall be cut 75 mm (3 in.) in length in the circumferential direction of the tube and 25 mm (1 in.) in width lengthwise of the tube.

5.5 The test specimens for sheets, rods, and tubes shall be machined, sawed, or sheared from the sample so as to have smooth edges free from cracks. The cut edges shall be made smooth by finishing with No. 0 or finer sandpaper or emery cloth. Sawing, machining, and sandpapering operations shall be slow enough so that the material is not heated appreciably.

NOTE 2: If there is any oil on the surface of the specimen when received or as a result of machining operations, wash the specimen with a cloth wet with gasoline to remove oil, wipe with a dry cloth, and allow to stand in air for 2 h to permit evaporation of the gasoline. If gasoline attacks the plastic, use some suitable solvent or detergent that will evaporate within the 2-h period.

5.6 The dimensions listed in the following table for the various specimens shall be measured to the nearest 0.025 mm (0.001 in.). Dimensions not listed shall be measured within 0.8 mm (±$\frac{1}{32}$ in.).

Type of Specimen	Dimensions to be Measured to the Nearest 0.025 mm (0.001 in.)
Molded disk	thickness
Sheet	thickness
Rod	length and diameter
Tube	inside and outside diameter, and wall thickness

6. Conditioning

6.1 Three specimens shall be conditioned as follows:

6.1.1 Specimens of materials whose water-absorption value would be appreciably affected by temperatures in the neighborhood of 110°C (230°F), shall be dried in an oven for 24 h at 50 ± 3°C (122 ± 5.4°F), cooled in a desiccator, and immediately weighed to the nearest 0.001 g.

NOTE 3: If a static charge interferes with the weighing, lightly rub the surface of the specimens with a grounded conductor.

6.1.2 Specimens of materials, such as phenolic laminated plastics and other products whose water-absorption value has been shown not to be appreciably affected by temperatures up to 110°C (230°F), shall be dried in an oven for 1 h at 105 to 110°C (221 to 230°F).

6.1.3 When data for comparison with absorption values for other plastics are desired, the specimens shall be dried in an oven for 24 h at 50 ± 3°C (122 ± 5.4°F), cooled in a desiccator, and immediately weighed to the nearest 0.001 g.

7. Procedure

7.1 *24-h Immersion—* The conditioned specimens shall be placed in a container of distilled water maintained at a temperature of 23 ± 1°C (73.4 ± 1.8°F), and shall rest on edge and be entirely immersed. At the end of 24, +$\frac{1}{2}$, −0 h, the specimens shall be removed from the water one at a time, all surface water wiped off with a dry cloth, and weighed to the nearest 0.001 g immediately. If the specimen is $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) or less in thickness, it shall be put in a weighing bottle immediately after wiping and weighed in the bottle.

7.2 *2-h Immersion—* For all thicknesses of materials having a relatively high rate of absorption, and for thin specimens of other materials which may show a significant weight increase in 2 h, the specimens shall be tested as described in 7.1 except that the time of immersion shall be reduced to 120 ± 4 min.

7.3 *Repeated Immersion—* A specimen may be weighed to the nearest 0.001 g after 2-h immersion, replaced in the water, and weighed again after 24 h.

NOTE 4: In using this method the amount of water absorbed in 24 h may be less than it would have been had the immersion not been interrupted.

7.4 *Long-Term Immersion—* To determine the total water absorbed when substantially saturated, the conditioned specimens shall be tested as described in 7.1 except that at the end of 24 h they shall be removed from the water, wiped free of surface moisture with a dry cloth, weighed to the nearest 0.001 g immediately, and then replaced in the water. The weighings shall be repeated at the end of the first week and every two weeks thereafter until the increase in weight per two-week period, as shown by three consecutive weighings, averages less than 1% of the total increase in weight, or 5 mg, whichever is greater;

the specimen shall then be considered substantially saturated. The difference between the substantially saturated weight and the dry weight shall be considered as the water absorbed when substantially saturated.

7.5 *2-h Boiling Water Immersion—* The conditioned specimens shall be placed in a container of boiling distilled water, and shall be supported on edge and be entirely immersed. At the end of 120 ± 4 min, the specimens shall be removed from the water and cooled in distilled water maintained at room temperature. After 15 ± 1 min, the specimens shall be removed from the water, one at a time, all surface water removed with a dry cloth, and the specimens weighed to the nearest 0.001 g immediately. If the specimen is $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) or less in thickness, it shall be weighed in a weighing bottle.

7.6 *$\frac{1}{2}$-h Boiling Water Immersion—* For all thicknesses of materials having a relatively high rate of absorption, and for thin specimens of other materials which may show a significant weight increase in $\frac{1}{2}$ h the specimens shall be tested as described in 7.5, except that the time of immersion shall be reduced to 30 ± 1 min.

7.7 *Immersion at 120°F (50°C)—* The conditioned specimens shall be tested as described in 7.5, except that the time and temperature of immersion shall be 48 ± 1 h and 50 ± 1°C (122.0 ± 1.8°F), respectively, and cooling in water before weighing shall be omitted.

7.8 When data for comparison with absorption values for other plastics are desired, the 24-h immersion procedure described in 7.1 and the equilibrium value determined in 7.4 shall be used.

8. Reconditioning

8.1 When materials are known or suspected to contain any appreciable amount of water-soluble ingredients, the specimens, after immersion, shall be weighed, and then reconditioned for the same time and temperature as used in the original drying period. They shall then be cooled in a desiccator and immediately reweighed. If the reconditioned weight is lower than the conditioned weight, the difference shall be considered as water-soluble matter lost during the immersion test. For such materials, the water-absorption value shall be taken as the sum of the increase in weight on immersion and of the weight of the water-soluble matter.

9. Calculation and Report

9.1 The report shall include the values for each specimen and the average for the three specimens as follows:

9.1.1 Dimensions of the specimens before test, measured in accordance with 5.6, and reported to the nearest 0.001 in.,

9.1.2 Conditioning time and temperature,

9.1.3 Immersion procedure used,

9.1.4 Time of immersion (long-term immersion procedure only),

9.1.5 Percentage increase in weight during immersion, calculated to the nearest 0.01% as follows:

$$\text{Increase in weight, \%} = \frac{\text{wet wt} - \text{conditioned wt}}{\text{conditioned wt}} \times 100$$

9.1.6 Percentage of soluble matter lost during immersion, if determined, calculated to the nearest 0.01% as follows (Note 5):

$$\text{Soluble matter lost, \%} = \frac{\text{conditioned wt} - \text{reconditioned wt}}{\text{conditioned wt}} \times 100$$

NOTE 5: When the weight on reconditioning the specimen after immersion in water exceeds the conditioned weight prior to immersion, report "none" under 9.1.6.

9.1.7 The percentage of water absorbed, which is the sum of the values in 9.1.5 and 9.1.6, and

9.1.8 Any observations as to warping, cracking, or change in appearance of the specimens.

10. Precision and Bias

10.1 *Precision—* An interlaboratory test program was carried out using the procedure outlined in 7.1, involving three laboratories and three materials. Analysis of this data yields the following coefficients of variation (average of three replicates).

	Within Laboratories	Between Laboratories
Average absorption above 1% (2 materials)	2.33%	4.89%
Average absorption below 0.2% (1 material)	9.01%	16.63%

10.2 *Bias—* No justifiable statement on the bias of this test method can be made, since the true value of the property cannot be established by an accepted referee method.

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX K
GUIDE TO INFORMATION APPEARING ON CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORIZATION

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
①	a. The name of the Manufacturer or Assembler. b. The full street address, city, state or province, country, and zip code.
②	This section describes the scope and limitations, if any, on use of the Code symbol stamps, as illustrated below by some examples of scope statements. Field site Certificate of Authorization applies to items that are fabricated or assembled at a field site and is not intended to apply to items at any shop location.

H Code Symbol Stamp

1. Heating boilers, except cast iron, at the above location only.
2. Heating boilers, except cast iron, at the above location only. (This authorization includes multiple duplicate heating boilers.)
3. Heating boilers, except cast iron, at the above location. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)
4. Heating boilers, except cast iron, at the above location and field sites controlled by the above location.
5. Heating boilers, cast iron only, at the above location only. (Assembly)
6. Heating boilers, except cast iron at field sites controlled by the above location only.
7. Heating boilers, except cast iron, at the above location only. (This authorization includes multiple duplicate heating boilers and does not include welding or brazing.)
8. Heating boilers, cast iron only, at the above location only. (Foundry)
9. Heating boilers, cast iron only, at the above location only. (Foundry and Assembly)
10. Heating boilers, cast iron only, at the above location only. (Installation of nameplate only, does not include assembly and hydrostatic test.)

HLW Code Symbol Stamp

1. Potable water heaters at the above location only.
2. Potable water heaters at the above location only. (This authorization includes multiple duplicate potable water heaters.)
3. Potable water heaters at the above location and field sites controlled by the above location.
4. Potable water heaters at the above location only. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)
5. Potable water storage tanks at the above location only.
6. Potable water storage tanks at the above location only (This authorization includes multiple duplicate potable water storage tanks.)
7. Potable water storage tanks at the above location and field sites controlled by the above location.
8. Potable water storage tanks at the above location only. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)
9. Potable water heaters and potable water storage tanks at the above location only.

10. Potable water heaters and potable water storage tanks at the above location only. (This authorization includes multiple duplicate potable water heaters and potable water storage tanks.)
11. Potable water heaters and potable water storage tanks at the above location and field sites controlled by the above location.
12. Potable water heaters and potable water storage tanks at the above location only. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)

HV Code Symbol Stamp

1. Manufacturer of heating boiler safety valves and safety relief valves at the above location only.
2. Manufacturer of heating boiler safety valves and safety relief valves at the above location only. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)

③ The date authorization was granted by the Society to use the appropriate Code Symbol Stamp.

④ The date authorization to use the appropriate Code Symbol Stamp will expire.

⑤ A unique Certificate number assigned by the Society.

⑥ Code Symbol granted by the Society, i.e., H Heating Boilers; HLW Water Heaters; and HV Safety Valves.

⑦, ⑧ The signature of the current Chair of the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee and the Director of Accreditation.

FIG. K-1 SAMPLE CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORIZATION

SYMBOL ⑥

CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORIZATION

This certificate accredits the named company as authorized to use the indicated symbol of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) for the scope of activity shown below in accordance with the applicable rules of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. The use of the Code symbol and the authority granted by this Certificate of Authorization are subject to the provisions of the agreement set forth in the application. Any construction stamped with this symbol shall have been built strictly in accordance with the provisions of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

COMPANY ①

SCOPE ②

AUTHORIZED ③

EXPIRES ④

CERTIFICATE NUMBER ⑤

⑦

CHAIRMAN OF THE BOILER
AND PRESSURE VESSEL COMMITTEE

⑧

DIRECTOR, ASME ACCREDITATION
AND CERTIFICATION

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers

®

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX L
GUIDE TO MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FORMS

INTRODUCTION

The following pages are a guide for completing the Manufacturer's Data Report Forms. Forms and guides are keyed in the following manner:

(1) Circled numbers refer to the guide for required subject material.

1. Numbers without circles appearing in the guide material identify specific lines on the Manufacturer's Data Report Forms.

Any quantity to which units apply shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report with the chosen units.

Forms appearing in this section may be obtained from the ASME Order Department, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF SECTION IV MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FORMS

Any quantity to which units apply shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report with the chosen units.

Applies to Form									
H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	H-6	HLW-6	HLW-7	HLW-8	Note No.	Instruction:
X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	1	Name and address of manufacturer (i.e., maker of all components not covered by Partial Data Reports).
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	...	2	Name and address of purchaser and/or owner.
X	X	X	...	X	X	...	...	3	Name and address of location where unit is to be installed. If not known, so indicate (e.g., "not known — built for stock").
X	X	...	X	X	...	...	X	4	Show type or model of unit documented by this data report.
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	...	5	Identification of unit by applicable numbers. If intended for installation in Canada, indicate the Canadian design registration number and drawing number.
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	...	6	Year in which fabrication was completed in shop.
X	X	X	...	...	X	X	...	7	Date (year) of Section IV edition under which boiler or part was constructed.
X	X	X	...	...	X	X	...	8	Issue date of most recent addenda to Section IV under which boiler or part was constructed (e.g., "December 1997").
X	X	X	...	...	X	...	...	9	Code Case number, if applicable.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	10	Show quantity and inside dimensions. If more than two shells or drums are used, enter data in line 14.
X	X	X	...	...	X	X	X	11	Show the complete ASME material specification number and grade as listed in the appropriate stress allowance table in Section IV (e.g., "SA-285-B") Exception: A specification number for a material not identical to an ASME Specification may be shown only if such material has been approved for Section IV construction by an ASME interpretation case ruling and provided the applicable case number is also shown.
X	...	...	...	...	X	X	...	12	Indicate type of joint(s).
X	...	...	...	...	X	X	...	13	Show joint efficiency for welded joints.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	14	Show number of furnaces in boiler.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	15	For cylindrical furnaces of the Adamson, ring-reinforced, and combined types, show total length only.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	16	For stayed (firebox) type furnace, complete line 12 also.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	17	If threaded, show diameter at root of thread.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	18	Minimum cross-sectional area after deducting for telltale hole.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	19	Maximum allowable working pressure for the stayed area calculated according to the rules contained in Part HG of Section IV.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	20	Type of stay or brace (e.g., diagonal, gusset, girder, through, etc.).
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	21	Minimum cross-sectional area of the stay or brace multiplied by the number of stays or braces supporting the area under consideration.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	22	See applicable paragraphs and figures in Part HG of Section IV.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	23	List parts not covered elsewhere on the data report. If insufficient space, attach a supplementary sheet.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	24	Tabulate data for parts listed on line 14.
X	X	X	...	...	X	...	...	25	Show data for main and auxiliary inlets and outlets, nozzles, inspection openings, safety valve openings, drains, and blowoffs. This does not apply to small openings for water column, controls, vents, etc.
X	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	26	Maximum allowable working pressure.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	27	Show Section IV paragraph that applies to the weakest part of the unit as established by calculation or deformation test.
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	28	Boiler heating surface calculated in accordance with HG-403 of Section IV.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF SECTION IV MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FORMS (CONT'D)

Applies to Form									
H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	H-6	HLW-6	HLW-7	HLW-8	Note No.	Instruction:
X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	29	Hydrostatic pressure applied in accordance with HG-510 and witnessed by the Authorized Inspector.
X	X	...	...	...	X	X	...	30	To be completed when one or more components comprising the unit are furnished by others and certified by the applicable Partial Data Report(s).
X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	31	The manufacturer's ASME Certificate of Authorization number and date of expiration of said authorization.
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	X	32	This line is to be completed and signed by an authorized representative of the manufacturer.
X	X	X	...	...	X	X	X	33	This certificate is to be completed by the Authorized Inspection Agency representative who performs the in-shop inspection.
X	X	X	...	...	X	X	X	34	To determine what goes in this space, you should be guided by the following: National Board stamped boilers and pressure vessels: After "and state or province" in the certification blocks — if the Inspector has a valid Certificate of Competency for the state or province where the manufacturer's shop is located, insert the name of that state or province. If the manufacturer is located in a non-Code jurisdiction, insert the name of the state or province where the inspector took his original examination to obtain his National Board Commission, provided that Certificate of Competency is still valid. If not, show the name of the state or province where he has a valid Certificate of Competency authorizing him to make the shop inspection. *Boilers and pressure vessels stamped only ASME:* Follow the above procedure. However, in this case do not list any National Board Commission number after the inspector's signature at the bottom of the block.
X	X	...	...	...	X	...	...	35	Indicate the data items covered on the applicable form by line numbers.
X	X	...	...	...	X	...	...	36	Indicate by line numbers those items furnished by others and for which the applicable Partial Data Reports have been examined.
X	X	X	...	X	X	X	X	37	The inspector's National Board Commission number and the state or province Certificate of Competency number must be shown when the boiler is stamped National Board. The inspector shall use his jurisdictional Certificate of Competency and National Board Commission number on Partial Data Report Forms. If the boiler or vessel is not to be registered with the National Board, the inspector shall use only his state or province Certificate of Competency number.
X	X	...	...	...	...	...	...	38	The assembler's ASME Certificate of Authorization number and date of expiration of said authorization.
X	X	...	...	...	...	...	...	39	This line to be completed, when applicable, and signed by an authorized representative of the organization responsible for field assembly of the boiler.
X	X	...	...	...	...	...	...	40	This certificate to be completed by the Authorized Inspection Agency representative who performs the field assembly inspection.
X	X	...	...	...	...	...	...	41	Indicate by line numbers from the applicable form those items inspected in the field that were not inspected in the shop.
X	X	X	...	...	X	X	X	42	Nominal thickness of plate.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	43	Minimum thickness after forming.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	44	Radius on concave side of dish.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	45	Shop hydrostatic test, if any, applied to individual part prior to test applied to the assembled boiler (see lines 33 and 35).
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	46	This line for headers not covered as items 7 through 10. It is intended primarily for sectional headers on straight tube watertube boilers.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF SECTION IV MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FORMS (CONT'D)

Applies to Form									
H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	H-6	HLW-6	HLW-7	HLW-8	Note No.	Instruction:
...	X	X	...	...	X	X	...	47	Indicate shape as flat, dished, ellipsoidal, torispherical, or hemispherical.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	48	Use inside dimensions for size.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	49	Indicate shape as square, round, etc.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	50	Outside diameter.
...	X	...	...	...	...	...	...	51	Minimum thickness of tubes.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	52	Size.
...	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	53	Describe type as flanged, welding neck, etc.
...	...	X	...	...	...	X	...	54	Show name of part (e.g., steam drum, waterwall header).
...	...	X	...	...	...	X	...	55	Show data line number on applicable form for the named part.
X	X	X	...	...	X	X	...	56	Any additional information to clarify the report should be entered here.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	...	57	List each individual section that makes up boiler assembly. Show pattern and/or part number for each section. Show drawing number for each section. Show metal thickness for each section as indicated on the drawings. List each section of the complete boiler.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	...	58	Show bursting pressure of each section of boiler. Show thickness measured at the break or fracture of each section. Indicate weight of each section.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	...	59	Indicate minimum specified tensile strength for the class of iron as set forth in Table HC-300.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	...	60	Indicate sections of boiler that represent specimen test bars. Show results of each specimen tested (tensile strength).
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	...	61	Show maximum allowable working pressure as determined by Formula HC-402 and by values allowed by Formula HC-402.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	X	62	The individual designated to conduct tests, the designated manufacturer's representative who witnesses test and date or dates on which destruction tests were conducted.
...	...	...	X	...	...	...	...	63	Designated responsible engineering head certifying the tests and date.
...	...	...	...	...	X	...	...	64	Show quantity and dimensions.
...	...	...	...	...	X	X	...	65	Type of lining, if applicable.
...	...	...	...	...	X	X	X	66	Maximum allowable working pressure established in accordance with HLW-300 or HLW-500 of Section IV.
...	...	...	...	...	X	X	...	67	Indicate maximum allowable input, ________. For tanks used for storage, indicate "storage only."
...	...	...	...	...	X	X	...	68	Maximum temperature in accordance with HLW-300 of Section IV.
...	...	...	...	...	X	X	...	69	Hydrostatic pressure applied in accordance with HLW-505 of Section IV and witnessed by the Authorized Inspector.
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	X	70	Part of vessel yielding first should be indicated.
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	X	71	Pressure at which yielding occurs as evidenced by flaking of the brittle coating or by appearance of strain lines.
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	X	72	Show yield strength for each of the three specimens and average of the three.
...	...	X	...	...	...	X	...	73	This ID number is a unique identifying number for this form, which may be assigned by the Certificate Holder if desired.
X	X	X	...	...	...	...	...	74	Maximum water temperature.
...	...	...	...	X	...	...	...	75	Fill in information identical to that shown on the Data Report Form to which this sheet is supplementary.

FORM H-2 MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FOR ALL TYPES OF BOILERS EXCEPT WATERTUBE AND THOSE MADE OF CAST IRON
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section IV

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ (1) ______
(name and address of manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for ______ (2) ______
(name and address of purchaser)

3. Location of installation ______ (3) ______
(name and address)

4. Unit identification ___(4)___ (complete boiler, superheater, waterwall, economizer, etc.) ___(5)___ (manufacturer's serial no.) ______ (CRN) ______ (drawing no.) ______ (National Bd. no.) ___(6)___ (year built)

5. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction, and workmanship conform to ASME Code, Section IV, ___(7)___ (year) ___(8)___ [addenda (date)] ___(9)___ (Code Case no.)

Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports properly identified and signed by Commissioned Inspectors have been furnished for the following items of this report ______ (30) (56) ______
(name of part, item number, manufacturer's name, and identifying stamp)

6. Shells or drums ___(10)___ (no.) ___(11)___ (material spec., gr.) ___(42)___ (thickness) ___(10)___ (inside diameter) ______ [length (overall)] ______ (inside diameter) ______ [length (overall)]

7. Joints ___(12)___ [long. (seamless, welded)] ___(13)___ [eff. (compared to seamless)] ___(12)___ [girth (seamless, welded)] ______ (no. of shell courses)

8. Tubesheet ___(11)___ (material spec., grade) ______ (thickness) Tube holes ______ (number and diameter)

9. Tubes: No. ___(11)___ (material spec., grade) ______ (straight or bent) Diameter ______ Length ______ (if various, give max. and min.) Gauge ______ (or thickness)

10. Heads ___(11)___ (material spec. no.) ______ (thickness) ______ (flat, dished, ellipsoidal) ______ (radius of dish)

11. Furnace ___(11)___ (material spec., gr.) ______ (thickness) ___(14)___ (no.) ______ [size (O.D. or W x H)] ______ [length (each section)] ___(15)___ (total) ___(16)___ [type (plain, corrugated, etc.)] Seams ______ [type (seamless, welded)]

12. Staybolts ______ (no.) ___(17)___ [size (diameter)] ___(11)___ (material spec., gr.) ______ (size) ______ (telltale) ___(18)___ (net area) ______ [pitch (horizontal and vertical)] ___(19)___ (MAWP)

13. Stays or braces:

Location	Material Spec.	Type	Number and Size	Pitch	Total Net Area	Fig. HG-343 L/l	Dist. Tubes to Shell	MAWP
(a) F.H. above tubes	(11)	(20)			(21)	(22)		
(b) R.H. above tubes								
(c) F.H. below tubes								
(d) R.H. below tubes								
(e) Through stays								

14. Other parts: 1. ___(23)___ 2. ______ 3. ______
(brief description, i.e., dome, boiler piping)

1. ______ (24) (11) ______
2. ______
3. ______
(material spec., grade, size, material thickness, MAWP)

15. Nozzles, inspection, and safety valve openings: (25)

Purpose (inlet, outlet, drain, etc.)	No.	Diameter or Size	Type	How Attached	Material	Nominal Thickness	Reinforcement Material	Location
Handhole					NA		NA	
Manhole								
					(11)			

(09/06)

FORM H-2 (Back)

16. Boiler supports ______ (no.) ______ [type (saddles, legs, lugs)] ______ [attachment (bolted or welded)]

17. MAWP ___26___ Based on ___27___ (Code par. and/or formula) Heating surface ___28___ (total) Shop hydro. test ___29___ (complete boiler)

18. Maximum water temperature ___74___

19. Remarks ______

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this data report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of this boiler conform to Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"H" Certificate of Authorization no. ___31___ expires ______, ______.

Date ___32___ Signed ______ (by representative) Name ______ (manufacturer that constructed and certified boiler)

33 CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

Boiler constructed by ______ at ______.

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of ___34___ and employed by ______ have inspected parts of this boiler referred to as data items ___35___ and have examined Manufacturers' Partial Data Reports for items ___36___ and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the manufacturer has constructed this boiler in accordance with the applicable sections of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

By signing this certificate neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the boiler described in this Manufacturer's Data Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ______ Signed ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ___37___ [National Bd. (incl. endorsements), state, prov., and no.]

CERTIFICATE OF FIELD ASSEMBLY COMPLIANCE

We certify that the field assembly construction of all parts of this boiler conforms with the requirements of Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"H" Certificate of Authorization no. ___38___ expires ______, ______.

Date ___39___ Signed ______ (by representative) Name ______ (assembler that certified and constructed field assembly)

40 CERTIFICATE OF FIELD ASSEMBLY INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of ___34___ and employed by ______ have compared the statements in this Manufacturer's Data Report with the described boiler and state that the parts referred to as data items ___41___, not included in the certificate of shop inspection, have been inspected by me and that to the best of my knowledge and belief the manufacturer and/or the assembler has constructed and assembled this boiler in accordance with the applicable sections of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The described boiler was inspected and subjected to a hydrostatic test of ___29___.

By signing this certificate neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the boiler described in this Manufacturer's Data Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ______ Signed ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ___37___ [National Bd. (incl. endorsements) state, prov., and no.]

(09/06)

FORM H-3 MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FOR WATERTUBE BOILERS
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section IV

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ 1 ______
(name and address of manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for ______ 2 ______
(name and address of purchaser)

3. Location of installation ______ 3 ______
(name and address)

4. Unit identification ___ 4 ___ (complete boiler, superheater, waterwall, etc.) ___ 5 ___ (manufacturer's serial no.) ______ (CRN) ______ (drawing no.) ______ (National Bd. no.) ___ 6 ___ (year built)

5. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction, and workmanship conform to ASME Code, Section IV, ___ 7 ___ (year) ___ 8 ___ [addenda (date)] ___ 9 ___ (Code Case no.)

6. (a) Drums:

No.	Inside Diameter	Inside Length	Shell Plates			Tube Sheets		Tube Hole Ligament Efficiency, %	
			Material Spec. Grade	Thickness	Inside Radius	Thickness	Inside Radius	Longitudinal	Circumferential
1			11	42		42			
2									

No.	Longitudinal Joints		Circum. Joints		Heads					Hydrostatic Test
	No. & Type*	Efficiency	No. & Type	Efficiency	Material Spec. Grade	Thickness		Type**	Radius of Dish	
1					11	43			44	45
2										

*Indicate if (1) seamless, (2) fusion welded.

**Indicate if (1) flat, (2) dished, (3) ellipsoidal, (4) hemispherical.

6. (b) Boiler tubes:

Diameter	Thickness	Material Spec. No. Grade	No.	How Attached

6. (c) Headers no ___ 46 ___ 11 ___ 42 or 43 ___
(box or sinuous or round, material spec. no., thickness)

Heads or ends ___ 47 ___ 11 ___ 43 ___ (shape, material spec. no., thickness) Hydro. test ___ 45 ___

6. (d) Staybolts ______ 11 ______
(material spec. no., diameter, size telltale, net area)

Pitch ______ Net area ______ (supported by one bolt) Design pressure ______

6. (e) Mud drum ___ 48 ___ 49 ___ 11 ___ 42 or 43 ___ (for sect. header boilers state size, shape, material spec. no., thickness) Heads or ends ___ 47 ___ 11 ___ 43 ___ (shape, material spec. no., thickness) Hydro. test ___ 45 ___

7. Waterwall headers:

No.	Size and Shape	Material Spec. No. Gr.	Thickness	Shape	Thickness	Material Spec. No. Gr.	Hydro. Test	Diameter	Thickness	Material Spec. No. Gr.
1	48 49	11	42 or 43	47	43	11	45	50	51	11
2										
3										

8. (a) Other parts (1) ______ (2) ______ (3) ______ (b) Tubes for other parts ______

1										
2										
3										

9. Nozzles, inspection, and safety valve openings: 25

Purpose (inlet, outlet, drain, etc.)	No.	Diameter or Size	Type	How Attached	Material	Nom. Thickness	Reinforcement Material	Location
Handhole		52	53		NA		NA	
Manhole								
					11			

(09/06)

FORM H-3 (Back)

10.

		MAWP	Maximum water temp.	Shop Hydro. Test	Heating Surface
a	Boiler	26	74		
b	Waterwall				
c	Superheater				
d	Other parts				

Heating surface to be stamped on drum heads. This heating surface not to be used for determining minimum safety valve capacity.

11. Field Hydro. Test

12. Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports properly identified and signed by Commissioned Inspectors have been furnished for the following items of this report ______ 30 ______ 56 ______

(name of part, item number, manufacturer's name, and identifying stamp)

______
______
______
______
______
______
______
______
______

13. Remarks ______

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this data report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of this boiler conform to Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"H" Certificate of Authorization No. ______ 31 ______ expires ______, ______.

Date ______ 32 ______ Signed ______ (by representative) Name ______ (manufacturer that constructed and certified boiler)

33 CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

Boiler constructed by ______ at ______.

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of ______ 34 ______ and employed by ______

______ have inspected parts of this boiler referred to as data items ______ 35 ______ and have examined Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports for items ______ 36 ______

and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the manufacturer has constructed this boiler in accordance with Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

By signing this certificate neither the inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the boiler described in this Manufacturer's Data Report. Furthermore, neither the inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ______ Signed ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ______ 37 ______ [National Bd. (incl. endorsements), state, prov., and no.]

CERTIFICATE OF FIELD ASSEMBLY COMPLIANCE

We certify that the field assembly construction of all parts of this boiler conforms with the requirements of Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"H" Certificate of Authorization no. ______ 38 ______ expires ______, ______.

Date ______ 39 ______ Signed ______ (by representative) Name ______ (assembler that certified and constructed field assembly)

40 CERTIFICATE OF FIELD ASSEMBLY INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of ______ 34 ______ and employed by ______

______ have compared the statements in this Manufacturer's Data Report with the described boiler and state that the parts referred to as data items ______ 41 ______ not included in the certificate of shop inspection, have been inspected by me and that to the best of my knowledge and belief the manufacturer and/or the assembler has constructed and assembled this boiler in accordance with Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The described boiler was inspected and subjected to a hydrostatic test of ______.

By signing this certificate neither the inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the boiler described in this Manufacturer's Data Report. Furthermore, neither the inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ______ Signed ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ______ 37 ______ [National Bd. (incl. endorsements), state, prov., and no.]

(09/06)

FORM H-4 MANUFACTURER'S PARTIAL DATA REPORT
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules
(Attach to the Applicable Data Report, Section IV)

1. Manufactured and certified by ① (name and address of manufacturer) H-4 ID# 73

2. Manufactured for ② (name and address of purchaser)

3. Location of installation ③ (name and address)

4. Identification of part(s):

Name of Part	Line No.	Manufacturer's Serial No.	Manufacturer's Drawing No.	CRN	National Bd. No.	Year Built
54	55	5				6

5. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction, and workmanship conform to ASME Code, Section IV, 7 (Year) 8 [addenda (date)] 9 (Code Case no.)

6. (a) Drums:

No.	Inside Diameter	Inside Length	Shell Plates			Tube Sheets		Tube Hole Ligament Efficiency, %	
			Material Spec. No. Grade	Thickness	Inside Radius	Thickness	Inside Radius	Longitudinal	Circumferential
1			11	42		42			
2									

No.	Longitudinal Joints		Circum. Joints		Heads					Hydrostatic Test
	No. & Type*	Efficiency	No. & Type	Efficiency	Material Spec. No. Grade	Thickness		Type**	Radius of Dish	
1					11	43			44	45
2										

*Indicate if (1) seamless, (2) fusion welded.

**Indicate if (1) flat, (2) dished, (3) ellipsoidal, (4) hemispherical.

6. (b) Boiler tubes:

Diameter	Thickness	Material Spec. No. Grade	No.	How Attached

6. (c) Headers no 46 11 42 or 43 (box or sinuous or round, material spec. no., thickness)

Heads or ends 47 11 43 (shape, material spec. no., thickness) Hydro. test 45

6. (d) Staybolts 11 (material spec. no. diameter, size telltale; net area)

Pitch ______ Net area ______ (supported by one bolt) Design pressure ______

6. (e) Mud drum 48 49 11 42 or 43 (for sect. header boilers, state size, shape, material spec. no., thickness) Heads or ends 47 11 43 (shape, material spec. no., thickness) Hydro. test 45

7. Waterwall headers:

No.	Size and Shape	Material Spec. No. Gr.	Thickness	Shape	Thickness	Material Spec. No. Gr.	Hydro Test	Diameter	Thickness	Material Spec. No. Gr.
1	48	11	42 or 43	47	43	11	45	50	46	11
2										
3										

8. (a) Other parts (1) ______ (2) ______ (3) ______ (b) Tubes for other parts ______

1										
2										
3										

(09/06)

FORM H-4 (Back)

9. Nozzles, inspection and safety valve openings: ㉕

Purpose (inlet, outlet, drain, etc.)	No.	Diameter or Size	Type	How Attached	Material	Nom. Thickness	Reinforcement Material	Location
Handhole		52	53		NA		NA	

10.

		MAWP	Maximum Water Temp.	Shop Hydro. Test	Heating Surface
a	Boiler	26	74		
b	Waterwall				
c	Other parts				

{ Heating surface or kW to be stamped on drum heads

{ This heating surface not to be used for determining minimum safety valve capacity.

11. Field Hydro. Test

12. Remarks ______ 56 ______

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this partial data report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of these parts conform to Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"H" Certificate of Authorization no. ______ 31 ______ expires ______, ______.

Date ______ 32 ______ Signed ______ Name ______
(by representative) (manufacturer that constructed and certified boiler)

33 CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of ______ 34 ______ and employed by ______ have inspected the part of a boiler described in this Manufacturer's Partial Data Report on ______, ______, and state that to the best of my knowledge and belief, the manufacturer has constructed this part in accordance with Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. By signing this certificate neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the part described in this Manufacturer's Partial Data Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ______ Signed ______ Commissions ______ 37 ______
(Authorized Inspector) [National Bd. (incl. endorsements), state, prov., and no.]

(09/06)

FORM H-5 MANUFACTURER'S MASTER DATA REPORT FOR BOILERS CONSTRUCTED FROM CAST IRON
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section IV

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ 1 ______
(name and address of manufacturer) (foundry identification)
______

2. Boiler type or model no. ______ 4 ______
3. Boiler section data: 57

Section Designation (list each individual section in boiler assembly)	Pattern and/or Part No.	Metal Thickness According to Drawing
(a)		
(b)		
(c)		
(d)		
(e)		

4. Boiler section bursting data: 58

	Bursting Pressure, Metal Thickness Measured at *Break or Fracture, and Weight of Section*		
Section Designation	Test No. 1	Test No. 2	Test No. 3
(a)			
(b)			
(c)			
(d)			
(e)			

5. Minimum specified tensile strength ______ 59 ______.

6. Tensile strength of associated test bars: 60

Section Designation	Bar for Test No. 1	Bar for Test No. 2	Bar for Test No. 3
(a)			
(b)			
(c)			
(d)			
(e)			

7. Specification no. and class of gray iron ______
______

8. Maximum Allowable working pressure of boiler* ______ 61 ______
*Determined by using formula in HC-402 and by selection of lowest values of bursting pressure from tests recorded in item 4 of this report.

(09/06)

FORM H-5 (Back)

9. Sketch of section with lowest bursting pressure:

Show location of
failure and indicate whether
principally in bending or tension.

10. Examination data: 62

(a) Test engineer ______________________________
(name)

(b) Witness of test(s) ______________________________
(name)

(c) Date(s) of destruction tests ______________________________

____

____

11. Manufacturer's certification: 63

Date ____________________ , __________

Certified to be true record

____
(name and title)

NOTE: Signature of designed responsible engineering head of the manufacturer must be notarized.

12. ASME Certificate of Authorization no. ______________ 31 ______________ to use the "H" symbol (cast iron).

Certificate expires ____________________ , __________

(09/06)

07

FORM H-5A MANUFACTURER'S MASTER DATA REPORT FOR BOILERS CONSTRUCTED FROM CAST ALUMINUM

As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code Rules, Section IV

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ (1) ______
(name and address of manufacturer) (foundry identification)

______

2. Boiler type or model no. ______ (4) ______
3. Boiler section data: (57)

Section Designation (List Each Individual Section in Boiler Assembly)	Pattern and/or Part No.	Metal Thickness According to Drawing
(a)		
(b)		
(c)		
(d)		
(e)		

4. Boiler section bursting data: (58)

Section Designation	Bursting Pressure, Metal Thickness Measured at Break or Fracture, and Weight of Section		
	Test No. 1	Test No. 2	Test No. 3
(a)			
(b)			
(c)			
(d)			
(e)			

5. Minimum specified tensile strength ______ (59) ______.

6. Tensile strength of associated test bars: (60)

Section Designation	Bar for Test No. 1	Bar for Test No. 2	Bar for Test No. 3
(a)			
(b)			
(c)			
(d)			
(e)			

7. Specification no. of aluminum alloy ______

______

8. Maximum allowable working pressure of boiler[1] ______ (61) ______

[1] Determined by using formula in HA-402 and by selection of lowest values of bursting pressure from tests recorded in item 4 of this report.

(02/07)

FORM H-5A (Back)

9. Sketch of section with lowest bursting pressure (show location of failure)

10. Examination data: (62)

    (a) Test engineer ______________________________
    (name)

    (b) Witness of test(s) ______________________________
    (name)

    (c) Date(s) of destruction tests ______________________________

11. Manufacturer's certification: (63)

    Date ________________, ________

    Certified to be true record

    ____
    (name and title)

    NOTE: Signature of designed responsible engineering head of the manufacturer must be notarized.

12. ASME Certificate of Authorization no. ______________ (31) ______________ to use the "H" symbol (cast aluminum).

    Certificate expires ________________, ________

(02/07)

FORM H-6 MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT SUPPLEMENTARY SHEET
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code Rules, Section IV

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ 1 75 ______
(name and address of manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for ______ 2 75 ______
(name and address of purchaser)

3. Location of installation ______ 3 75 ______
(name and address)

4. Unit identification ______ 4 75 ______ ______ 5 75 ______
(manufacturer's serial no.)

5 75	5 75	5 75	6 75
(CRN)	(drawing no.)	(National Board no.)	(year built)

Data Report Item Number	Remarks

Certificate of Authorization: Type ______ No. ______ 31 ______ Expires ______

Date ______ 32 ______ Name ______ (manufacturer) Signed ______ (representative)

Date ______ Name ______ (authorized inspector) Commissions ______ 37 ______ [National Board (incl. endorsements), state, province, and no.]

(11/06)

FORM HC-1 MANUFACTURER'S MATERIAL CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE FOR CAST IRON BOILER SECTIONS

1. Manufactured and certified by ____
(name and address of manufacturer) (foundry designation)

2. List of cast iron sections:

Pattern #	Cast Date	Quantity	Date of Last Burst Test

3. The chemical and physical properties of sections listed here meet the material requirements of Part HC, Article 2.

4. Date ____________ Signed ______________________________________
(by representative)

5. Date ____________ Signed ______________________________________
(by certified individual)

6. ASME Certificate of Authorization No. ____________ to use the "H" symbol (cast iron). Certificate expires ____________________

(11/06)

FORM HC-2 MANUFACTURER'S MATERIAL CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE FOR HYDROSTATIC TESTING OF CAST IRON BOILER SECTIONS

1. Manufactured and certified by ______________________________
(name and address of manufacturer) (foundry designation)

2. List of cast iron sections:

Pattern #	Quantity	MAWP	Hydrostatic Test Pressure

3. Sections listed here have satisfactorily passed the hydrostatic test required in HC-410.

4. Date ____________ Signed ______________________________
(by representative)

5. Date ____________ Signed ______________________________
(by certified individual)

6. ASME Certificate of Authorization No. ____________ to use the "H" symbol (cast iron). Certificate expires ____________

(11/06)

07

FORM HA-1 MANUFACTURER'S MATERIAL CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE FOR CAST ALUMINUM BOILER SECTIONS

1. Manufactured and certified by ____
(name and address of manufacturer) (foundry designation)

2. List of cast aluminum sections

Pattern #	Cast Date	Quantity	Date of Last Burst Test

3. The chemical and physical properties of sections listed here meet the material requirements of Part HA, Article 2 and Part HF.

4. Date ____________ Signed ____
(by representative)

5. Date ____________ Signed ____
(by certified individual)

6. ASME Certificate of Authorization No. ____________ to use the "H" symbol (cast aluminum). Certificate expires ________________

(01/07)

07

FORM HA-2 MANUFACTURER'S MATERIAL CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE FOR HYSTROSTATIC TESTING OF CAST ALUMINUM BOILER SECTIONS

1. Manufactured and certified by ______________________________
(name and address of manufacturer) (foundry designation)

2. List of cast aluminum sections

Pattern #	Quantity	MAWP	Hydrostatic Test Pressure

3. Sections listed here have satisfactorily passed the hydrostatic test required in HA-406.

4. Date __________ Signed ______________________________
(by representative)

5. Date __________ Signed ______________________________
(by certified individual)

6. ASME Certificate of Authorization No. __________ to use the "H" symbol (cast aluminum). Certificate expires ______________

(02/07)

FORM HLW-6 MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FOR WATER HEATERS OR STORAGE TANKS
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ 1 ______
(name and address of manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for ______ 2 ______
(name and address of purchaser)

3. Location of installation ______ 3 ______
(name and address)

4. Identification ___ 5 ___ (manufacturer's serial no.) ______ (CRN) ______ (drawing no.) ______ (National Board no.) ___ 6 ___ (year built)

5. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction, and workmanship conform to Part HLW, Section IV ___ 7 ___ (year) ___ 8 ___ [addenda (date)] ___ 9 ___ (Code Case no.)

6. Shell ___ 64 ___ (no.) ___ 11 ___ (material spec., gr.) ___ 42 ___ thickness ___ 65 ___ (lining) ___ 64 ___ (diameter) ______ [length (overall)]

7. Joints ___ 12 ___ [long. (seamless, welded)] ___ 13 ___ [eff. (compared to seamless)] ___ 12 ___ [girth (seamless, welded)] ______ (no. of shell courses)

8. Heads ___ 47 ___

Location	Material Spec., Gr., Thickness	Crown Radius	Knuckle Radius	Elliptical Ratio	Flat Diameter	Side Pressure (concave, convex)

9. Tubesheet ___ 11 ___ (material spec., gr.) Tubes ______ (no.) ______ (size) ______ [length (overall)] ___ 11 ___ (material spec., gr.) ______ (thickness) ______ (rolled or welded)

10. Nozzles, inspection, and safety valve openings: 25

Purpose (inlet, outlet, drain, etc.)	No.	Diameter or Size	Type	How Attached	Material	Nominal Thickness	Reinforcement Material	Location
Handhole			NA		NA		NA	
					11			

11. MAWP ___ 66 ___ Max. input ___ 67 ___ Max. temp. ___ 68 ___ Hydrostatic test ___ 69 ___

12. Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports properly identified and signed by Commissioned Inspectors have been furnished for the following items of this report ______ 30 56 ______

(name of part, item no., manufacturer's name, identification stamps)

13. Remarks ______

(09/06)

FORM HLW-6 (Back)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this data report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of this water heater or storage tank conform to Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

"HLW" Certificate of Authorization no. ____________________ expiration date ____________________.

Date ____________ Name ______________________________ Signed ____________________
(manufacturer that constructed and certified water heater or storage tank) (by representative)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

Constructed by ______________________________ at ______________________________

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of ____________________ and employed by ______________________________

have inspected parts referred to as data items ______________________________

and have examined Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports for items ______________________________

and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the manufacturer has constructed this water heater or storage tank in accordance with Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

By signing this certificate, neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the water heater or storage tank described in this Manufacturer's Data Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ____________ Signed ______________________________ Commissions ______________________________
(Authorized Inspector) [National Bd. (incl. endorsements), state, province, and no.]

(09/06)

FORM HLW-7 MANUFACTURER'S PARTIAL DATA REPORT FOR WATER HEATERS AND STORAGE TANKS
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules (Attach to the Applicable Form HLW-6 Data Report)

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ 1 ______ HLW-7 ID# ______ 73 ______
(name and address of manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for ______ 2 ______
(name and address of purchaser)

3. Identification of part(s):

Name of Part	Line No.	Identifying No.	Manufacturer's Drawing No.	Year Built
54	55	5		6

4. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction, and workmanship conform to Part HLW, Section IV ______ 7 ______ (year) and Addenda to ______ 8 ______ (date)

5. Shell ______ 34 ______ (no.) ______ 11 ______ (material spec., gr.) ______ 42 ______ (thickness) ______ 65 ______ (lining) ______ 64 ______ (diameter) ______ [length (overall)]

6. Joints ______ 12 ______ [long. (seamless, welded)] ______ 13 ______ [eff. (compared to seamless)] ______ 12 ______ [girth (seamless, welded)] ______ (no. of shell courses)

7. Heads ______ 47 ______

Location	Material Spec., Gr., Thickness	Crown Radius	Knuckle Radius	Elliptical Ratio	Flat Diameter	Side Pressure (concave, convex)

8. Tubesheet ______ 11 ______ (material spec., gr.) Tube holes ______ (no. and diameter)

9. Tubes ______ (no.) Size ______ Length ______ Material spec., gr. ______ 11 ______ Thickness ______

10. Connections:

Purpose	No.	Size or Diameter	Material Spec., Gr.	Thickness	Reinforcement Material

11. MAWP ______ 66 ______ Max. input ______ 67 ______ Max. temp. ______ 68 ______ Hydrostatic test ______ 69 ______

12. Remarks ______ 56 ______

(09/06)

FORM HLW-7 (Back)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify the statements in this Manufacturer's Partial Data Report to be correct and that all details of material, construction, and workmanship of this water heater or storage tank conform to Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

Certificate of Authorization no. ______ 31 ______ to use the "HLW" symbol expires ______________ .

Date ___ 32 ___ Signed ______________________ by ______________________
(manufacturer that constructed and certified parts) (authorized representative)

33 CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of ______________ and employed by ______________________
have inspected the part described in this Manufacturer's Partial Data Report on ______________________
and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the manufacturer has constructed this part in accordance with Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

By signing this certificate, neither the inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the part described in this Manufacturer's Partial Data Report. Furthermore, neither the inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ____________ Signed ______________________ Commissions ______ 37 ______
(Authorized Inspector) [National Bd. (incl. endorsements), state, province, and no.]

(09/06)

FORM HLW-8 MANUFACTURER'S MASTER DATA PROOF TEST REPORT FOR WATER HEATERS OR STORAGE TANKS
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section IV

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ 1 ______
(name and address)

2. Vessel type or model no. (HLW-500) ______ 4 ______

3. Vessel proof test data:

Vessel Parts	Description or Part No.	Material Spec., Gr., Thickness According to Drawing	Specified Yield Strength	Minimum Tensile
(a) ______		11 42		
(b) ______				
(c) ______				
(d) ______				
(e) ______				

4. Type of coating ______
(lime wash or other brittle coating)

5. Test data to determine yielding:

Part Designation Yielding	Yielding Pressure by Flaking of Coating or by Strain Lines	Location of Yielding Whether Bending or Tension (indicate on sketch)
70	71	72

6. Yield strength of test specimens [HLW-502.1(c)]: (a) ___72___ (b) ______ (c) ______ Average ______
7. Maximum allowable working pressure of vessel ___66___ [determined by formulas in HLW-502.1(d)]
8. Examination data: 82
   (a) Test engineer ______
   (b) Witness of test ______
   (c) Date(s) of proof test ______

MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATION

We certify that the above data is correct and that the proof test procedure conforms with HLW-500 of Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

ASME Certificate of Authorization no. ___31___ to use the "HLW" symbol expiration date ______

Date ___32___ Certified to be true record ______ (authorized representative)* ______ (manufacturer)

*NOTE: Signature of manufacturer's designated responsible engineering representative is required.

33 PROOF TEST CERTIFICATE

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the state or province of ___34___ and employed by ______
have witnessed the proof test and the procedures conforming to HLW-500 of Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

By signing this certificate, neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the water heater or storage tank described in this Manufacturer's Proof Test Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with the witnessing of this proof test.

Date ______ Signed ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ___37___ (state, province, and no.)

(09/06)

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX M
GUIDANCE FOR THE USE OF U.S. CUSTOMARY AND SI UNITS IN THE ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE

M-1 USE OF UNITS IN EQUATIONS

The equations in this Nonmandatory Appendix are suitable for use with either the U.S. Customary or the SI units provided in Mandatory Appendix 6, or with the units provided in the nomenclature associated with that equation. It is the responsibility of the individual and organization performing the calculations to ensure that appropriate units are used. Either U.S. Customary or SI units may be used as a consistent set. When necessary to convert from one system of units to another, the units shall be converted to at least three significant figures for use in calculations and other aspects of construction.

M-2 GUIDELINES USED TO DEVELOP SI EQUIVALENTS

The following guidelines were used to develop SI equivalents:

(a) SI units are placed in parentheses after the U.S. Customary units in the text.

(b) In general, separate SI tables are provided if interpolation is expected. The table designation (e.g., table number) is the same for both the U.S. Customary and SI tables, with the addition of suffix "M" to the designator for the SI table, if a separate table is provided. In the text, references to a table use only the primary table number (i.e., without the "M"). For some small tables, where interpolation is not required, SI units are placed in parentheses after the U.S. Customary unit.

(c) Separate SI versions of graphical information (charts) are provided, except that if both axes are dimensionless, a single figure (chart) is used.

(d) In most cases, conversions of units in the text were done using hard SI conversion practices, with some soft conversions on a case-by-case basis, as appropriate. This was implemented by rounding the SI values to the number of significant figures of *implied* precision in the existing U.S. Customary units. For example, 3,000 psi has an implied precision of one significant figure. Therefore, the conversion to SI units would typically be to 20 000 kPa. This is a difference of about 3% from the "exact" or soft conversion of 20 684.27 kPa. However, the precision of the conversion was determined by the Committee on a case-by-case basis. More significant digits were included in the SI equivalent if there was any question. The values of allowable stress in Section II, Part D generally include three significant figures.

(e) Minimum thickness and radius values that are expressed in fractions of an inch were generally converted according to the following table:

Fraction, in.	Proposed SI Conversion, mm	Difference, %
$\frac{1}{32}$	0.8	−0.8
$\frac{3}{64}$	1.2	−0.8
$\frac{1}{16}$	1.5	5.5
$\frac{3}{32}$	2.5	−5.0
$\frac{1}{8}$	3	5.5
$\frac{5}{32}$	4	−0.8
$\frac{3}{16}$	5	−5.0
$\frac{7}{32}$	5.5	1.0
$\frac{1}{4}$	6	5.5
$\frac{5}{16}$	8	−0.8
$\frac{3}{8}$	10	−5.0
$\frac{7}{16}$	11	1.0
$\frac{1}{2}$	13	−2.4
$\frac{9}{16}$	14	2.0
$\frac{5}{8}$	16	−0.8
$\frac{11}{16}$	17	2.6
$\frac{3}{4}$	19	0.3
$\frac{7}{8}$	22	1.0
1	25	1.6

(f) For nominal sizes that are in even increments of inches, even multiples of 25 mm were generally used. Intermediate values were interpolated rather than converting and rounding to the nearest mm. See examples in the following table. [Note that this table does not apply to nominal pipe sizes (NPS), which are covered below.]

Size, in.	Size, mm
1	25
1⅛	29
1¼	32
1½	38
2	50
2¼	57
2½	64
3	75
3½	89
4	100
4½	114
5	125
6	150
8	200
12	300
18	450
20	500
24	600
36	900
40	1 000
54	1 350
60	1 500
72	1 800

Size or Length, ft	Size or Length, m
3	1
5	1.5
200	60

(g) For nominal pipe sizes, the following relationships were used:

U.S. Customary Practice	SI Practice	U.S. Customary Practice	SI Practice
NPS ⅛	DN 6	NPS 20	DN 500
NPS ¼	DN 8	NPS 22	DN 550
NPS ⅜	DN 10	NPS 24	DN 600
NPS ½	DN 15	NPS 26	DN 650
NPS ¾	DN 20	NPS 28	DN 700
NPS 1	DN 25	NPS 30	DN 750
NPS 1¼	DN 32	NPS 32	DN 800
NPS 1½	DN 40	NPS 34	DN 850
NPS 2	DN 50	NPS 36	DN 900
NPS 2½	DN 65	NPS 38	DN 950
NPS 3	DN 80	NPS 40	DN 1000
NPS 3½	DN 90	NPS 42	DN 1050
NPS 4	DN 100	NPS 44	DN 1100
NPS 5	DN 125	NPS 46	DN 1150
NPS 6	DN 150	NPS 48	DN 1200
NPS 8	DN 200	NPS 50	DN 1250
NPS 10	DN 250	NPS 52	DN 1300
NPS 12	DN 300	NPS 54	DN 1350
NPS 14	DN 350	NPS 56	DN 1400
NPS 16	DN 400	NPS 58	DN 1450
NPS 18	DN 450	NPS 60	DN 1500

(h) Areas in square inches (in.^{2}) were converted to square mm (mm^2) and areas in square feet (ft^2) were converted to square meters (m^2). See examples in the following table:

Area (U.S. Customary)	Area (SI)
1 in.^{2}	650 mm^2
6 in.^{2}	4 000 mm^2
10 in.^{2}	6 500 mm^2
5 ft^2	0.5 m^2

(i) Volumes in cubic inches (in.^{3}) were converted to cubic mm (mm^3) and volumes in cubic feet (ft^3) were converted to cubic meters (m^3). See examples in the following table:

Volume (U.S. Customary)	Volume (SI)
1 in.^{3}	16 000 mm^3
6 in.^{3}	100 000 mm^3
10 in.^{3}	160 000 mm^3
5 ft^3	0.14 m^3

(j) Although the pressure should always be in MPa for calculations, there are cases where other units are used in the text. For example, kPa is used for small pressures. Also, rounding was to one significant figure (two at the most) in most cases. See examples in the following table. (Note that 14.7 psi converts to 101 kPa, while 15 psi converts to 100 kPa. While this may seem at first glance to be an anomaly, it is consistent with the rounding philosophy.)

Pressure (U.S. Customary)	Pressure (SI)
0.5 psi	3 kPa
2 psi	15 kPa
3 psi	20 kPa
10 psi	70 kPa
14.7 psi	101 kPa
15 psi	100 kPa
30 psi	200 kPa
50 psi	350 kPa
100 psi	700 kPa
150 psi	1 MPa
200 psi	1.5 MPa
250 psi	1.7 MPa
300 psi	2 MPa
350 psi	2.5 MPa
400 psi	3 MPa
500 psi	3.5 MPa
600 psi	4 MPa
1,200 psi	8 MPa
1,500 psi	10 MPa

(k) Material properties that are expressed in psi or ksi (e.g., allowable stress, yield and tensile strength, elastic modulus) were generally converted to MPa to three significant figures. See example in the following table:

Strength (U.S. Customary)	Strength (SI)
95,000 psi	655 MPa

(l) In most cases, temperatures (e.g., for PWHT) were rounded to the nearest 5°C. Depending on the implied precision of the temperature, some were rounded to the nearest 1°C or 10°C or even 25°C. Temperatures colder than 0°F (negative values) were generally rounded to the

nearest 1°C. The examples in the table below were created by rounding to the nearest 5°C, with one exception:

Temperature, °F	Temperature, °C
70	20
100	38
120	50
150	65
200	95
250	120
300	150
350	175
400	205
450	230
500	260
550	290
600	315
650	345
700	370
750	400
800	425
850	455
900	480
925	495
950	510
1,000	540
1,050	565
1,100	595
1,150	620
1,200	650
1,250	675
1,800	980
1,900	1 040
2,000	1 095
2,050	1 120

M-3 SOFT CONVERSION FACTORS

The following table of "soft" conversion factors is provided for convenience. Multiply the U.S. Customary value by the factor given to obtain the SI value. Similarly, divide the SI value by the factor given to obtain the U.S. Customary value. In most cases it is appropriate to round the answer to three significant figures.

U.S. Customary	SI	Factor	Notes
in.	mm	25.4	...
ft	m	0.3048	...
in.^{2}	mm^2	645.16	...
ft^2	m^2	0.09290304	...
in.^{3}	mm^3	16,387.064	...
ft^3	m^3	0.02831685	...
U.S. gal	m^3	0.003785412	...
U.S. gal	liters	3.785412	...
psi	MPa (N/mm^2)	0.0068948	Used exclusively in equations
psi	kPa	6.894757	Used only in text and for nameplate
psi	bar	0.06894757	...
ft-lb	J	1.355818	...
°F	°C	$\frac{5}{9}$ × (°F − 32)	Not for temperature difference
°F	°C	$\frac{5}{9}$	For temperature differences only
R	K	$\frac{5}{9}$	Absolute temperature
lbm	kg	0.4535924	...
lbf	N	4.448222	...
in.-lb	N·mm	112.98484	Use exclusively in equations
ft-lb	N·m	1.3558181	Use only in text
ksi$\sqrt{\text{in.}}$	MPa$\sqrt{\text{m}}$	1.0988434	...
Btu/hr	W	0.29230711	Use for boiler rating and heat transfer
lb/ft^3	kg/m^3	16.018463	...

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX N
GUIDE TO MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE FOR PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

INTRODUCTION

The following pages are a guide for completing the Manufacturer's Certificate of Conformance Form HV-1.

① Circled numbers refer to the guide for required subject material.

1. Numbers without circles appearing in the guide material identify specific lines on the Manufacturer's Certificate of Conformance Form.

Forms appearing in this section may be obtained from the ASME Order Department, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF SECTION IV MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE FORM HV-1

Note No.	Instruction
1	Name and address of Manufacturer.
2	Pressure relief valve Manufacturer's unique identification number, such as serial, work order number, or lot number.
3	The date of completion of production of the pressure relief valve.
4	The NB Certification Number.
5	The quantity of identical valves for this line item.
6	The Manufacturer's Design or Type Number as marked on the nameplate.
7	The inlet size of the pressure relief valve (NPS).
8	The nameplate set pressure of the pressure relief valve.
9	The nameplate capacity of the pressure relief valve.
10	The fluid used for testing the pressure relief valve.
11	The year built or the pressure relief valve Manufacturer's date code.
12	The Name of the Certified Individual.
13	The signature of the Certified Individual. Required for each line item.
14	The Number of the pressure relief valve Manufacturer's Certificate of Authorization.
15	Expiration Date of the pressure relief valve Manufacturer's Certificate of Authorization.
16	Date signed by the pressure relief valve Manufacturer Authorized Representative.
17	The Certificate of Shop Compliance block is to show the name of the Manufacturer as shown on his ASME Code Certificate of Authorization. This should be signed in accordance with the organizational authority defined in the Quality Control System.
18	Include any applicable remarks (referencing the identification number) that may pertain, such as identification of a Code Case that requires marking on the device.

FORM HV-1 MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE FOR PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code Rules

1. Manufactured by ______ ① ______

2. Table of Code symbol stamped items:

I.D. #	Date	Cert. #	Qty.	Type	Size (NPS)	Set Pressure	Capacity	Test Fluid	Date Code	CI Name	CI Signature
②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬

3. Remarks ______ ⑱ ______

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

By the signature of the Certified Individual (CI) noted above, we certify that the statements made in this report are correct and that all details for design, material, construction, and workmanship of the pressure relief valves conform with the requirements of Section IV of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE.

HV Certificate of Authorization No. ______ ⑭ ______ Expires ______ ⑮ ______

Date ______ ⑯ ______ Signed ______ ⑰ ______ (responsible representative) Name ______ ⑰ ______ (manufacturer)

(03/07)

INDEX

ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code
SECTION IV

INTERPRETATIONS
Volume 57

Interpretations of the Code are distributed annually in July with the issuance of the edition and subsequent addenda. Interpretations posted in January at www.cstools.asme.org/interpretations are included in the July distribution. Interpretations of Section III, Divisions 1 and 2, are part of the update service to Section III, Subsection NCA.

Interpretations Volumes 54 through 56 were included with the update service to the 2004 Edition of the Code; Volume 57 is the first Interpretations volume to be included with the update service to the 2007 Edition.

Section	Vol. 57	Vol. 58	Vol. 59
I	7/07		
II-A	7/07		
II-B	...		
II-C	...		
II-D (Customary)	7/07		
II-D (Metric)	...		
III-NCA	7/07		
III-3	7/07		
IV	7/07		
V	7/07		
VI	...		
VII	...		
VIII-1	7/07		
VIII-2	7/07		
VIII-3	7/07		
IX	7/07		
X	...		
XI	7/07		
XII	...		

INTERPRETATIONS
VOLUME 57 — SECTION IV

Replies to Technical Inquiries
January 1, 2006 Through December 31, 2006

FOREWORD

This publication includes all written interpretations issued between the indicated dates by the ASME Staff on behalf of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee in response to inquiries concerning interpretations of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. A contents is also included which lists subjects specific to the interpretations covered in the individual volume.

These interpretations are taken verbatim from the original letters, except for a few typographical and editorial corrections made for the purpose of improved clarity. In some instances, a review of the interpretation revealed a need for corrections of a technical nature. In these cases, a revised interpretation is presented bearing the original interpretation number with the suffix R and the original file number with an asterisk. Following these revised interpretations, new interpretations and revisions to them issued during the indicated dates are assigned interpretation number in chronological order. Interpretations applying to more than one Code Section appear with the interpretations for each affected Section.

ASME procedures provide for reconsideration of these interpretations when or if additional information is available which the inquirer believes might affect the interpretation. Further, persons aggrieved by an interpretation may appeal to the cognizant ASME committee or subcommittee. As stated in the Statement of Policy in the Code documents, ASME does not "approve," "certify," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, proprietary device, or activity.

An interpretation applies either to the Edition and Addenda in effect on the date of issuance of the interpretation or the Edition and Addenda stated in the interpretation. Subsequent revisions to the Code may supersede the interpretation.

For detailed instructions on preparation of technical inquiries to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee, refer to Appendix B.

SECTION IV

Interpretation: IV-04-15

Subject: Clarification Request for Pressure Relief Devices

Date Issued: February 21, 2006

File: BC06-157

Question (1): Does a utility-closed loop, heating or cooling water system that contains air separators, heat exchangers, and expansion tanks that are ASME Section VIII, Division 1 stamped with MAWP greater than 15 psi at temperatures greater than 250°F fall within the scope of ASME Section IV?

Reply (1): No.

Question (2): Does ASME Section IV cover a utility-closed loop, heating or cooling water system that contains air separators, heat exchangers, and expansion tanks that are ASME Section VIII stamped that operate at temperatures greater than 250°F at pressures greater than 15 psi?

Reply (2): No.

Interpretation: IV-07-01

Subject: Clarification Request for HG-709.2

Date Issued: August 20, 2006

File: BC06-526

Question (1): Is the expansion tank required by HG-709.2 for a boiler designed for a MAWP of 30 psi required to be constructed in accordance with ASME Section VII, Division 1 or Section X?

Reply (1): No.

Question (2): Is an expansion tank constructed in accordance with ASME Section VIII, Division 1 or Section X required for a heating system with a boiler designed for a MAWP of 50 psi?

Reply (2): Yes. See HG-709.2.

Question (3): Is an expansion tank constructed in accordance with ASME Section VIII, Division 1 or Section X required when a boiler constructed to a design pressure greater than 30 psi is installed regardless of system operating pressure?

Reply (3): Yes.

ISBN-13: 978-0-7918-3064-2
ISBN-10: 0-7918-3064-0

9 780791 830642

U00040